



M4 使用手册 User Manual

中英

尊敬的用户：

Dear Users:

祝贺您拥有一辆风行游艇汽车，感谢您对东风风行品牌的信任。本手册介绍了风行游艇汽车的安全驾驶、设备操作和车辆保养方面的信息，这些信息将帮助您正确地使用车辆，使您真正感受到风行游艇汽车带给您的驾乘乐趣。

Congratulations on owning a FORTHING U-TOUR Vehicle, thanks for your trust in Dongfeng FORTHING brand. This manual introduces the information on the safe driving, equipment operation and vehicle maintenance of the FORTHING U-TOUR Vehicles, which will help you to use the vehicle correctly, so that you can truly feel the driving pleasure .

本手册的目录和车辆图解可方便您快速地了解您的车辆。后面的十个章节的内容详细介绍了车辆各项设施的使用方法。在使用车辆之前，请仔细阅读随车资料，这些资料所提供的信息对保障行车和财产的安全十分重要，请您严格遵守并妥善地保管。

The table of contents and vehicle diagram of this manual can facilitate a quick understanding of your vehicle. The following ten chapters detail the use of the vehicle facilities. Before using, please carefully read the related information, which is very important to ensure the safety of driving and property. Please strictly observe and keep it properly.

在阅读本手册时，您会发现里面标有“注意”、“警告”等标记及其说明。这些说明有助于保障人身、车辆以及财产的安全，请严格遵守。

When reading this manual, you will find marks marked with "Attention," and "Warning" and their instructions. These instructions contribute to the safety of people, vehicles and property, please strictly abide by them.

本手册的图形及文字仅用于传递车辆主要功能和设施的使用信息，不能作为产品验收的依据。与实车不符之处，请以实车为准。

The graphics and text of this manual are only used to convey information about the main functions and facilities of the vehicle, and are not used as the basis for product acceptance. If it is inconsistent with the actual car, the actual car shall prevail.

版权说明：本手册中的内容及技术规格在出版时是有效的。但是东风柳州汽车有限公司保留在任何时候不事先通知的情况下更改技术规格和设计的权利。

Copyright Notice: The contents and technical specifications herein are valid at the time of publication. However, Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right to change the technical specifications and design at any time without prior notice.

技术更新说明：车联网、电子技术产品更新较快，为保证用户体验，请及时升级。

Technical Update Description: the Internet of vehicles, electronic technology products are updated quickly, please upgrade in time to ensure the user experience.

您如果需要查询有关风行游艇汽车的信息，欢迎登录我们的互联网站：

<http://www.fxauto.com.cn>（官方网站）

If you need to find out information about FORTHING U-TOUR Vehicle, welcome to our website:

<http://www.fxauto.com.cn> (Official Website)

祝您一路顺风！

May you have a fine trip.

东风柳州汽车有限公司

二〇二一年十二月

Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd

December 2021

版权所有。如未经东风柳州汽车有限公司书面同意，不得转载或复印本手册的任何内容。

All right reserved. Do not reprint or copy any contents of this manual without the written consent of Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd.

注：本手册封面及图片仅供参考，具体以实车为准。

Note: The cover and pictures of this manual are for reference only. Please refer to the actual vehicle for details.

配置说明 Configuration description

* 星号

在标题或名称后出现的星号“*”，表明所描述的装置或功能只在某些车型中配备，您购买的车辆不一定配备。

The asterisk "*" appearing after the title or name indicates that the device or function described is only available in certain models and that the vehicle you purchased is not necessarily equipped.

安全说明

Safety Instructions

安全标牌-- 贴于车上。

Safety sign- -posted on car.

安全提示-- 标有危险警告符号以及“危险”、“警告”或“注意”三种字样，这些字样的意义是：

Safety tips-marked with hazard warning signs and the words "danger", "warning" or "attention", meaning:



用于指示可能将造成人身重大伤亡的危险。

Use to indicate hazards that may cause significant personal casualties.



用于指示可能造成人身伤害或者其他损坏的危险。

Use to indicate the danger that may cause personal injury or other damage.



用于指示可能造成轻微人身伤害或车辆损伤的危险。

Use to indicate the risk of possible minor bodily injury or vehicle damage.

总目录
Table of Contents

车辆概览索引	6
VEHICLE OVERVIEW INDEX	6
安全与保护	12
SAFETY AND PROTECTION	12
组合仪表	29
INSTRUMENT PACK	29
基本功能操作	51
BASIC FUNCTION OPERATION.....	51
影音娱乐系统	100
VIDEO ENTERTAINMENT SYSTEM.....	100
便利性装置	116
CONVENIENCE DEVICES	116
舒适驾驶	126
COMFORTABLE DRIVING.....	126
保养与维护 MAINTENANCE	199
应急自助处理	217
EMERGENCY SELF-SERVICE TREATMENT.....	217
车辆规格	234
VEHICLE SPECIFICATION	234

车外 VEHICLE OUTSIDE..... 6

- 车门 Doors..... 6
- 后背门 Back Door..... 6
- 外后视镜 External rearview mirror... 6
- 天窗 Sunroof..... 6
- 前雨刮 Front Wiper..... 6
- 后雨刮 Rear Wiper..... 7
- 加油口盖 Filler Cap 7
- 发动机舱盖 Engine Hatch Cover..... 7
- 轮胎 Tyre 7

前部灯具 FRONT LAMPS..... 7

后部灯具 REAR LAMPS..... 7

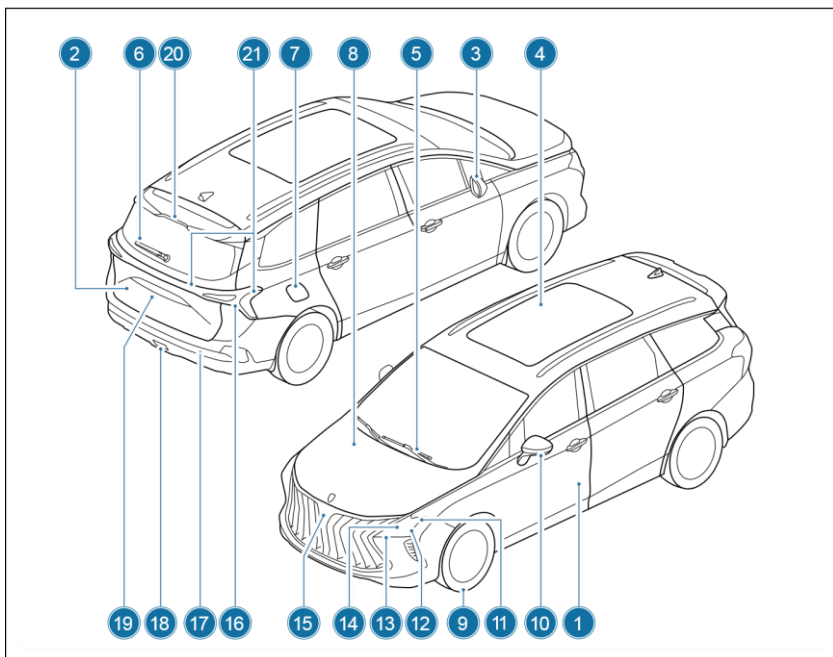
车内 VEHICLE INSIDE 8

- 车内顶部 Top of Vehicle Inside 8
- 仪表台 Instrument Cluster 8
- 副仪表台 Auxiliary Instrument
Cluster 9

车辆概览索引

车外 Outside

Vehicle Overview Index



1. 车门 Doors

从车外解锁和锁止车门 Unlock and lock the door from outside the car 43

电动车窗 Electric car window 63

2. 后背门 Back Door

从车外打开后背门 Open the back door from outside the car 46

从车外关闭后背门 Close the back door from the outside of the car 47

后背门开启高度设置 Back door opening height set *49

3. 外后视镜 External rearview mirror

外后视镜电动调节 Electric adjustment of the external rearview mirror 61

外后视镜折叠和展开 The exterior rearview mirror is folded and unfolded 62

外后视镜加热除霜 External rearview mirror is heated to defrost 62

4. 天窗 Sunroof

全景天窗 Panoramic sunroof 64

全景天幕 Panoramic sky curtain *66

5. 前雨刮 Front Wiper

前手动雨刮 Front manual wiper 69

前自动雨刮 Front automatic wiper *70

6. 后雨刮 Rear Wiper
后挡风玻璃洗涤 Rear windshield washing
7. 加油口盖 Filler Cap
加注燃油 Filling fuel
8. 发动机舱盖 Engine Hatch Cover
开启/关闭发动机舱盖 Open / close the engine compartment cover

前部灯具 Front Lamps

10. 侧转向灯 Side turn signal
11. 远光辅助灯/日间行车灯*/前位灯
High beam auxiliary lights / daytime running lights * / front lights
12. 日间行车灯*/前位灯 Daytime

后部灯具 Rear Lamps

16. 制动灯 Brake lamp
17. 倒车灯/回复反射器 Reverse car light / Retro-reflector
18. 后雾灯 Rear fog lamp
19. 牌照灯 License plate light
20. 高位制动灯 High brake light
21. 后位灯 Rear lamp

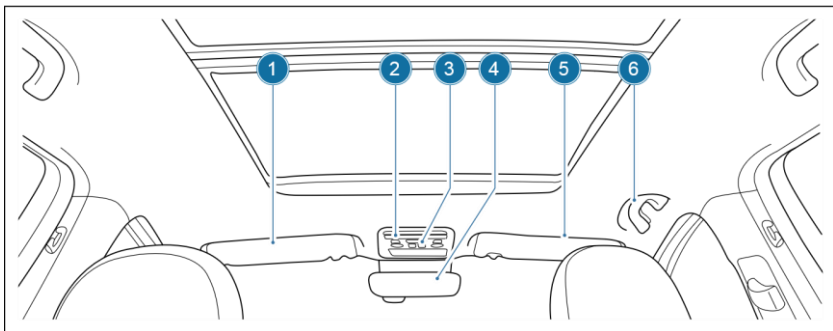
- 机舱布置 Hatch arrangement
9. 轮胎 Tyre
胎压监测系统 Tyre pressure monitoring system
轮胎充气 Tyre inflation
更换备胎 Replace spare tyre

Running lights * / Front lights

13. 转向灯 Turning lamp
14. 远/近光灯 Far / near light
15. 格栅灯 Grille lamp

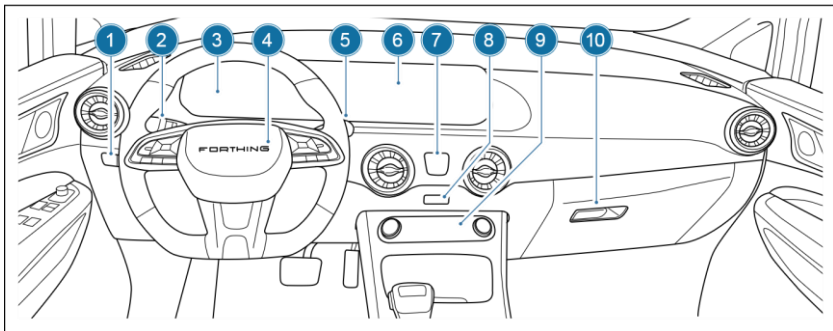
车内 Vehicle Inside

车内顶部 Top of vehicle inside



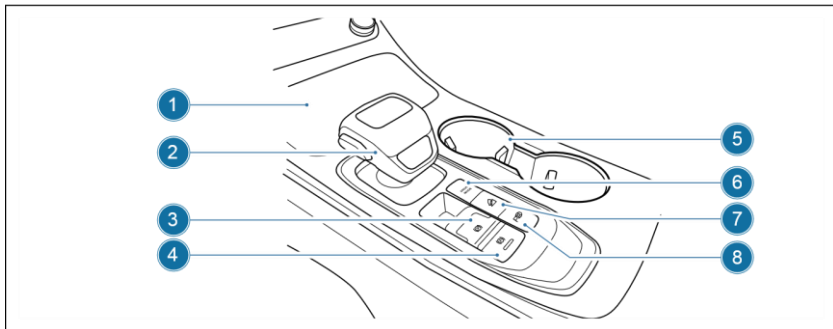
- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. 左侧遮阳板 Left sun visor | 4. 内后视镜 Internal rearview mirror |
| 2. 前排室内灯 Front room lights | 5. 右侧遮阳板 Right sun visor |
| 3. 天窗/遮阳帘控制按键 Sunroof / sunshade control button | 6. 顶部拉手 Top handle |

仪表台 Instrument Panel



- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. 仪表台开关组 Instrument panel switch group | 7. 手机支架接口 Phone bracket interface |
| 2. 灯光控制手柄 Light control handle | 8. 危险警告开关 Hazard warning switch |
| 3. 组合仪表 Instrument pack | 9. 空调控制面板 Air conditioning control panel |
| 4. 方向盘 Steering wheel | 10. 手套箱 Glove box |
| 5. 雨刮控制手柄 Wiper control handle | |
| 6. 显示屏 Display Screen | |

副仪表台 Auxiliary instrument panel



1. 副仪表台上部储物格 Upper storage compartment of the auxiliary instrument panel
2. 换档杆 Gear shift lever
3. 驻车制动器（EPB）开关 Electrical Park Brake (EPB) switch
4. 自动驻车（AUTO HOLD）开关 AUTO HOLD switch
5. 前杯架 Front cup frame
6. 驾驶模式按键 Driving mode button
7. 陡坡缓降（HDC）开关 Hill Descent Control (HDC) switch
8. 自动泊车开关*Automatic parking switch

座椅安全带 SEAT BELT 12

座椅安全带注意事项 Seat belt precautions	12
正确使用座椅安全带 Use the seat belt correctly.....	13
系紧和松开座椅安全带 Tighten and loosen the seat belt	13
座椅安全带肩带高度调节*The seat belt shoulder strap height adjustment	13
座椅安全带预张紧器*Seat belt pretensioner *	14
后排中间座椅安全带 Rear middle seat belt	14
座椅安全带未系报警*The seat belt is not fastened to the alarm.....	15
座椅安全带卷收器 Seat belt retractor	15

安全气囊 AIR BAG 15

安全气囊使用注意事项 Airbag use precautions	15
安全气囊的位置及展开 Location and deployment of the airbag	16
前排安全气囊的展开条件 Deployment conditions for the front airbag.....	17
前排、中间排侧气囊及侧面帘式安全气囊展开条件*Front and middle side airbags and side curtain airbag deployment conditions *.....	17
安全气囊可能展开（充气）的情形	

（除碰撞外）Airbag may be deployed (inflated) (except for collision).....	18
安全气囊（前排）可能不展开的几类碰撞 Several types of collisions where the airbag (front row) may not unfold.....	18
安全气囊（侧面及帘式）可能不展开的几类碰撞*Several types of collisions where the airbags (side and curtain type) may not unfold *	18
事件数据记录系统（EDR）Event Data Record System (EDR)	19

儿童保护措施 CHILD PROTECTION MEASURES 21

儿童乘坐安全说明 Safety instructions for the child ride.....	21
婴儿的保护措施 Protective measures for infants.....	21
幼龄儿童的保护措施 Protective measures for young children	22
大龄儿童的保护措施 Protective measures for elderly children	22
儿童保护装置（用户自备）Child protection device (provided by the user)	23
儿童座椅适用性 Child seat suitability	23
后向式儿童保护装置的安装 Installation of the backward-direction child protection device	25
前向式儿童保护装置的安装	

Installation of forward-type child protection devices.....	25
辅助坐垫的安装 Installation of the auxiliary seat cushion	26
ISOFIX 接口的安装 Installation of the ISOFIX interface	26

安全与保护

Safety and protection

座椅安全带 Seat belt

座椅安全带注意事项

Seat belt precautions

在驾驶车辆前，请务必阅读本章内容，这将有助于您熟悉车辆的正确操作方法，安全地驾驶车辆。

Be sure to read this chapter before driving the vehicle, which will help you to familiarize yourself with the correct way of operating the vehicle safely.



注意 Notice

- 每位乘客在乘坐车辆时都应正确地佩戴座椅安全带。只有正确佩戴座椅安全带，安全气囊才能发挥保护作用，在意外事故中最大限度的保护驾乘人员的安全。
- Each passenger should wear a seat belt correctly while riding. Only by wearing seat belts correctly can the airbag play a protective role and maximize the safety of drivers and passengers in accidents
- 当车辆遇到意外情况紧急制动时，座椅安全带会将驾乘人员束缚在座椅上，防止身体前冲，从而保护驾乘人员免受二次冲撞。
- When the vehicle encounters an unexpected emergency brake, the seat belt will bind the driver and passenger to the seat to prevent the body from rushing forward, thus protecting the driver and passenger from secondary collision.
- 当座椅上放置了儿童安全座椅，或当前座位上的乘客不适合佩戴座椅安全带时，只需要将该座椅安全带保持正常回收状态即可。
- When a child safety seat is placed on the seat, or the passenger in the current seat is not suitable for wearing the seat belt, it is only necessary to keep the seat belt in the normal retracted state.



警告 Warning

- 务必正确佩戴座椅安全带，请勿将座椅安全带横穿下腹部，否则在发生事故时，座椅安全带会强烈地压向下腹部，增加受伤风险。
- Be sure to wear the seat belt correctly, do not cross the seat belt across the lower abdomen, otherwise, the seat belt will strongly press down the abdomen in the accident to increase the risk of injury.
- 肩部座椅安全带要调整到最适合自身的位置，请勿将肩部座椅安全带置于手臂下方。应尽量拉紧座椅安全带，否则会降低功效，增加受伤风险。
- Adjust the shoulder seat belt to your best position, and do not place it under your arm. The seat belt should be tightened as tight as possible, otherwise it will reduce the efficacy and increase the risk of injury.
- 孕妇也应像其他乘客一样，将座椅安全带尽可能低地横跨于髋部，肩部座椅安全带沿肩部完全斜向拉伸，并避免座椅安全带触及隆起的腹部。如果未正确系好座椅安全带，在紧急制动或发生碰撞时，可能导致孕妇和胎儿受到危险。
- Pregnant women should also, like other passengers, cross the hip as low as possible, stretch the shoulder seat belt fully obliquely along the shoulder, and avoid touching the bulging abdomen. If the seat belt has not been properly fastened, the pregnant woman and the fetus may be endangered in case of emergency braking or collision.
- 儿童乘坐车辆时，一定要使用合适的保护装置，并且不能让儿童坐在前排座椅上。
- When children ride in the vehicle, be sure to use appropriate restraints and do not allow children to sit in the front seats.



警告 Warning

每位乘客只允许使用一条座椅安全带，请勿将婴儿或者儿童抱在怀里，然后绕过他们系上座椅安全带，这会导致乘客在事故中受到严重伤害。

Only one seat belt is allowed for each passenger, do not hold the baby or child in your arms, and then bypass them to fasten the seat belt, which results in serious injury in the accident.

正确使用座椅安全带

Use the seat belt correctly



1. 拉伸肩部座椅安全带，将其斜跨整个肩部，但不要触及颈部或从肩部滑脱。

Stretch the shoulder seat belt and slash it across the entire shoulder, but do not touch the neck or slip off the shoulder.

2. 腰部座椅安全带应尽可能低地横跨于髋部。

The waist seat belt shall span across the hip as low as possible.

3. 调节座椅靠背的位置，使靠背处于相对舒适的位置。

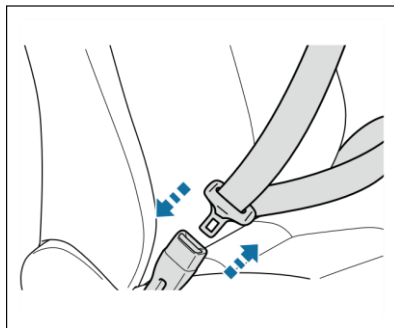
Adjust the seat back position in a relatively comfortable position

4. 请勿扭曲座椅安全带。

Do not distort the seat belt.

系紧和松开座椅安全带

Tighten and loosen the seat belt



1. 从收缩装置中拉出座椅安全带并将锁舌插入锁扣，直至听到“咔嚓”声，说明座椅安全带已锁紧。

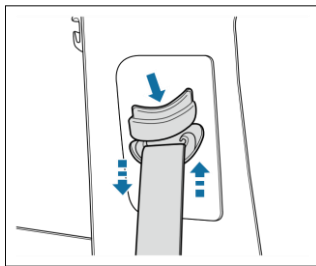
Pull the seat belt from the contraction device and insert the lock tongue into the lock until you heard a click sound indicating that the seat belt is locked.

2. 如需解开座椅安全带，按下锁扣上的释放按钮即可。

To unfasten the seat belt, press the release button on the latch.

座椅安全带肩带高度调节*

Seat belt shoulder strap height adjustment *



1. 按压座椅安全带肩带高度调节器上部，将其上下移动到所需位置直至听到“咔嚓”声。

Press the upper part of the seat belt height regulator and move it up and down to the desired position until you hear a click sound.

- 在不按压的情况下试着下移调节器，确定其已锁定到位。
Try moving the down regulator without pressing to determine that it is locked in place.

座椅安全带预张紧器*

Seat belt pretensioner *

车辆受到某些严重的正面或侧面碰撞时，座椅安全带预张紧器会自动收紧，从而快速保护驾驶员及乘客。

In some severe front or side collisions, the seat belt pretensioner will automatically tighten to quickly protect the driver and passengers.

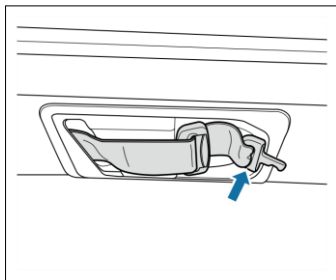


注意 Notice

在发生轻微的正面碰撞、侧面碰撞、后面碰撞或翻车时，预张紧器可能不会被激活。
The pretensioner may not be activated in case of a slight frontal impact, side impact, rear impact, or rollover.

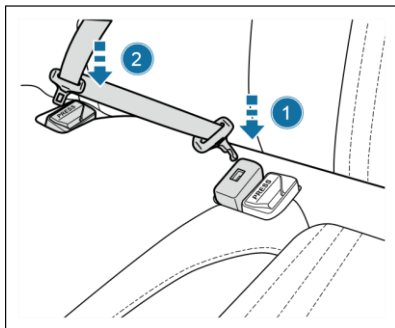
后排中间座椅安全带

Rear middle seat belt



- 从后排中间座椅上方顶棚处抽出座椅安全带。

Pull out the seat belt from the ceiling above the rear middle seat.



- 将安全带拉过身体，注意不要扭曲。
Pull the seat belt over you and be careful not to twist.
- 座椅安全带有两个锁舌，先将小锁舌①插入座椅左侧的小锁扣，再拉住座椅安全带中间的大锁舌插入座椅右侧的大锁扣②。

There are two lock tongues on the seat belt. First, insert the small lock tongue ① into the small lock button on the left side of the seat, and then pull the large lock tongue in the middle of the seat belt into the large lock button ② on the right side of the seat.

- 直至听到“咔嚓”声，说明座椅安全带已锁紧。

Until a click is heard, indicating that the seat belt is locked.

座椅安全带未系报警*

An alarm will be given when the seat belt is not fastened *

车辆配有驾驶员安全带未系警告灯，部分车型还配有前排乘客和中间排乘客安全带未系警告灯。当检测到驾乘人员安全带未系时，组合仪表上对应警告灯点亮，同时蜂鸣器会持续报警直至驾乘人员系好座椅安全带。

The vehicle is equipped with the driver's seat belt indicator, and some models are equipped with the front and middle seat belt indicator. When the seat belt of the driver and passenger is not fastened, the corresponding indicator is on, and the buzzer will continue to alarm until the driver and passenger fasten the seat belt.

座椅安全带卷收器

Seat belt retractor

每个座椅安全带均配有一个安全带卷收器。正常驾驶时，卷收器使座椅安全带保持一定的拉力，驾乘人员仍然可在座椅上自由活动。而在遇到紧急事故时，卷收器便会自动收紧，将驾乘人员的身体固定在座椅上，避免受到伤害。如发现卷收器锁止功能异常，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

Each seat belt is equipped with a seat belt retractor. During normal driving, it keeps the seat belt at a certain tension, and the driver and passenger can still move freely on the seat. In case of an emergency,

it will automatically tighten, holding the driver's body to the seat to avoid injury. If you find the retractor lock function is abnormal, please contact the Dongfeng FORTHING special service station in time.

警告 Warning

用户不得自行维修、调节和拆装座椅安全带及卷收器，如需维修或更换请联系东风风行特约服务站。

Users shall not repair, adjust and disassemble the seat belt and retractor by themselves. Please contact the Dongfeng FORTHING special service station for repair or replacement.

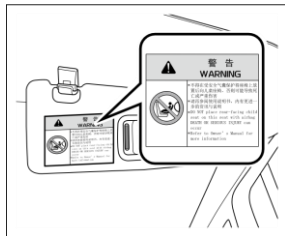
安全气囊 Airbag

当车辆发生正面或侧面碰撞的程度达到安全气囊展开要求时，安全气囊会充气张开，减轻驾乘人员头部及胸部受到的撞击伤害。

When the front or side collision of the vehicle meets the airbag deployment requirements, the airbag will inflate and expand to reduce the impact damage to the driver's head and chest.

安全气囊使用注意事项

Precautions on use of airbag



- 右侧遮阳板上有安全气囊警告标识。请勿在受安全气囊保护（激活

状态下)的座椅上放置后向儿童安全座椅,否则在发生碰撞事故时,充气中的正面安全气囊会以巨大的冲力撞击儿童使其受到严重伤害。

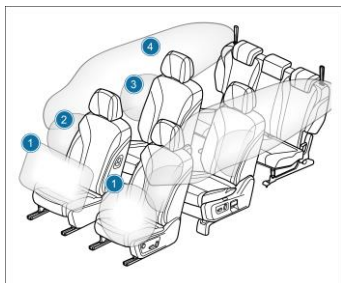
- There is an airbag warning sign on the right sun visor. Do not place the backward child safety seat on the airbag protected (activated) seat, otherwise the inflated front airbag will seriously damage the child with great impact in the event of a collision.
- 请勿将任何物品放置在仪表台或粘贴在方向盘装饰盖等位置,因为安全气囊展开时,这些物品可能会被弹出导致驾乘人员伤亡。
- Do not place any items in the instrument panel or stick them in the decoration lid of steering wheel, as they may be ejected, thus causing casualties of driver and passengers.
- 请勿在衣帽挂钩上悬挂衣架或其他坚硬物体。侧面帘式安全气囊展开时,这些物品可能会弹出并导致乘客伤亡。
- Do not hang the clothes-rack or other hard objects on the cat-and-coat hook. As the side curtain airbags unfold, these items may be ejected and cause passenger casualties.
- 安全气囊展开后温度很高,请勿立

即触摸任何相关部件。

- After the airbag is deployed, the temperature is very high. Do not touch any relevant components immediately.
- 安全气囊展开时,会伴随较大的响声,可能会暂时影响听力。
- The airbag is deployed with large sound, which may temporarily affect the hearing.
- 如果安全气囊展开后感觉呼吸困难,请打开车门或车窗通风,或在确保安全的情况下离开车辆,并应尽快冲洗身上的残留物,以免刺激皮肤。
- If you feel difficult to breathe after the airbag is deployed, open the door or window for ventilation, or leave the vehicle for safety, and rinse the residue as soon as possible to avoid stimulating the skin.
- 如果安全气囊所在部位已损坏或破裂,请联系东风风行特约服务站进行更换。
- If the airbag is damaged or broken, please contact the Dongfeng FORTHING special service station for replacement.

安全气囊的位置及展开

Location and deployment of the airbag



1. 前排安全气囊 Front air bag

有助于保护驾驶员和前排乘客的头部及胸部免受车内部件的撞击。

To help protect heads and chest of the driver and front passenger from the impact of the parts inside the car.

2. 前排侧气囊*Front side airbag

有助于保护驾驶员和前排乘客的躯干部位免受车内部件的撞击。

To help protect the torso of the driver and front passenger from the impact of the parts inside the car.

3. 中间排侧气囊*Middle side airbag

有助于保护中间排乘客的躯干部位免受车内部件的撞击。

To help to protect the torso of the middle passenger from the impact of the parts inside the car.

4. 侧面帘式安全气囊*Side curtain-type airbags

- 有助于保护驾驶员和前排乘客的头部。
- Helps to protect the heads of the driver and front passenger.
- 有助于保护中间排外侧乘客的头

部。

- Helps to protect the head of passengers outside the middle row.
- 有助于保护后排外侧乘客的头部。
- Helps to protect the head of the rear outside passenger.

警告 Warning

由于前排侧气囊和侧面帘式安全气囊展开时具有相当大的速度和力量，因此车辆在行驶时，禁止将头部靠近侧气囊和侧气囊的展开区域，否则可能会受到人身伤害。

Because the front airbags and side curtain airbags have considerable speed and force when unfolding, it is forbidden to put the head near the unfolding area of the side air bag and the side air curtain when driving, otherwise personal injury may be caused.

前排安全气囊的展开条件

Deployment conditions for the front air bag

前排安全气囊在车辆以 25km/h 及以上车速与实心墙发生正面碰撞时展开。

The front air bag unfolds when the vehicle hits the solid wall at 25 km/h and above.

前排、中间排侧气囊及侧面帘式安全气囊展开条件*

Front and middle side airbags and side curtain airbag deployment conditions *

当车辆发生中度至重度的侧面碰撞，且达到设计的作用值时，前排、中间排侧气囊及侧面帘式安全气囊可以展开。

When the vehicle has a moderate to severe side collision, and reaches the

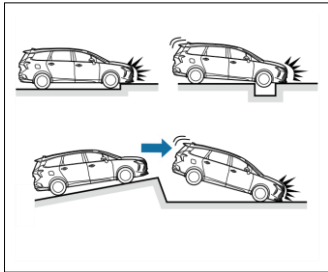
designed effect value, the front and middle side airbags and side curtain airbags can be deployed.

安全气囊可能展开（充气）的情形（除碰撞外）

Situations where the airbag may be deployed (inflated) (except for collision)

如果车辆底部遭受严重撞击，前排安全气囊也可能展开。图中列举了一些示例。

The front airbag may also be deployed if the bottom of the vehicle is severely hit. Some examples are enumerated in Fig.



- 撞到路缘、人行道边缘或坚硬表面
- Crash into a curb, sidewalk edge, or hard surface
- 掉入或跳越深坑
- Fall into or jump deeper into the pit
- 车轮硬着地或车辆跌落
- The wheels land hard or the vehicle falls

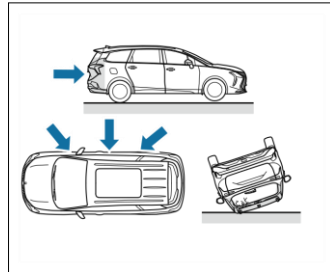
安全气囊（前排）可能不展开的几类碰撞

Several types of collisions where

the airbag (front row) may not unfold

如果车辆遭受侧面碰撞、后面碰撞、翻车或低速正面碰撞，前排安全气囊一般不会展开。但是，不管何种类型的碰撞，只要让车辆产生足够的前向减速度，前排安全气囊就可能展开。

The front airbag generally does not unfold if the vehicle suffers a side collision, rear collision, rollover, or low-speed head-on collision. However, regardless of the type of collision, the front airbags may be deployed as long as the vehicle produces enough front deceleration.



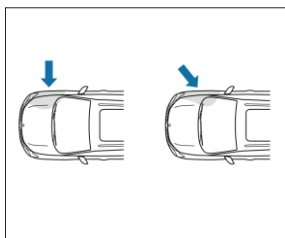
- 后面碰撞
- Rear collision
- 侧面碰撞
- Side collision
- 翻车
- Turnover

安全气囊（侧面及帘式）可能不展开的几类碰撞*

Several types of collisions where the airbags (side and curtain type) may not unfold *

如果车辆遭受的侧面碰撞与车身成一定夹角，或遭受侧面碰撞的车身部位并非乘客车厢，则前排侧气囊和侧面帘式安全气囊可能不会展开。

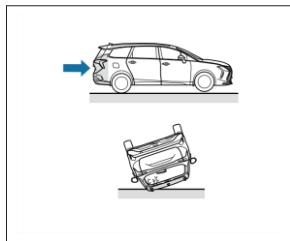
The front side airbag and side curtain airbags may not unfold if the side collision is at an angle to the vehicle body, or if the vehicle body that suffers the side collision is not a passenger compartment.



- 非乘客车厢的车身侧面碰撞
- Side collision of non-passenger cars
- 与车身成一定角度的侧面碰撞
- Side collision at an angle with the body

如果车辆遭受后面碰撞、翻车、低速侧方碰撞或低速正面碰撞，则前排侧气囊和侧面帘式安全气囊可能不会展开。

The front side airbag and side curtain airbags may not unfold if a vehicle suffers a rear collision, rollover, low-speed side collision, or low-speed frontal collision



- 后面碰撞
- Rear collision
- 翻车
- Turnover

事件数据记录系统 (EDR)

Event Data Record System (EDR)

本车配备了事件数据记录系统 (EDR)，该系统记录数据可用于碰撞事故分析，具体参数见下表：

The vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Record System (EDR), which can be used for crash analysis, and the specific parameters are shown in the table below:

序号 No.	参数名称 Parameter name	含义 Implication	单位 Unit
1	纵向 delta-V Longitudinal delta-V	车辆纵向速度的变化 Changes in the longitudinal speed of the vehicle	km/h
2	最大记录纵向 delta-V Maximum-recorded longitudinal delta-V	纵向车辆速度累计变化最大值 Maximum cumulative change in longitudinal vehicle speed	km/h
3	最大记录纵向 delta-V 时间 Maximum-recorded longitudinal delta-V time	达到纵向车辆速度累计变化最大值的时间 Time to reach the maximum cumulative change in the longitudinal vehicle speed	ms
4	削波标志 Cut wave sign	表示 EDR 采集加速度 (横向、纵向) 首次达到传感器量程的时间点 Indicates when the acceleration speed (lateral, longitudinal) acquired by EDR reaches the sensor range for the first time	ms
5	车辆速度 Vehicle speed	轮边线速度 Wheel line speed	km/h

序号 No.	参数名称 Parameter name	含义 Implication	单位 Unit
6	行车制动, 开启或关闭 Service brake, on or off	用来检测驾驶员是否踩下刹车踏板 Used to detect whether the driver presses the brake pedal	/
7	驾驶员安全带状态 Driver seat belt status	驾驶员安全带锁扣开关的状态 Status of the driver's seat belt lock switch	/
8	加速踏板位置, 全开位置百分比 Accelerator pedal position, full open position percentage	油门踏板实际位置与驾驶员全部踩下位置的百分比 The percentage of actual accelerator pedal position and positions fully pressed by the driver	/
9	每分钟转数 RPM	车辆发动机主曲轴的分钟转速 RPM of the main crankshaft of the vehicle engine	r/min
10	事件中上电周期 Power cycle in the event	从记录 EDR 数据的 ECU 首次使用以来, 到事件发生时记录 EDR 数据的 ECU 动力循环次数。The number of ECU power cycles for recording EDR data from the EDR data since the first use.	周期 Cycle
11	读取时上电周期 Power cycle when reading	从记录 EDR 数据的 ECU 首次使用以来, 到读取时记录 EDR 数据的 ECU 动力循环次数。 The number of ECU power cycles for recording the EDR data from the ECU recording the EDR data was first used.	周期 Cycle
12	事件数据记录完整状态 Complete status of event data recorded	事件是否被完整记录 Whether the event is fully recorded	/
13	本次事件距离上次事件时间间隔 This event is separated from the last event	两次事件时间间隔 Time interval between two events	s
14	车辆识别代号 Vehicle identification code	车辆 VIN 码 Vehicle VIN code	/
15	记录 EDR 数据的 ECU 硬件编号 The ECU hardware number for recording the EDR data	EDR 装置的硬件编号 Hardware number of the EDR device	/
16	记录 EDR 数据的 ECU 序列号 The ECU serial number for recording the EDR data	EDR 装置的产品序列号 Product serial number of the EDR device	/
17	记录 EDR 数据的 ECU 软件编号 The ECU software number for recording the EDR data	EDR 装置的软件编号 Software number of the EDR device	/

- EDR 系统集成于安全气囊控制器中, 记录的数据可以通过东风风行

特约服务站专用诊断设备提取。

- The EDR system is integrated in the airbag controller, and the recorded data can be extracted through the special diagnostic equipment of Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.
- EDR 系统记录的车辆速度来自于本车配备的防抱死制动系统 (ABS) 的车轮线速度。
- The vehicle speed recorded by the EDR system comes from the wheel line speed of the Antilock Brake System (ABS) equipped with the vehicle.
- EDR 系统记录的数据分为非锁定事件数据和锁定事件数据。前者为达到 EDR 记录条件, 但未达到安全气囊系统展开条件时记录的数据, 后者为达到安全气囊系统展开条件时记录的数据。非锁定事件数据按照时间先后顺序覆盖之前非锁定事件数据; 锁定事件数据无法被后续事件的数据覆盖, 总共能够记录三次事件数据。
- The data recorded by the EDR system is divided into non-locked event data and locked event data. The former is the data recorded when the EDR recording conditions are met, but the airbag system deployment conditions are not met, while the

latter is the data recorded when the airbag system deployment conditions are met. Non-locked event data overwrites previous non-locked event data in chronological order; locked event data cannot be overwritten by data from subsequent events, recording a total of three event data.

儿童保护措施

Child protection measures

儿童乘坐安全说明

Safety instructions for the child ride

儿童乘坐车辆时，请务必阅读本章内容。

Be sure to read this chapter when children are riding in a vehicle.

儿童应使用合适的保护装置。

Children shall use suitable protective devices.

儿童因太小不能佩戴座椅安全带时，应将其安置在后排被认可的儿童保护装置中。

When children are too small to wear seat belts, they should be placed in the approved child protection device in the rear row.

大龄儿童必须佩带三点式座椅安全带来加以保护，必要时，还应加装辅助安全坐垫。

Elderly children must wear a three-

point seat safety belt to protect them, and if necessary, they should also be equipped with auxiliary safety cushions.

建议儿童坐在中间排或后排座椅上。行驶过程中，请使用后门儿童安全锁或车窗锁止开关，以防儿童打开车门或意外操作电动车窗。

Children are recommended to sit in the middle or rear seats. During driving, use the rear door child safety lock or the window lock switch in case the child opens the door or accidentally operates the electric window.

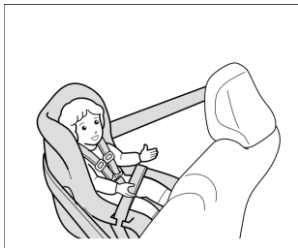


警告 Warning

- 请勿让儿童携带或使用智能钥匙。
- Do not allow the children to carry or use the smart keys.
- 儿童可能会启动车辆或将换挡杆换至N档。儿童在玩耍车窗、天窗、全景天窗或其他车辆装备时，还可能伤到自己。
- Children may start the vehicle or change the shift lever to N gear. Children may also hurt themselves while playing with car windows, sunroof, panoramic sunroof, or other vehicle equipment.
- 请勿将儿童单独留在车内，这可能导致儿童在密闭的车内因为过高的气温而伤亡。
- Do not leave the child alone in the car, which may cause the child casualties in the closed car due to excessive

婴儿的保护措施

Protective measures for infants



一周岁以下婴儿的颈部非常脆弱，如果面朝前方乘坐，当发生正面碰撞时容易造成颈部伤害，因此建议使用后向式儿童保护装置。

The neck of infants under one year old is very fragile. If they face ahead, it is easy to cause neck injury when a head-on collision occurs, so it is recommended to use backward child protection devices.

幼龄儿童的保护措施

Protective measures for young children



根据儿童保护装置制造厂家规定的

体重和身高要求，一周岁以上的儿童在乘坐时，应使用前向式儿童保护装置。

According to the weight and height requirements stipulated by the manufacturer of the child protection device, children over one year old should use the forward child protection device when riding.

大龄儿童的保护措施

Protective measures for elderly children



建议所有12岁以下的儿童乘坐于中间排或后排座椅上，并加以保护。如果座椅安全带不合身，可为儿童安装辅助坐垫。

All children under 12 are advised to ride in the middle or rear seats and to be protected. If the seat belt is not fit, install an auxiliary cushion for children.

儿童保护装置（用户自备）

Child protection device (provided by the user)

儿童保护装置需要用户自备，请使用符合 GB27887-2011 标准的儿童保护装置。

Child protection device shall be provided by the user. Please use the child protection device as per GB27887-2011.

儿童座椅适用性

Child seat suitability

本车除采用三点式安全带为儿童提供保护外，中间排座椅还提供两个标准“ISOFIX”接口的儿童约束系统，可根据需要选择合适的儿童约束系统。

In addition to the three-point seat belt to provide protection for children, the middle seat also provides two standard "ISOFIX" interfaces, selecting the appropriate child restraint system as required.

本车适用的儿童约束系统（CRS）及安装位置如下表。

The applicable child restraint system (CRS) and installation location are shown in the table below.

质量组 Quality group	乘坐位置Position			
	前排乘客 Front passenger	中间排左 Middle row left	中间排右 Middle row right	后排 Rear row
0组（小于10KG） Group 0 (less than 10KG)	X	U	U	X
0+组（小于13KG） Group 0+ (less than 13KG)	X	U	U	X
I组（9Kg到18KG） Group I (9Kg to 18KG)	X	U	U	X
II组（15Kg到25KG） Group II (15Kg to 25KG)	X	U	U	X
III组（22Kg到36KG） Group III (22Kg to 36KG)	X	U	U	X

上表的关键词含义如下：

The keywords in the above table have the following meaning:

U：适用于获得本质量组认证的通用类儿童约束系统。

U: Applicable to the universal child restraint system certified by this quality group.

X：本座椅位置不适用于本质量组的儿童约束系统。

X: This seat position is not applicable to the child restraint system of this quality group.

如果采用“ISOFIX”标准的儿童约束系统，该系统与车辆的适应性信息如下表所示。

If the "ISOFIX" standard child restraint system is used, the adaptability information of the system and the vehicle is shown in the table below.

质量组 Quality group	尺码分类 Size	固定模块 Fixed	车上ISOFIX位置 ISOFIX position on the car
----------------------	--------------	---------------	--

	classification	module	前排乘客 Front passenger	中间排左 Middle row left	中间排右 Middle row right	后排 Rear row
手提婴儿床 Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	X
0组 Group 0	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	X
0+组, 小于 13KG Group 0+, less than 13KG	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	X
I组 Group I	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF	IUF	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IUF	IUF	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF	IUF	X

上表的关键词含义如下:

The keywords in the above table have the following meaning:

IUF: 适用于获得本质量组认证的前向通用类 ISOFIX 儿童约束系统。

IUF: Applicable to the forward generic ISOFIX child restraint system certified by this quality group.

IL: 适用于特殊的 ISOFIX 儿童约束系统。这些约束系统可能是特殊车辆类、受限制类或半通用性。

IL: Applicable to the special ISOFIX child restraint system. These restraint systems may be special vehicle class, restricted class, or semi-generic.

X: 该位置不适用于本质量组或尺寸类别的 ISOFIX 儿童约束系统。

X: This location is not applicable to the ISOFIX child restraint system for this quality group or size category.

A—ISO/F3: 全高度前向初学走路儿童用约束系统。

A-ISO / F3: forward restraint system for toddlers at full height.

B—ISO/F2: 降低高度前向初学走路儿童用约束系统。

B-ISO / F2: restraint system for toddlers with reduced height.

B1—ISO/F2X: 降低高度前向初学走路儿童用约束系统。

B1-ISO / F2X: restraint system for toddlers with reduced height.

C—ISO/R3: 全高度后向初学走路儿童用约束系统。

C-ISO / R3: restraint system for toddlers at full height.

D—ISO/R2: 降低高度后向初学走路儿童用约束系统。

D-ISO / R2: A restraint system for toddlers with reduced height.

E—ISO/R1: 后向婴儿用约束系统。

E-ISO / R1: Backward restraint system for infants.

F—ISO/L1: 面向左侧位置的儿童约束系统（手提婴儿床）。

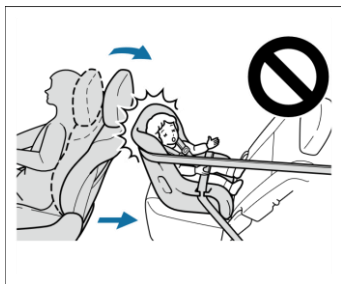
F-ISO / L1: Child restraint system (carrycot) facing the left position.

G—ISO/L2: 面向右侧位置的儿童约束系统（手提婴儿床）。

G-ISO / L2: Child restraint system (carrycot) facing the right position.

后向式儿童保护装置的安装

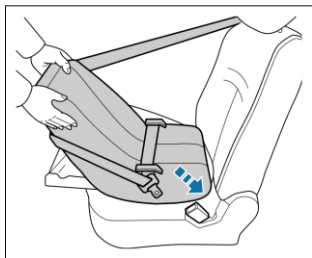
Installation of the backward-direction child protection device



警告 Warning

如果主驾驶座椅妨碍后向式儿童保护装置的正确安装，则应该将后向式儿童保护装置安装在中间排右侧座椅上。

If the main driving seat hinders the correct installation of the rear child protection device, the rear child protection device should be installed on the middle row right seat.



根据制造厂提供的说明，将座椅安

全带穿过或绕过向后式儿童保护装置，再把锁舌插入锁扣，确保座椅安全带未扭曲并保持紧绷，确认锁舌和锁扣牢固锁定，左右晃动确保儿童保护装置固定牢靠。

According to the instructions provided by the manufacturer, put the seat belt through or around the backward child protection device, and then insert the lock tongue into the lock buckle to ensure that the seat belt is not distorted and remains tight, confirm that the lock tongue and lock button are fixed, and shake from side to side to ensure that the child protection device is secure.

前向式儿童保护装置的安装

Installation of forward-type child protection devices



根据制造厂提供的说明，将座椅安全带穿过前向式儿童保护装置并将锁舌插入锁扣，确保安全带未扭曲并保持紧绷。确认锁舌和锁扣牢固锁定，将儿童保护装置向座垫和座位靠背按压，让座椅安全带完全收缩，使儿童保护装置紧紧固定，左右晃动确保儿童保护装置固定牢靠。

According to the instructions provided by the manufacturer, pass the seat belt through the forward-type child protection device and insert the lock tongue into the lock buckle to ensure that the belt is not distorted and remains tight. Confirm that the lock tongue and lock are firmly locked, press the child protection device to the seat cushion and seat back, make the child protection device tightly fixed, and shake from side to side to ensure that the child protection device is firmly secured.

辅助坐垫的安装

Installation of the auxiliary seat cushion



将辅助坐垫放置在座椅上，让儿童

坐在辅助坐垫上，根据制造厂提供的说明，将座椅安全带正确跨过儿童肩部，腰部安全带尽可能低至儿童的臀部位置，再把锁舌插入锁扣，确保安全带未扭曲并保持紧绷。

Place the auxiliary cushion on the seat and let the children sit on the auxiliary cushion. According to the instructions provided by the manufacturer, put the seat belt across the children's shoulder correctly, lower the waist belt as low as possible to the children's hip position, and insert the lock tongue into the lock buckle to ensure that the seat belt is not distorted and remains tight.

ISOFIX 接口的安装

Installation of the ISOFIX interface

标准 ISO 规格的儿童安全装置可以由 ISOFIX 接口来固定。在安装和使用时请遵照儿童保护装置制造商的操作说明与安全提示，否则可能影响保护效果。

Child safety devices with standard ISO specifications can be fixed by the ISOFIX interface. Follow the operating instructions and safety tips during installation and use, otherwise the protection effect may be affected.



1. 找到中间排座椅座垫与靠背夹缝中的 ISOFIX 接口位置。

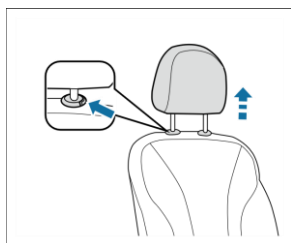
Locate the ISOFIX interface position in the middle seat cushion and back rest joint.



2. 将儿童安全装置的 ISOFIX 接口对准座垫底端的对应 ISOFIX 接口，刚性接口插入即可，弹性接口扣上即可。

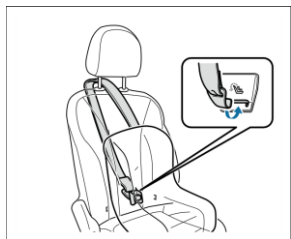
The ISOFIX interface of the child safety device is aligned at the corresponding ISOFIX interface at the bottom of the seat cushion. The

rigid interface can be inserted and the elastic interface can be buckled.



3. 按下座椅头枕调节按键，将头枕升至最高点。

Press the seat headrest adjustment button to raise the headrest to the top point.



4. 将儿童安全装置的卡钩紧扣到固定锚支座上，并紧固顶部系带，确保扣牢。

Attach the child safety hook to the fixed anchor support and tighten the top straps to ensure that it is tightly fastened.

警告灯和指示灯 WARNING LIGHT**AND INDICATOR LIGHT 29**

型式一液晶屏 Type I LCD (Liquid Crystal Display).....	29
型式二断码屏 Type II broken code screen	29
警告灯 Warning light.....	30
指示灯 Indicator light	34

组合仪表概览 SUMMARY OF**INSTRUMENT PACK 38**

型式一液晶屏 Type I LCD screen..	38
型式二断码屏 Type II broken code screen	39
转速表 Speed counter	39
车外温度 Temperature outside the vehicle.....	39
综合信息 Comprehensive information	39
时间 Time	40
车速表 Speed meter	40
燃油表名 Fuel gauge	40
小计里程 Small mileage.....	40
档位信息 Gear information.....	40

总计里程 Total mileage 40

水温表 Water temperature gauge... 40

组合仪表控制 INSTRUMENT PACK**CONTROL 40**

型式一 Type I..... 40

型式二 Type II..... 40

综合信息 (型式一) INTEGRATED**INFORMATION (TYPE I) 40**

行车信息 Driving information..... 41

驾驶辅助 Driving assistance..... 43

多媒体 multi-media
 43 |

地图导航 Map navigation..... 44

报警信息 Warning message
 44 |

设置 Set-up..... 44

疲劳驾驶提醒 Fatigue driving
reminder
 44 |**综合信息 (型式二)****COMPREHENSIVE INFORMATION****(TYPE II)..... 45**

行车信息 Driving information..... 45

胎压信息 Tyre pressure information
 46 |
车道偏离 lane departure
 47 |

组合仪表

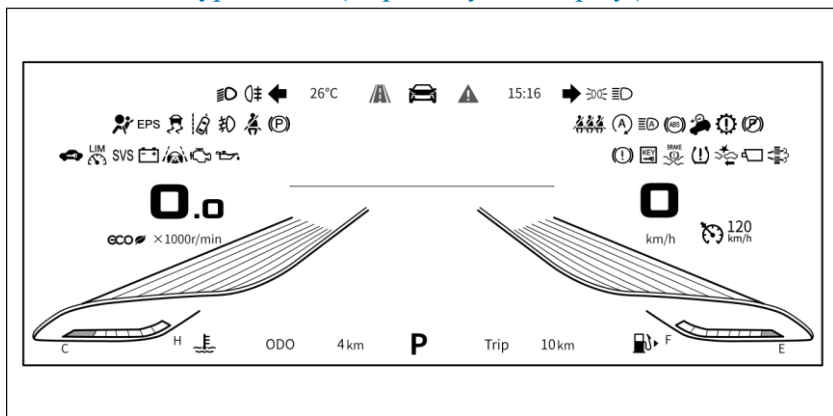
Instrument Pack

警告灯和指示灯 Warning Lights and Indicators

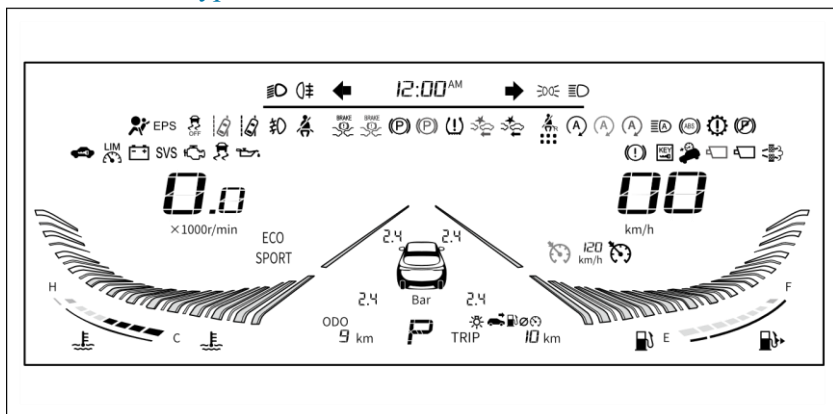
警告灯和指示灯提示驾驶员车辆各系统的状态。

The warning lights and indicators indicate the driver of the status of each system of the vehicle.

型式一液晶屏 Type I LCD (Liquid Crystal Display)



型式二断码屏 Type II broken code screen



警告灯 Warning light

警告灯提示驾驶员车辆部分系统可能出现故障。

The warning light indicates the driver that some system of the vehicle may fail.

燃油油位低警告灯（黄色）

Low fuel warning light (yellow)



当燃油即将耗尽时，此灯点亮，提示燃油过少，请尽快加注燃油。

When the fuel is about to run out, this light is on, indicating too little fuel, please fill the fuel as soon as possible.

冷却液温度高警告灯（红色）

High coolant temperature warning light (red)



发动机冷却液温度过高时，此灯点亮。此时请降低车速并安全地停靠到路边，打开发动机舱盖并停车休息一段时间，如果警告灯依然点亮，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

This lamp lights on when the engine coolant temperature is too high. At this time, please reduce the speed and stop safely to the roadside, open the engine compartment cover and stop for a period of time. If the warning light is still lit, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

变速器系统故障警告灯（黄色）

Transmission system fault warning light (yellow)



当变速器有故障时，此灯点亮，此时请重新启动车辆，如果此灯依然点亮，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

When the transmission fails, the light is on. Please restart the vehicle. If the light is still on, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

胎压系统故障警告灯（黄色）

Tyre pressure system fault warning light (yellow)



当胎压胎温异常或胎压监测功能出现故障时，此灯点亮。The lamp is turned on when the temperature of tyre pressure is abnormal or the tyre pressure monitoring function fails.

- 如果此灯点亮是因为胎压过高或过低，请及时将轮胎气压调整至标准胎压，如果调整后此灯依然点亮，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。
- If the light is lit because the tyre pressure is too high or too low, please adjust the tyre pressure to the standard in time. If the lamp is still lit after the adjustment, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station in time.
- 如果此灯点亮是因为胎压系统未

匹配或传感器信号丢失时，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

- If the light is lit because the tyre pressure system does not match or the sensor signal is lost, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station in time.

PEPS 警告灯（红色）

PEPS warning light (red)



当 PEPS 系统处于报警状态时，此灯点亮。详细的报警信息将以文字形式显示在组合仪表综合信息区中（文字提醒仅针对部分车型）。

This light lits when the PEPS system is in alarm. Detailed alarm information will be displayed in text in the comprehensive information area of the instrument pack (text reminder only for some models)

驻车故障警告灯（黄色）

Parking fault warning light (yellow)



当驻车系统存在故障时，此灯点亮。此时驻车系统仍有驻车能力，但是无法自动驻车，请向上拉起 EPB 开关进行驻车，并尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

This light is lit when the parking system is faulty. At this time, it still has the parking ability, but can not automatically park, please pull up the EPB switch for parking,

and contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station as soon as possible.

蓄电池充电故障警告灯（红色）

Battery charging fault warning light (red)



当蓄电池充电发生故障时，此灯点亮。此时请关闭所有不必要的电气设备，并及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

This light will illuminate when the battery charging fails. Please close all unnecessary electrical equipment, and contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station in time.

转向系统故障警告灯（黄色）

Steering system warning light (yellow)



当电动助力转向系统出现故障时，此灯点亮。如果车辆行驶时此灯点亮，请及时降低车速并安全地停靠到路边，关闭发动机 5 分钟后重新启动，如果此灯不再点亮，即可正常行驶，如果此灯仍然持续点亮，请尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

This light will illuminate when the power steering system fails. If it is on during driving, please reduce the speed, stop safely to the roadside, and turn off the engine for 5 minutes. If it is no longer on, you can drive normally. If it continues to light, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station as soon as possible.

ABS 系统故障警告灯（黄色）

ABS System warning light (yellow)



如果车辆行驶时此灯点亮,说明防抱死制动装置(ABS)出现了故障。此时车辆虽然具有正常的制动能力,但没有防抱死功能,请小心驾驶,并尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

If the light is on during driving, the anti-lock brake system (ABS) is faulty. At this time, although the vehicle has normal braking ability, there is no ABS function, please drive carefully, and contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station as soon as possible.

制动液面过低/制动系统故障警告灯（红色）

Low brake fluid level / brake system fault warning light (red)



当制动液液位下降到低位时,此灯点亮。如果车辆行驶时此灯点亮,可能是制动系统出现了故障,请谨慎驶离道路安全停车,并及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

This light will illuminate when the brake fluid level drops low. If the light is turned on when the vehicle is driving, it may be a brake system failure, please be careful to stop safely, and contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station in

time.

发动机排放故障(MIL)警告灯(黄色)

Engine Emission Fault (MIL) Warning Light (yellow)



当启动开关置于“ON”档时,此灯点亮,车辆启动后,此灯熄灭,属于正常状态。如果此灯持续点亮,说明发动机控制系统可能出现故障,请重新启动车辆并查看该警告灯,如果此灯仍然持续点亮,请联系东风风行特约服务站。

When the start switch is placed in "ON" gear, the light is on. After the vehicle is started, the light is off, which is normal. If it continues to illuminate, the engine control system may be faulty, please restart the vehicle and check the warning light. If it continues to light, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

发动机故障(SVS)警告灯(黄色)

Engine fault (SVS) warning light (yellow)



如果发动机在运转时,此灯持续点亮,说明发动机电喷系统可能存在故障,请重新启动车辆并查看该警告灯,如果该警告灯仍然持续点亮,请联系东风风行特约服务站。If this lamp lights up continuously when the engine is running, it means that there may be a fault in the engine EFI system. Please

restart the vehicle and check the warning light. If the warning light continues to light, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

安全气囊系统故障警告灯（红色）



如果此灯在行驶时持续点亮，说明安全气囊系统存在故障，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

If this light continues to light when driving, it means that there is an airbag system fault, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

安全带未系警告灯（红色）

Safety belt warning light (red)



当启动开关置于“ON”档时，如果驾驶员或前排乘客（部分车型）未系好座椅安全带，则此灯点亮并伴随警报声，当驾驶员或前排乘客全部系上座椅安全带后，此灯熄灭，报警解除。

When the start switch is placed in ON gear, if the driver or front passenger (some models) does not fasten the seat belt, the light is on and accompanied by an alarm sound. When the driver or front passenger fasten the seat belt, the light is off and the alarm is lifted.

后排安全带未系警告灯（红色）*

Rear seat belt warning light (red)



当启动开关置于“ON”档，后排乘客未系好座椅安全带时，此灯点亮并伴随警报声。当后排乘客全部系上座椅安全带后，此灯熄灭，报警解除。根据配置不同，该警告灯的表现方式略有不同。

This light is on with alarm when the start switch is placed in ON and the rear passenger is not fastened to the seat belt. When all the rear passengers fasten their seat belts, the light and the alarm are off. The warning light performs slightly differently depending on the configuration.

机油压力低警告灯（红色）

Low oil pressure warning light (red)



如果在行驶中此灯持续点亮或者闪烁，说明发动机机油量过少，继续驾驶可能会损坏发动机，请立即安全地停靠路边并及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

If the light continues to light up or flash during driving, it means that the engine oil volume is too small, and continued driving may damage the engine, please stop by the roadside immediately and safely and contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station in time.

摄像头故障警告灯（红色）

Camera fault warning light (red)



当驾驶辅助系统存在异常时，此灯闪烁几下后持续点亮。此时驾驶辅助系统无法使用，

请联系东风风行特约服务站。

The light flashes for several times when the driver assistance system is abnormal. At this time, the driving assistance system can not be used, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

前碰撞预警系统警告灯（红色）*

Front collision warning light (red) *



当前碰撞预警系统监测到可能会碰撞到前方物体时，会通过声音、画面进行报警提示，

此时警告灯闪烁，属于正常状态。

When the current collision warning system detects that the object in front may collide, it will give an alarm through the sound and picture. At this time, the warning light is flashing, which is in the normal state.

自动紧急制动系统警告灯（红色）*

Automatic Emergency Brake System warning light (red) *



当自动紧急制动系统启动时，会通过声音、画面进行报警提示，此时警告灯会闪烁，属于正常状态。

When the automatic emergency braking system is activated, an alarm will be prompted through the sound and picture. At

this time, the warning light will flash, which is in the normal state.

指示灯


Indicator light

指示灯用于告知驾驶员车辆各系统的工作状态，点亮或闪烁时多数属于正常状态，车辆并无故障。

The indicator light is used to inform the driver of the working state of each system of the vehicle. It is mostly normal when lit or flashing and there is no fault.

运动模式指示灯（绿色）


Sports mode indicator lamp (green)

 当车辆处于运动模式（SPORT）时，此灯点亮。

This light is on when the vehicle is in motion mode (SPORT).

经济模式指示灯（绿色）


Economic mode indicator light (green)

 当车辆处于经济模式（ECO）时，此灯点亮。

This light is on when the vehicle is in economic mode (ECO).

驻车状态指示灯（红色）

Parking Status indicator lamp (red)

 当 EPB 开关拉起时，此灯点亮。如果驻车后此灯未点亮或是在 EPB 开关按下后仍持续点亮，请联系东风风行特约服务站。This light is on when the EPB switch is pulled

up. If it does not light up after parking or continues to light up after the EPB switch is pressed, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

自动驻车工作指示灯（绿色）

AUTO HOLD indicator lamp (green)



当自动驻车系统正在工作时，此灯点亮。

This light is on when the AUTO

HOLD system is working.

陡坡缓降系统工作指示灯（绿色）

HDC system indicator (green)



当陡坡缓降功能处于开启状态时，此灯持续点亮。当陡坡缓降系统工作时，此灯闪烁。

It is on when the HDC function is on. It flashes when the HDC system is operating.

定速巡航开启指示灯（白色）

Cruise control indicator (white)



当定速巡航系统开启但未激活时，此灯点亮。This light turns on when the cruise control

system is on but not active.

定速巡航工作指示灯（绿色）

Operating indicator lamp at cruise control speed (green)



当定速巡航系统开启并工作时，此灯点亮，并在指示灯旁边显示目标车速。

When the cruise control system is on, the

light is on and the target speed is displayed next to the indicator.

自适应巡航开启指示灯（白色）*

Adaptive Cruise-on indicator light (white)

*



当自适应巡航系统开启但未激活时，此灯点亮。

This light turns on when the adaptive cruise system is on but not active.

自适应巡航工作指示灯（绿色）*

Adaptive cruise work indicator light (green)

*



当自适应巡航系统工作时，此灯点亮。

This light is on when the adaptive cruise system is operating.

智能领航开启指示灯（白色）*

Smart pilot-on indicator light (white)*



当交通拥堵辅助系统开启但未激活时，此灯点亮。

This light turns on when the traffic congestion assist is on but not active.

智能领航单功能工作指示灯（黄色）*

Intelligent pilot single-function work indicator lamp (yellow)*



当交通拥堵辅助系统的自适应巡航功能工作时，此灯点亮。

This light is on when the adaptive cruise function of the traffic congestion assist is working.

智能领航双功能工作指示灯（绿色）*

Intelligent pilot dual-function working indicator lamp (green) *



当交通拥堵辅助系统的自适应巡航和车道保持辅助功能同时工作时，此灯点亮。

This light turns on when the adaptive cruise and lane keeping assist of the traffic congestion assist system are operating simultaneously.

转向和危险信号指示灯（绿色）

Steering and hazard signal indicator light (green)



当操作转向灯时，对应的转向指示灯点亮或熄灭。当按下危险警告开关时，指示灯与左、右转向灯同时闪烁。如果此时不闪烁或快速闪烁，说明转向灯灯泡可能存在异常，应立即确认转向灯灯泡是否损坏，并联系东风风行特约服务站。

When the steering signal is operated, the corresponding turn indicator is on or off.

When the hazard warning switch is pressed, the indicator flashes simultaneously with the left and right turning lights. If it does not flash or quickly flash at this time, the steering signal light may be abnormal, you should immediately confirm whether bulb is damaged, and contact Dongfeng Forthing Special Service Station.

位置灯指示灯（绿色）

Position lamp indicator (green)



打开位置灯时，此灯点亮。

This light turns on when the position light is turned on.

近光灯指示灯（绿色）

Near-beam indicator light (green)



打开近光灯时，此灯点亮。

This light turns on when the near-beam light is turned on.

远光灯指示灯（蓝色）

High-beam indicator light (blue)



打开远光灯时，此灯点亮。

This light turns on when the high-beam light is turned on.

后雾灯指示灯（黄色）

Rear fog indicator lamp (yellow)



打开后雾灯时，此灯点亮。

It turns on when the rear fog light is turned on.

ESP 电子稳定系统关闭指示灯（黄色）

ESP Electronic Stability System Turn-off indicator light (yellow)



按下 ESP 开关时，ESP 系统关闭，此灯点亮。再次按下此开关，ESP 系统重新开启，此

灯熄灭。When the ESP switch is pressed, the ESP system is turned off, and the light is on. Press the switch again, the ESP system turns on again, and the light is off.

ESP 电子稳定系统工作指示灯（黄色）

ESP Electronic Stability System operating indicator lamp (yellow)



当 ESP 系统正在工作时，此灯闪烁。如果在行驶过程中此灯持续点亮，说明 ESP 系统

可能有故障，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站

This light flashes when the ESP system is working. If the light continues to light up during driving, it means that the ESP system may have faults, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station in time.

GPF 状态指示灯（黄色）

GPF status indicator lamp (yellow)



当 GPF 载碳量较高时，此灯持续点亮，此时建议进行高速

工况驾驶，主动进行 GPF 再生。如果此灯与发动机排放故障（MIL）警告灯同时亮起，说明 GPF 的载碳量达到了极高级别，高速工况主动再生也难以消除，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

When the GPF has a high carbon load, the lamp continues to light up. At this time, it is recommended to drive at high speed and actively conduct GPF regeneration. If this light and the engine emission fault (MIL) warning light are turned on at the same time,

it shows that the carbon load of the GPF has reached an extremely high level, and it is difficult to eliminate the active regeneration under high-speed working conditions, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station in time.

防盗指示灯（红色）

Anti-theft indicator lamp (red)



当启动开关置于“ON”档时，此灯闪烁，说明智能钥匙不合法或者防盗认证未通过，请检

查智能钥匙是否正确。当启动开关置于“ACC”档或者“OFF”档时，此灯闪烁，说明车辆进入防盗状态。

When the start switch is placed in the "ON" gear, this light flashes, which means that the smart key is illegal or the anti-theft authentication has not passed. Please check whether the smart key is correct. When the start switch is in ACC or OFF, the vehicle is anti-theft.

摄像头遮挡指示灯（黄色）*

Camera occlusion indicator light (yellow) *



当前视摄像头有污渍或者被遮挡时，此灯先闪烁几下，然后持续点亮，请轻轻擦拭掉表面

污渍或清理掉遮挡物，再重新启动车辆。如果此灯依然持续点亮，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

When the front camera is stained or blocked,

the light flashes several times, and then continues to light up. Please gently wipe off the surface stain or remove the occlusion, and then restart the vehicle. If this light still continues to light up, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

车道偏离系统开启指示灯（白色）*

Lane departure system turn-on indicator light (white) *



当车道偏离系统开启但未激活时，此灯点亮。

This lamp lights up when the lane departure system is on but not active.

车道偏离系统工作指示灯（绿色）*

Lane departure system operating indicator light (green) *



当车道偏离系统工作时，此灯点亮。This light is on when the lane departure system is working.

working.

车道保持系统开启指示灯（白色）*

Lane keeping system turn-on indicator light (white) *



当车道保持功能开启但未激活时，此灯点亮。

This light is on when the lane

keeping function is on but not active.

车道保持系统工作指示灯（绿色）*

Lane keeping system operating indicator light (green) *



当车道保持系统工作时，此灯点亮。

This light turns on when the lane keeping system is working.

前碰撞预警系统关闭指示灯（黄色）*

Front collision warning system turn-off indicator light (yellow) *



当前碰撞预警系统关闭时，此灯点亮。

This light is on when the current collision warning system is off.

自动紧急制动系统关闭指示灯（黄色）*

Automatic emergency brake system turn-off indicator light (yellow) *

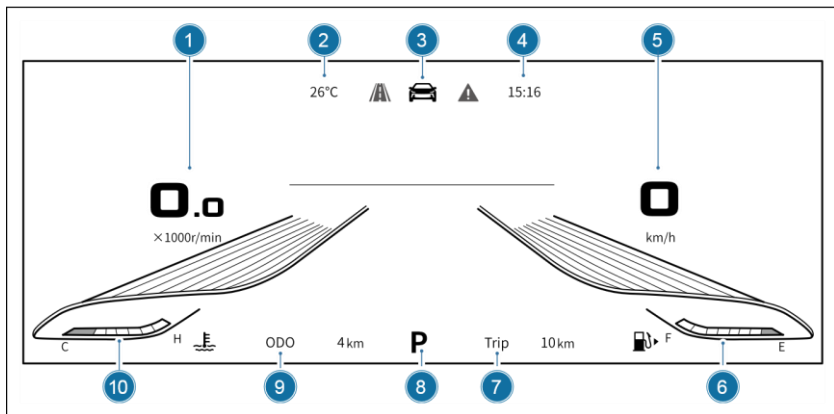


当自动紧急制动系统关闭时，此灯点亮。

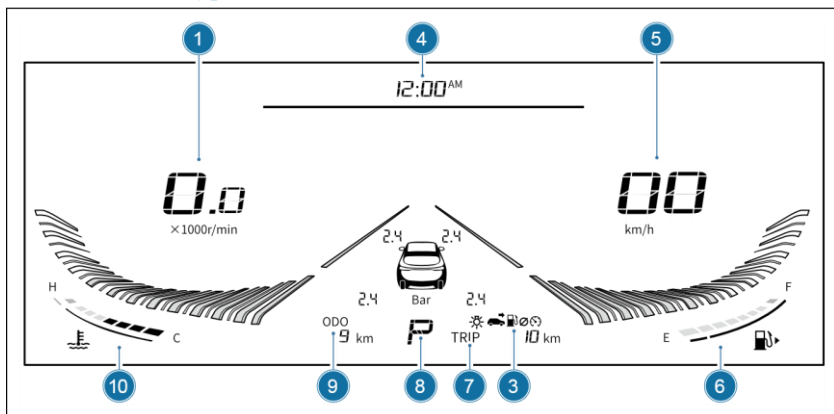
This light turns on when the automatic emergency braking system is turned off.

组合仪表概览 Summary of instrument pack

型式一液晶屏 Type I LCD screen



型式二断码屏 Type II broken code screen



1. 转速表 Speed counter

显示发动机每分钟的转速。

Displays the engine speed per minute.

2. 车外温度 Outside temperature

显示当前的车外温度。

Display the current external vehicle temperature.

3. 综合信息 Comprehensive

information

型式一：显示行车信息、驾驶辅助、多媒体、地图导航、设置和警告信息。

Type I: Displays driving information, driver assistance, multimedia, map navigation, settings and warning information.

型式二：显示车辆平均车速、平均油耗、续航里程、小计里程和胎压信息。

Type II: Display the average vehicle speed, average fuel consumption, mileage, range, small mileage and tyre pressure information.

4. 时间 Time

显示当前时间，可自动校准。

Display the current time for automatic calibration.

5. 车速表 Speed meter

显示当前的车速。

Display the current vehicle speed.

6. 燃油表名 Fuel gauge

显示油箱的存油量，燃油油位低警告灯点亮时，应尽快补给燃油。

Display the amount of the tank and the fuel should be supplied as soon as possible when the low warning light is lit.

7. 小计里程 Small mileage

显示车辆小计里程，超出范围后自动清零。Display the small mileage of the vehicle, and automatically become zero after exceeding the range.

型式一：也可通过短按 OK 键清零。

Type 1: can also be cleared by pressing OK key.

型式二：也可通过长按翻页键清零。

Type 2: It can also be cleared by long pressing the page turning key.

8. 档位信息 Gear information

显示当前行驶的档位。

Display the currently driving gear position.

9. 总计里程 Total mileage

显示车辆总计里程，累计到 999999km 停止累计。

Display total mileage of vehicle, accumulated to 999999km.

10. 水温表 Water temperature gauge

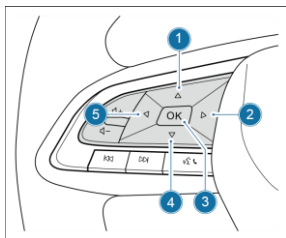
显示发动机冷却液温度。

Displays the engine coolant temperature.

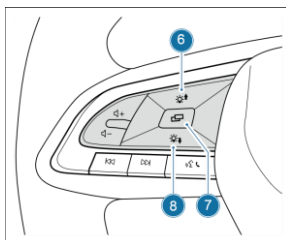
组合仪表控制

Instrument pack control

型式一 Type I



型式二 Type II



1. 向上键：同级页面向上切换选择。

Up key: switch up and select pages at the same level.

2. 向右键：切换选择主页或查看报警信息列表。

Right: Switch to select the home page or view the list of alarm information.

3. OK 键：在设置界面中选择确认或关闭当前显示的文字提醒界面。

OK key: select in the setup interface to confirm or close the currently displayed text reminder interface.

4. 向下键：同级页面向下切换选择。

Down key: switch down and select pages at the same level

5. 向左键：切换选择主页或返回上一页面。

Left: Switch between selecting the home page or return to the previous page.

6. 亮度增加键：增加组合仪表背光亮亮度。

Brightness increase key: increase the backlight brightness of the instrument pack.

7. 翻页键：对“综合信息”显示的内容进行切换。

Page key: Switch the content displayed in Comprehensive Information.

8. 亮度降低键：降低组合仪表背光亮亮度。

Brightness reduction key: Reduce the backlight brightness of the instrument pack.

综合信息（型式一）

Comprehensive Information (Type I)

此界面显示行车信息、驾驶辅助、多媒体、地图导航、设置和报警信息。可通过方向盘上的向左键和向右键对显示内容进行切换。

This interface displays driving information, driver assistance, multimedia, map navigation, setup, and alarm information. The display content can be switched through the left and right keys on

the steering wheel.



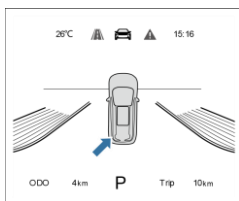
行车信息

Driving information

行车信息包含车辆状态、行车电脑、最近 50 公里油耗以及胎压信息。可以通过方向盘上的向上键和向下键对显示内容进行切换。

Driving information includes vehicle status, driving computer, fuel consumption of the last 50 kilometers, and tyre pressure information. The display content can be switched through the up and down keys on the steering wheel.

状态 Status



此界面显示车门(含后背门)、天窗、车灯和安全带的使用状态。

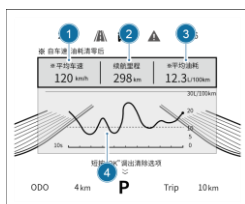
This interface displays the usage of the doors (including back doors), sunroof, lights and seat belts.

行车电脑 Driving computer

此界面显示平均车速、续航里程、平均油耗和瞬时油耗。可通过方向盘上的向上键和向下键对显示内容进行切换。

This interface displays the average vehicle speed, endurance mileage, average fuel consumption, and instantaneous fuel consumption. The display content can be

switched by using the up and down keys on the steering wheel.



1. 平均车速 Average speed

平均车速显示范围为：0~200km/h。短按 OK 键调出清除选项后可对平均车速进行清零。

The average vehicle speed display range is: 0 to 200 km/h. Press the OK key short to call out the clearance option to clear the average vehicle speed.

2. 续航里程 Endurance mileage

显示当前可以继续行驶的最大里程。显示范围为：50~999km。当低于 50km 时，显示“---”。

Displays the maximum mileage that you can currently continue with. Display range is: 50~999km. When below 50km, "--" is displayed.



注意 Notice

- 车辆加油后，续航里程将重新计算。
After the vehicle is refueled, the endurance mileage will be recalculated.
- 显示的续航里程值会根据近期综合油耗情况产生变化。
The displayed endurance mileage value will vary according to the recent comprehensive fuel consumption.
- 如果燃油油位低警告灯点亮时，即使显示能够行驶较长里程，也需要及时加油。
If the low fuel level warning light is on, you need to refuel in time even if it shows that you can drive a long distance.

3. 平均油耗 Average fuel

consumption

平均油耗显示范围为：0~19.9L/100km。短按 OK 键调出清除选项后可对平均油耗清零。

The average fuel consumption display range is: 0~19.9L/100km. Short press of the OK to call out the clearance option to clear the average fuel consumption.

4. 瞬时油耗 Moment fuel consumption

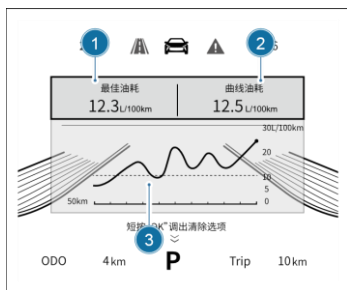
瞬时油耗通过曲线图方式显示当前的油耗信息。

Transient fuel consumption displays the current fuel consumption information by graph.

瞬时油耗显示范围：0~30L/100km。

Transient fuel consumption display range: 0~30L / 100km.

最近 50 公里油耗 Fuel consumption for the last 50 km



1. 最佳油耗

Optimum fuel consumption

显示油耗的历史最低值。

Displays the lowest fuel consumption.

可短按 OK 键调出清除选项后对最

佳油耗清零，清零后最佳油耗重新计算。

Short press the OK key to call out the clearance option and clear the best fuel consumption, and the best fuel consumption will be recalculated after reset.

2. 曲线油耗 Curve fuel consumption

显示在最近 50 公里内的油耗表现情况。

Displays the fuel consumption performance in the last 50 km.

可短按 OK 键调出清除选项后对曲线油耗清零。

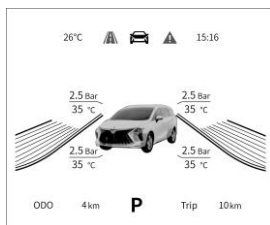
Short press the OK key to call out the clearance option and clear the curve fuel consumption.

3. 油耗曲线图 Fuel consumption curve

油耗曲线图由最近 50 公里内的曲线油耗值绘制而成，此信息能够帮助您调整驾驶习惯，以达到所期望的油耗值。

The fuel consumption curve is drawn from the curve fuel consumption value within the last 50 km, which helps you adjust your driving habits to achieve the desired fuel consumption value.

胎压信息 Tyre pressure information



此界面显示轮胎对应的压力值和温度值。当轮胎出现异常时，显示界面会进行相应的提醒。

This interface displays the corresponding pressure and temperature values for the tyre. When the tyre is abnormal, the display interface will be reminded accordingly.



注意 Notice

- 请保持胎压在标准压力值附近，当胎压显示“-”且指定轮胎点亮时，表明胎压监测系统丢失信号，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。
- Please keep the tyre pressure near the standard pressure value. When it shows "-" and the specified tyre is lit, it means that the tyre pressure monitoring system is missing a signal, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station in time.
- 无需因安装、拆卸轮胎而重新匹配胎压传感器。但如果轮胎位置调换，胎压传感器的位置产生变化，则需要重新进行胎压匹配。请联系东风风行特约服务站。
- There is no need to rematch the tyre pressure sensor by installing, removing the tyres. However, if the position of tyre and the tyre pressure sensor changes, the tyre pressure matching needs to be renewed. Please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.



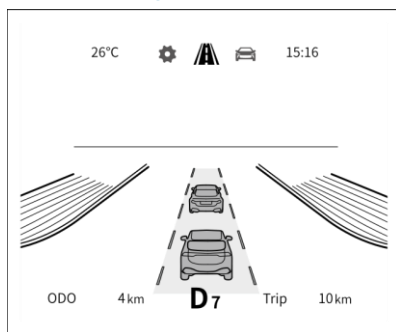
注意 Notice

- 在静止情况下显示的胎压信息为车辆最后运行时的信息。因此轮胎在进行放气或充气操作后，需将车辆以 30km/h 以上的速度行驶 1 分钟，胎压信息界面才会更新数据。
- The tyre pressure information displayed at rest is that when the vehicle last runs. Therefore, after the tyre is deflated or inflated, the vehicle is driven at more than 30 km/h for 1 minute before the tyre pressure information interface will update the data.



驾驶辅助

Driving assistance

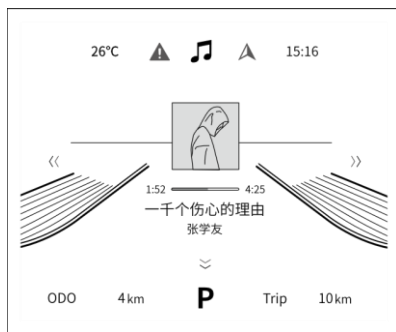


根据车型配置定义不同，此界面下可现实的功能不同。关于驾驶辅助的详细内容详见第七章“舒适驾驶”中的相关说明。

Different model configuration definition has different features under this interface. For details of driving assistance, please refer to the relevant instructions in Chapter 7, "Comfortable Driving".



多媒体 Multi-media

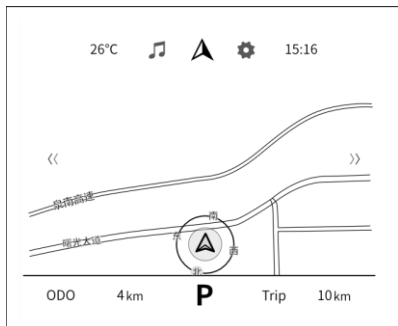


此界面显示当前收听的平台或音乐信息。

This interface displays the radio

station or music information that you are currently listening to.

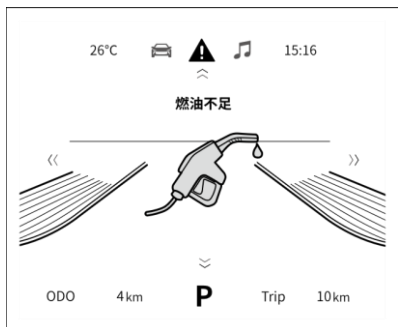
地图导航 Map navigation



此界面可同步显示影音娱乐系统上的地图信息和简易导航信息。

This interface synchronously displays the map information and simple navigation information on the video entertainment system.

报警信息 Alarm Information



此界面显示车辆当前的报警或提醒信息,当存在多个信息时,可通过方向盘上的向上键和向下键对显示内容进行切换查询。

This interface displays the current alarm or reminder information of the vehicle. When there is multiple information, you can switch and query the display content through the up and down keys on the steering wheel.

设置 Setting

设置界面包含报警信息查询、行车信息清零、亮度调节、音量调节、主题设置、语言设置、仪表版本信息。可通过方向盘上的向上键、向下键选择菜单选项,按下OK键进入相应的菜单界面,具体信息如下表。

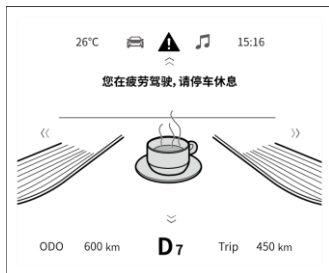
The setting interface includes alarm information query, driving information reset, brightness adjustment, volume adjustment, theme setting, language setting and instrument version information. You can select menu options through the up and down keys on the steering wheel, and press the OK key to enter the corresponding menu interface. The specific information is shown in the table below.

疲劳驾驶提醒

Fatigue Driving Reminder

一级菜单 Level I Menu	二级菜单Level II Menu	三级菜单 Level III Menu
设置Setting	报警信息查询 Alarm information query	
	行车信息清零 Clear the driving information	平均油耗 Average fuel consumption
		平均车速 Average speed
		小计里程 Subtotal mileage
亮度调节Brightness adjustment		
音量调节Volume		

	adjustment	
	主题设置 Theme setting	
	语言设置 Language settings	中文 Chinese English Español
	仪表版本信息 Instrument version information	



如果持续驾驶超过 4 个小时后会触发疲劳驾驶提醒, 此时短按 OK 键并将车辆停靠在安全的地方休息 20 分钟, 即可解除该提示信息。

If the fatigue driving reminder will be triggered after driving for more than 4 hours, short press the OK key and park the vehicle in a safe place to rest for 20 minutes to release the reminder.

综合信息 (型式二) Comprehensive Information (Type II)

此界面包含: 车辆行车信息、胎压信息、车道偏离。

This interface includes: vehicle driving information, tyre pressure information and lane departure.

行车信息 Driving Information

行车信息包括平均车速、平均油耗、续航里程。可通过方向盘上的翻页键对显示内容进行切换或清零。

The driving information includes average speed, average fuel consumption and endurance mileage. The display content can be switched or cleared through the page turning key on the steering wheel.

平均车速 Average Speed



显示范围为:

0~200km/h.

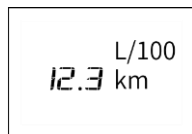
The display range is: 0~200km/h.

短按翻页键可对平均车速清零。

Short press the page turning key to reset the average speed.

平均油耗

Average Fuel Consumption



显示范围为:

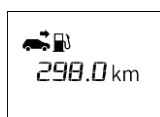
0~19.9L/100km.

The display range is: 0~19.9L/100km.

短按翻页键可对平均油耗清零。

Short press the page turning key to reset the average fuel consumption.

续航里程 Endurance range



显示车辆当前可以继续行驶的最大距离。

Displays the maximum distance the vehicle can continue to travel.

显示范围为: 50~999km。当续航里程低于 50km 时, 显示"--"。

Display range: 50 ~ 999km. When the range is less than 50km, "-" is displayed.

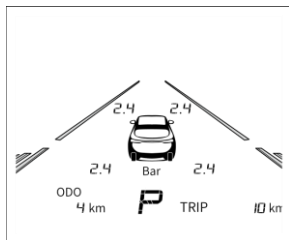
注意 Notice

- 车辆加油后，续航里程将重新计算。
- After the vehicle is refuelled, the mileage will be recalculated.
- 显示的续航里程值会根据近期综合油耗情况产生变化。
- The displayed mileage value will change according to the recent comprehensive fuel consumption.
- 如果燃油液位低警告灯点亮时，即使显示能够行驶较长里程，也需要及时加油。
- If the low fuel level warning light is on, it is necessary to refuel in time even if it shows that it can drive a long distance.

注意 Notice

- 在静止情况下显示的胎压信息为车辆最后运行时的信息。因此轮胎在进行放气或充气操作后，想要更新胎压数据，需将车辆以30km/h 以上的速度行驶 1 分钟，胎压信息界面才会更新数据。
- The tyre pressure information displayed when the vehicle is stationary is the information of the last operation of the vehicle. Therefore, if you want to update the tyre pressure data after deflating or inflating the tyre, you need to drive the vehicle at a speed of more than 30km / h for 1 minute, and the tyre pressure information interface will update the data.

胎压信息 Tyre Pressure Information

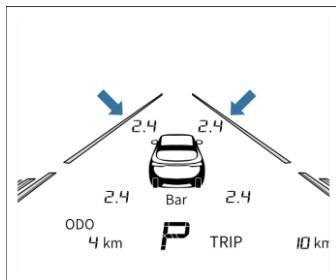


此界面显示轮胎对应的压力值。当轮胎出现异常时，显示界面会进行相应的提醒。

This interface displays the pressure value corresponding to the tyre. When the tyre is abnormal, the display interface will give corresponding reminders.

- 请保持胎压在标准压力值附近，当胎压显示“-”且指定轮胎点亮时，表明胎压监测系统失去信号，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。
- Please keep the tyre pressure near the standard pressure value. When the tyre pressure displays "-" and the designated tyre is on, it indicates that the tyre pressure monitoring system has lost its signal. Please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station in time.
- 无需因为安装、拆卸轮胎而重新匹配胎压传感器。但如果轮胎位置调换，胎压传感器的位置产生变化，则需要重新进行胎压匹配。请联系东风风行特约服务站。
- There is no need to re match the tyre pressure sensor due to the installation and removal of the tyre. However, if the tyre position is changed and the position of the tyre pressure sensor changes, it is necessary to conduct tyre pressure matching again. Please contact Dongfeng fenghang special service station.

车道偏离 Lane Departure



该界面下可实现车道偏离报警。关于车道偏离的详细内容参见第七章“舒适驾驶”中的相关说明。

Lane departure alarm can be realized under this interface. For details of lane departure, please refer to relevant instructions in Chapter VII "Comfortable Driving".

钥匙信息 KEY INFORMATION..... 51

智能钥匙 Smart key.....	51
机械钥匙 Mechanical key.....	51
更换智能钥匙电池 Replace the smart key battery.....	51
防盗启动锁止系统 Anti theft start locking system.....	51

打开、关闭和锁止车门 OPENING, CLOSING AND LOCKING DOORS 51

从车外解锁和锁止车门 Unlock and lock the doors from outside the vehicle	51
从车内解锁和锁止车门 Unlock and lock the doors from inside the vehicle	53
后门儿童安全锁 Rear door child safety lock	54
车门自动锁止 Power latching	54
碰撞强制解锁 Collision forced unlocking.....	55

打开和关闭后背门 OPEN AND CLOSE THE BACK DOOR 55

从车外打开后背门 Open the back door from outside the vehicle	55
从车外关闭后背门 Close the back door from outside the vehicle	56
从车内打开和关闭后背门* Open and close the back door from inside the vehicle*	57
车内应急打开后背门 Emergency	

opening of back door in the vehicle. 58	
后背门开启高度设置* Back door opening height setting*	58

调节座椅 SEAT ADJUSTMENT 60

前排座椅 Front seat.....	60
中间排座椅 Middle row seat	64
后排座椅 Rear seat.....	67
座椅加热、通风与按摩* Seat heating, ventilation and massage* ...	69
座椅记忆* Seat memory*	69
头枕调节 Head restraint adjustment	69

方向盘 STEERING WHEEL 71

方向盘调节 Steering wheel adjustment	71
喇叭 Horn	71
内后视镜 Interior rearview mirror ..	73
内后视镜防眩目调节 Anti glare adjustment of interior rearview mirror	73

外后视镜 EXTERIOR REARVIEW MIRROR 74

外后视镜电动调节 Electric adjustment of exterior rearview mirror	74
外后视镜折叠和展开 Folding and unfolding of exterior rearview mirror	75
外后视镜加热除霜 Heating and defrosting of exterior rearview mirror	76

电动车窗 POWER WINDOWS..... 76

- 手动打开/关闭车窗 Manually open / close the window 77
- 自动打开/关闭车窗 Automatic window opening / closing..... 77
- 遥控打开/关闭车窗 Remote opening / closing of windows..... 77
- 车窗锁止开关 Window lock switch 77
- 车窗热保护 Window thermal protection 77
- 车窗防夹保护 Window anti pinch protection 78
- 车窗初始化 Window initialization.. 78

天窗 SUNROOF..... 79

- 全景天窗 Panoramic sunroof..... 79
- 全景天幕* Panoramic sky curtain*. 82

灯光 LIGHTING..... 82

- 车外灯光 Exterior lights 82
- 车内灯光 Interior lights 84

雨刮 WIPER..... 87

- 前手动雨刮 Front manual wiper..... 87
- 前自动雨刮*Front automatic wiper* 87
- 后雨刮 Rear wiper 88

USB 接口 USB INTERFACE..... 89

- 副仪表台前部 USB 接口 USB interface in front of auxiliary instrument panel 89

- 副仪表台下部 USB 接口 USB interface at the lower part of auxiliary instrument panel..... 89
- 副仪表台后部 USB 接口 USB interface at the rear part of auxiliary instrument panel..... 90
- 中间排座椅外侧 USB 接口 USB interface outside middle row seat 90
- 后排侧围 USB 接口 USB interface at the side rear row 90

12V 车载电源 12V ON-BOARD POWER SUPPLY 91

- 副仪表台前部车载电源 On-board power supply in front of auxiliary instrument panel..... 91
- 副仪表台后部车载电源 On-board power supply at the rear part of auxiliary instrument panel..... 91
- 行李箱车载电源 Luggage compartment on-board power supply 91

无线充电*WIRELESS CHARGING* 92

- 充电 Charge 92
- 运行 Function 92
- 遗忘提醒功能 Forgetting reminder function..... 93

行车记录仪*TACHOGRAPH* 93

- 内存卡插入与取出 Memory card insertion and removal..... 93
- 行车记录仪的操作 Operation of

tachograph..... 94

空调系统 AIR CONDITIONING

SYSTEM..... 95

电动空调 Electric air conditioner.... 95

自动空调*Automatic air

conditioning*..... 97

出风口位置 Air outlet position 100

空气净化系统*Air purification

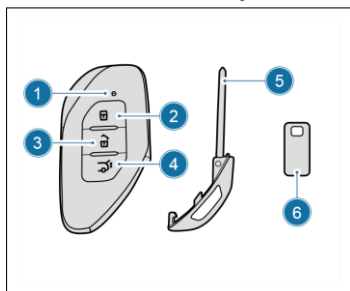
system* 102

基本功能操作

Basic Function Operation

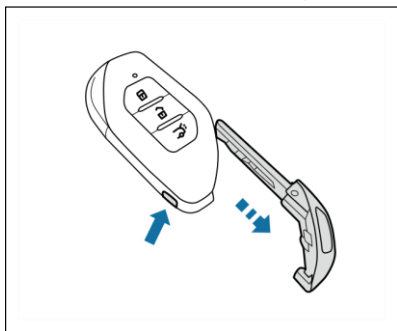
钥匙信息 Key Information

智能钥匙 Smart Key



1. 按键指示灯 Key indicator
2. 上锁键 Lock key
3. 解锁键 Unlock key
4. 后背门解锁键 Back door unlocking key
5. 机械钥匙 Mechanical key
6. 智能钥匙号码牌 Smart key number plate

机械钥匙 Mechanical Key



按压智能钥匙侧面的机械钥匙释放按钮即可取出机械钥匙。

Press the mechanical key release button on the side of the smart key to take

out the mechanical key.

更换智能钥匙电池

Replace the smart key battery

如果智能钥匙电量不足，可能会导致遥控距离变近或无法遥控车辆，甚至可能会出现车辆无法识别智能钥匙的情况，此时需要更换智能钥匙内的电池。

If the power of the smart key is insufficient, the remote-control distance may become closer or the vehicle cannot be remotely controlled, and even the vehicle may not recognize the smart key. At this time, the battery in the smart key needs to be replaced.

防盗启动锁止系统

Anti theft start locking system

如果携带编码不正确的智能钥匙，将启动开关置于“ON”档时，组合仪表上的防盗指示灯就会闪烁，系统判定智能钥匙不合法或防盗认证未通过，此时发动机不会启动。

If you carry a smart key with incorrect code, when the start switch is set to "on", the anti-theft indicator on the instrument pack will flash. The system determines that the smart key is illegal or the anti-theft certification is not passed, and the engine will not start at this time.

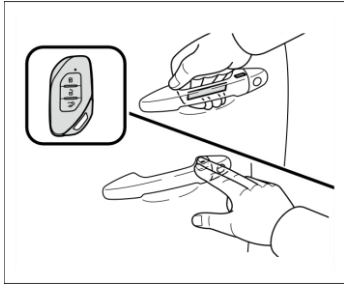
打开、关闭和锁止车门

Opening, closing and locking doors

从车外解锁和锁止车门

Unlock and lock the doors from outside the vehicle

无钥匙进入 Keyless entry



解锁 Unlock

携带智能钥匙握住主驾车门把手内侧解锁区域，所有车门解锁。

Hold the unlocking area inside the door handle of the driver's car with the smart key, and all doors will be unlocked.

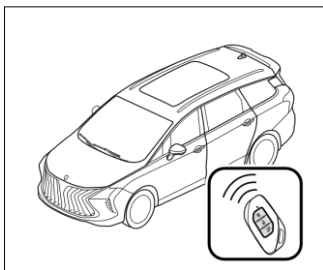
锁止 Locking

携带智能钥匙，关闭所有车门，按下主驾车门把手上的上锁区域，所有车门锁止。

Carry the smart key, close all doors, press the locking area on the driver's door handle, and all doors will be locked.

智能钥匙解锁和锁止

Smart key unlocking and locking



解锁 Unlock

短按智能钥匙上的解锁键，四车门及加油口盖解锁，转向灯闪烁，室内灯、位置灯点亮；长按智能钥匙上的解锁键，四车门玻璃打开。

Short press the unlock key on the smart key, the four doors and fuel filler cover will be unlocked, the steering light will flash, and the indoor light and position light will be on; Long press the unlock key on the smart key to open the four-door glass windows.

锁止 Locking

短按智能钥匙上的上锁键，四车门及加油口盖上锁，转向灯闪烁，喇叭鸣响一声，室内灯逐渐熄灭，影音娱乐系统关闭；长按智能钥匙上的上锁键，四车门玻璃及天窗关闭。

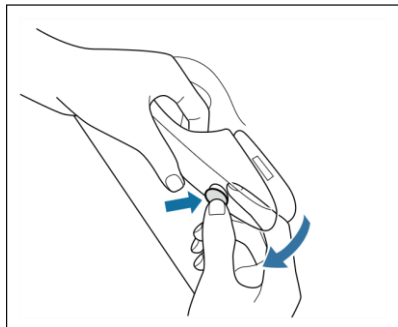
Short press the lock key on the smart key, the four doors and fuel filler cover will be locked, the steering light will flash, the horn will sound, the indoor light will gradually go out, and the audio-visual entertainment system will be turned off; Long press the lock key on the smart key to close the four-door glass windows and sunroof.

机械钥匙解锁和锁止

Mechanical key unlocking and locking

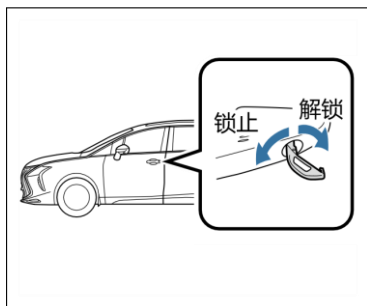
1. 从智能钥匙内取出机械钥匙。

Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.



2. 车门关闭后，拉动主驾车门把手到最大开度，将食指伸入把手内部按压前端卡扣，取出锁芯盖，露出锁芯孔。

After the door is closed, pull the driver's door handle to the maximum opening, extend the index finger into the handle, press the front buckle, take out the lock cylinder cover and expose the lock cylinder hole.



3. 将机械钥匙插入锁芯孔内，顺时针旋转钥匙，车门解锁；逆时针旋转钥匙，车门锁止。

Insert the mechanical key into the lock cylinder hole and rotate the key clockwise to unlock the door; Turn

the key counterclockwise to lock the door.

4. 取出钥匙将锁芯盖扣回至车门外把手上。

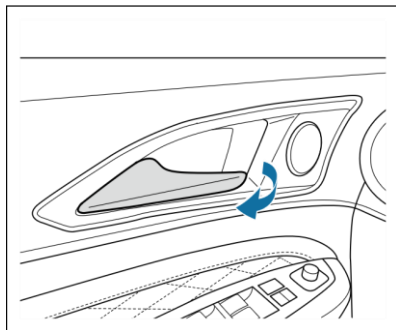
Take out the key and buckle the lock cylinder cover back to the outer door handle.

从车内解锁和锁止车门

Unlock and lock the doors from inside the vehicle

车门内拉手解锁

Door inner handle unlocking



车门处于上锁状态时，拉动两次车门内拉手，可打开车门。

When the door is locked, pull the inner handle of the door twice to open the door.

车门处于解锁状态时，拉动一次车门内拉手，可打开车门。

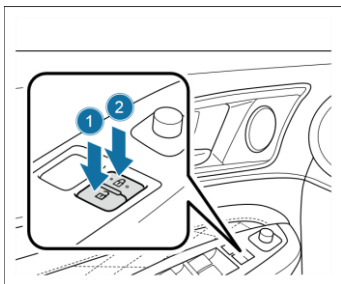
When the door is unlocked, pull the inner handle of the door once to open the door.



如果后车门儿童安全锁为锁止状态时，无法从车内打开后车门。
If the child safety lock of the rear door is locked, the rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

中控解锁和锁止

Central control unlocking and locking



1. 按下解锁所有车门
Press to unlock all doors
2. 按下锁止所有车门
Press to lock all doors

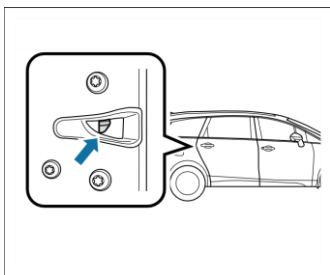


注意 Notice

须在所有车门都关闭的情况下，才能进行中控锁止。
Central locking can only be carried out when all doors are closed.

副驾车门及后车门解锁和锁止

Unlocking and locking of front passenger door and rear door

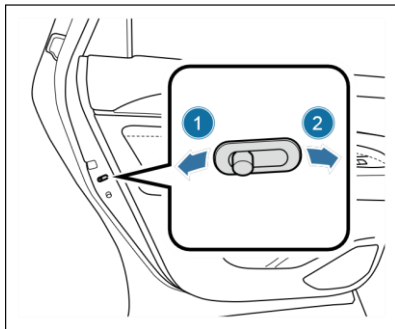


如果遇到车辆断电的情况，可按压门锁内侧白色开关，关闭车门后可完成锁止；从车内拉动车门内拉手 2 次后车门可解锁。

If the vehicle is powered off, press the white switch inside the door lock to complete the locking after closing the door; The door can be unlocked after pulling the door handle twice from inside the vehicle.

后门儿童安全锁

Rear door child safety lock



1. 解锁 Unlock
2. 锁止 Locking

设定后车门儿童安全锁后，儿童无法从车内打开后车门，这样有助于防止儿童意外打开后车门。

After setting the rear door child safety lock, children cannot open the rear door from inside the vehicle, which helps to prevent children from accidentally opening the rear door.

车门自动锁止 Power Latching

车门未锁止状态下，当车速提高到 10km/h 以上时，四车门自动锁止。

When the vehicle speed increases to more than 10km / h when the vehicle door is unlocked, the four doors will be locked automatically.

碰撞强制解锁

Collision forced unlocking

行车途中或静止状态下，启动开关置于“ON”档时，如果车辆受到撞击，系统接收到碰撞信号后，四车门自动解锁。

When the start switch is set to "on" during driving or static state, if the vehicle is impacted, the four doors will unlock automatically after the system receives the collision signal.

打开和关闭后背门

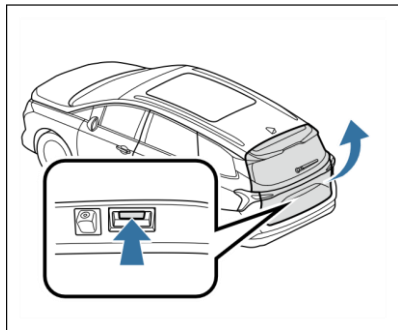
Open and close the back door

从车外打开后背门

Open the back door from outside the vehicle

无钥匙打开后背门

Keyless opening of back door



- 普通后背门 Ordinary back door
携带智能钥匙至后背门旁边，按下微动开关的同时手动打开后背门。

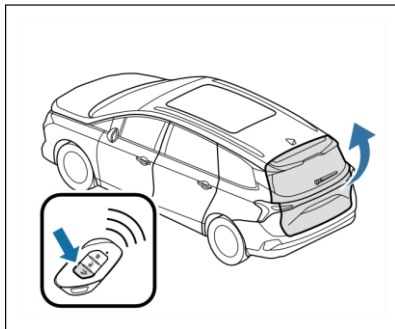
Carry the smart key next to the back door, press the microswitch and manually open the back door.

- 电动后背门 Electric back door
携带智能钥匙至后背门旁边，按下微动开关，后背门会自动打开。

Carry the smart key next to the back door, press the microswitch, and the back door will open automatically.

智能钥匙打开后背门

Open the back door with smart key



- 普通后背门 Ordinary back door
后背门关闭时，长按智能钥匙上的后背门解锁键，后背门解锁，再手动打开后背门。

When the back door is closed, long press the back door unlock key on the smart key to unlock the back door, and then manually open the back door.

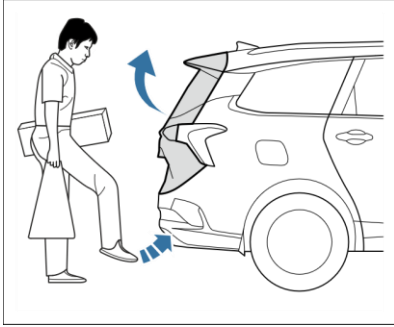
- 电动后背门 Electric back door
后背门关闭时，长按智能钥匙上的后背门解锁键，后背门自动打开。

When the back door is closed, long press the back door unlock key on the smart

key, and the back door will open automatically.

感应打开后背门*

Inductive opening of back door*



携带智能钥匙站在车辆后方，在后保险杠的中部下方做踢腿动作，待感应到踢腿动作后，后背门将自动打开。

Stand at the rear of the vehicle with the smart key and kick under the middle of the rear bumper. After sensing the kick, the back door will open automatically.

注意 Notice

- 只有当车辆未启动时，感应打开后背门功能才能生效。
- Only when the vehicle is not started, the function of inductive opening the back door can take effect.
- 使用此功能需要携带智能钥匙或将智能钥匙放置在距离后背门约 1 米的有效控制范围内。
- To use this function, you need to carry the smart key or place the smart key within the effective control range about 1m away from the back door.
- 请保持感应器表面清洁。如果感应器表面附着冰、雪、污垢等障碍物，可能会造成功能失效。
- Please keep the sensor surface clean. If ice, snow, dirt and other obstacles are attached to the surface of the sensor, it may cause functional failure.

为保证操作有效性，请采用前后踢腿操作，踢腿时间控制在 1~2 秒。操作过程中，脚面/小腿与后保险杠底部/后部距离分别控制在 2~10 厘米。请根据实际情况多次踢腿操作后，采用最适合的操作方式。

In order to ensure the effectiveness of the operation, please use the front and back kicking operation, and the kicking time shall be controlled within 1 ~ 2 seconds. During operation, the distance between the foot / lower leg and the bottom / rear of the rear bumper shall be controlled at 2 ~ 10cm respectively. Please use the most suitable operation method after multiple kicking operations according to the actual situation.

踢腿感应区域位于后保险杠中部下方左右共 50 厘米的宽度范围内，请在此区域内操作。

The kick sensing area is located within a total width of 50cm below the middle of the rear bumper. Please operate in this area.

注意 Notice

如果短时间内多次尝试感应打开后背门功能，该功能可能会暂时停用且短时间内不可恢复。If the function of inductive opening of the back door is tried many times in a short time, the function may be temporarily disabled and cannot be restored in a short time.

警告 Warning

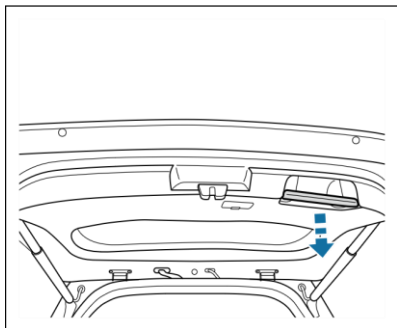
- 使用此功能时，请确保后背门运动区域无其他人员或障碍物。操作后请注意避开后背门运动区域，以免对人体或车辆造成伤害。
- When using this function, please ensure that there are no other people or obstacles in the back door movement area. Please avoid the moving area of the back door after operation to avoid injury to human body or vehicle.
- 自动清洗车辆时，请确保智能钥匙不在后背门附近。如果后背门意外打开，可能会损坏后背门。
- When cleaning the vehicle automatically, please ensure that the smart key is not near the back door. If the back door is accidentally opened, it may be damaged.

从车外关闭后背门

Close the back door from outside the vehicle

普通后背门

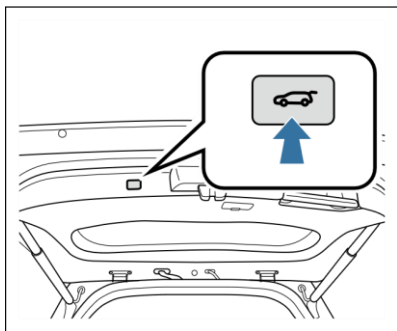
Ordinary back door



拉住把手向下扣合可关闭后背门 Pull the handle down to close the back door

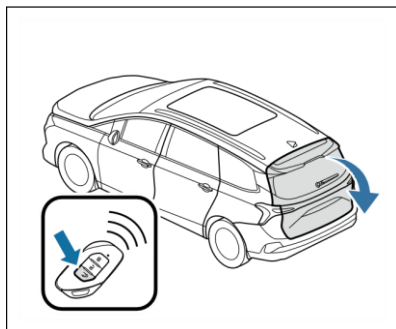
电动后背门

Electric back door



按下后背门护板开关可自动关闭后背门。如果在关闭过程中，再次按下此开关，后背门停止关闭。

Press the back door guard switch to automatically close the back door. If this switch is pressed again during closing, the back door will stop closing.

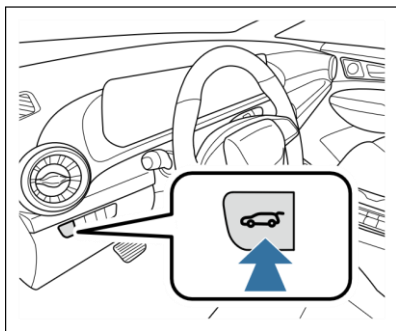


此外，还可以通过长按智能钥匙上的后背门解锁键自动关闭后背门。

In addition, the back door can be automatically closed by long pressing the back door unlock key on the smart key.

从车内打开和关闭后背门*

Open and close the back door from inside the vehicle*



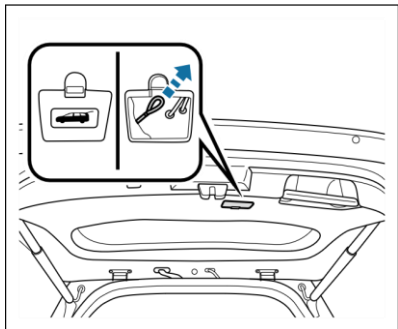
后背门解锁状态下，按下车内后背门开关，后背门自动开启或关闭。在后背门运动过程中，再次按下此开关，后背门停止运动。

When the back door is unlocked, press the back door switch in the car, and the back door will open or close automatically. When the back door is moving, press this

switch again and the back door will stop moving.

车内应急打开后背门

Emergency opening of back door in the vehicle

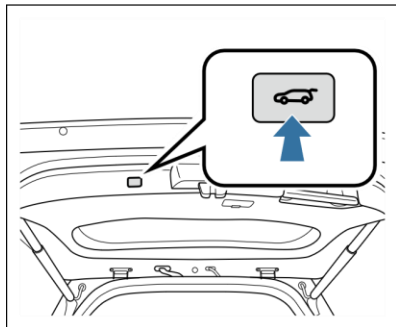


如果闭锁器失效无法打开后背门，可先取下后背门护板上的应急开启盖板，拉动后背门应急开启拉环，同时用另一只手向后顶住后背门，即可从车内打开后背门。

If the latch fails and cannot open the back door, first remove the emergency opening cover plate on the back door guard, pull the emergency opening pull ring of the back door, and at the same time, press the back door with the other hand to open the back door from inside the vehicle.

后背门开启高度设置*

Back door opening height setting*



设置后背门开启高度

Set the opening height of back door

通过后背门护板开关可设置后背门的开启高度：

The opening height of the back door can be set through the back door guard switch:

1. 手动打开后背门至所需高度。
Manually open the back door to the required height.
2. 长按后背门护板开关，直至听到声音信号，表示开启高度设置成功。
Press and hold the back door guard switch until the sound signal is heard, indicating that the opening height is set successfully.
3. 将后背门关闭，重新打开后背门，即可打开到所设置的高度。
Close the back door and reopen it to the set height.

还原最大开启高度

Restore maximum opening height

1. 手动打开后背门至最高位置。
Manually open the back door to the

highest position.

2. 长按后背门护板开关，直至听到声音信号，表示最大开启高度还原成功。

Press and hold the back door guard switch until the sound signal is heard, indicating that the maximum opening height is restored successfully.

3. 将后背门关闭，重新打开后背门，即可打开到最大高度。

Close the back door and reopen it to the maximum height.

通过影音娱乐系统设置后背门开启角度
Set the opening angle of the back door through the video entertainment system

1. 依次点击显示屏中【设置】-【车辆】-【附件】-【电动尾门角度调节】进入后背门高度设置页面。

Click [setting] - [vehicle] - [accessories] - [electric tailgate angle adjustment] in the display screen to enter the back door height setting page.

2. 根据实际需求，在设置页面点击所需的后背门开启高度值后，系统发

出声音提示，表示设置成功。

According to the actual needs, click the required opening height of the back door on the setting page, and the system will give a sound prompt to indicate that the setting is successful.



注意 Notice

影音娱乐系统中后背门开启高度仅作参考，具体高度请根据实际操作进行设置。
The opening height of the back door in the video entertainment system is only for reference. Please set the specific height according to the actual operation.

防夹保护 Anti pinch protection

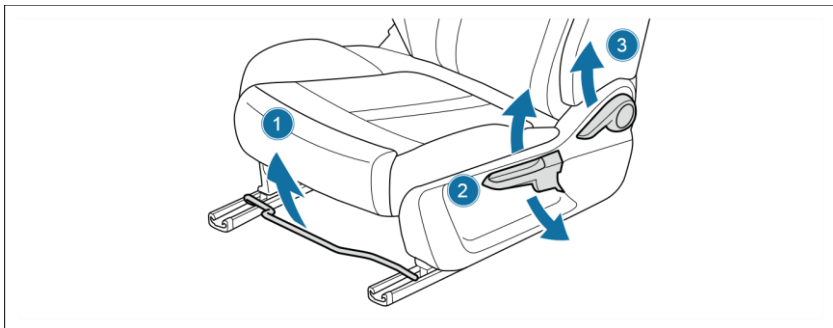
后背门自动打开时，如果检测到有障碍物，后背门会停止打开；自动关闭时，如果系统检测到有障碍物，后背门会停止关闭并返回预先设置的最大开启高度。

When the back door opens automatically, if an obstacle is detected, the back door will stop opening; During automatic closing, if the system detects an obstacle, the back door will stop closing and return to the preset maximum opening height.

调节座椅 Seat adjustment

前排座椅 Front seat

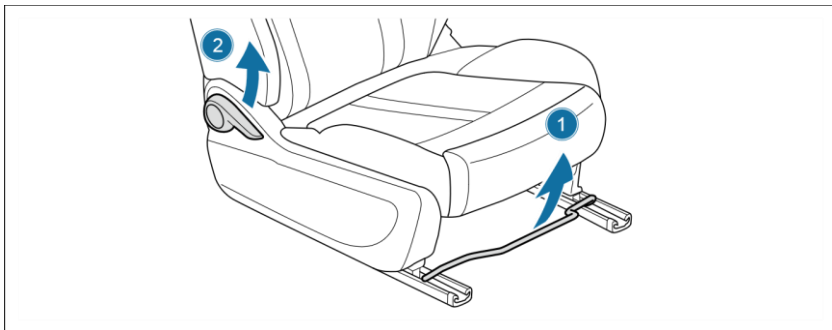
手动调节主驾座椅 Manually adjust the driver's seat



- 1. 座椅前后调节拉杆 Front and rear adjusting lever**
向上拉动拉杆，可调节座椅前后移动，调整至合适位置后，松开拉杆，确保座椅前后不移动。
Pull the pull rod upward to adjust the seat to move forward and backward. After adjusting to the appropriate position, release the pull rod to ensure that the seat does not move forward and backward.
- 2. 座椅高度调节手柄 Seat height adjustment handle**
抬起或下压手柄，可调节座椅升高或降低，调整至合适位置后，松开手柄即可。
Lift or press down the handle to adjust the raising or lowering of the seat. After adjusting to the appropriate position, release the handle.
- 3. 靠背角度调节手柄 Backrest angle adjusting handle**
坐在座椅上，抬起手柄，背部向前倾或向后压靠背，调整靠背至合适的位置后松开手柄，前后晃动几下，确保靠背锁止到位。
Sit on the seat, lift the handle, back forward or press back, adjust the back to the appropriate position, release the handle, shake back and forth several times to make sure the back lock is in place.

手动调节副驾驶座椅

Manually adjust the front passenger seat



1. 座椅前后调节拉杆

2. 靠背角度调节手柄

Front and rear adjusting lever

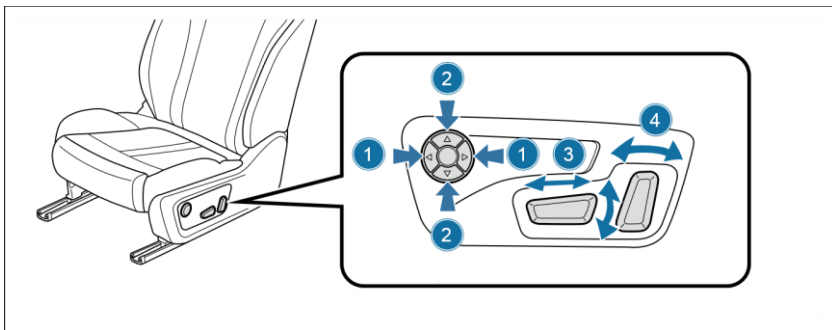
Backrest angle adjusting handle

手动调节副驾驶座椅调节方式与手动调节主驾驶座椅一致。

The adjustment mode of manually adjusting the front passenger seat is the same as that of manually adjusting the driver's seat.

电动调节主驾驶座椅* Electrically adjustable driver's seat*

十向座椅 Ten-way seat



1. 腰托前后调节按键 Back and forth adjusting key for lumbar support

按压此键，可调节腰托前后移动，调整至合适位置后，松开按键即可。

Press this key to adjust the lumbar support to move forward and backward. After adjusting to the appropriate position, release the key.

2. 腰托上下调节按键 Lumbar up and down adjustment buttons

按压此键，可调节腰托上下移动，调整至合适位置后，松开按键即可。

Press this key to adjust the lumbar support to move up and down. After adjusting to the appropriate position, release the key.

3. 座椅前后及高度调节按键 Seat front, rear and height adjustment buttons

前后轻轻推动整个按键，可调节座椅前后移动，上下轻轻推动按键后部，可调节座椅升高或降低，调整至合适位置后，松开按键即可。

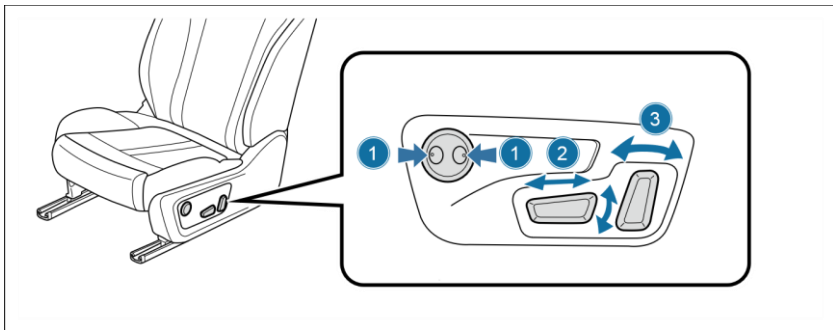
Gently push the whole button back and forth to adjust the seat to move forward and backward. Gently push the back of the button up and down to adjust the seat to rise or lower. After adjusting to the appropriate position, release the key.

4. 靠背角度调节按键 Backrest angle adjustment button

前后轻轻推动此键，可调节座椅靠背角度，调整至合适位置后，松开按键即可。

Push this key back and forth slightly to adjust the angle of the seat back. After adjusting to the appropriate position, release the key.

八向座椅 Eight-way seat



1. 腰托前后调节按键

Back and forth adjusting key for lumbar support

Seat front, rear and height adjustment buttons

2. 座椅前后及高度调节按键

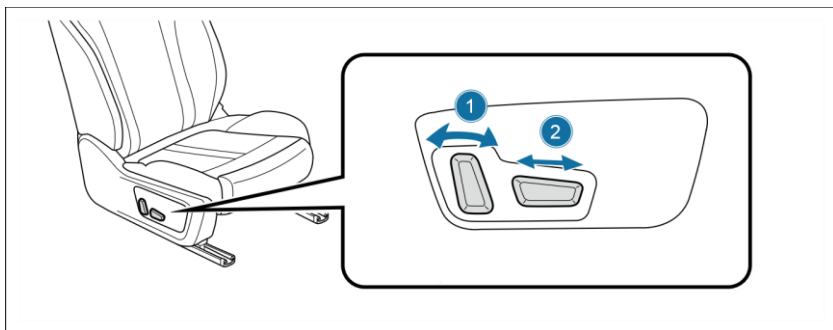
八向座椅调节方式与十向座椅一致。

The adjustment mode of eight-way seat is the same as that of ten-way seat.

3. 靠背角度调节按键

Backrest angle adjustment button

电动调节副驾座椅* Electrically adjustable front passenger seat*



1. 靠背角度调节按键 Backrest angle adjustment button

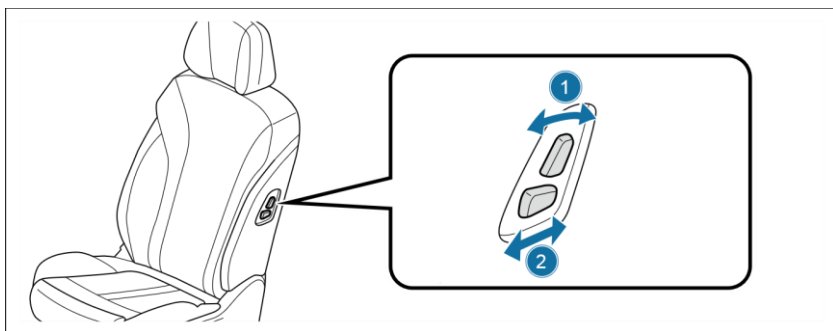
前后轻轻推动此键，可调节座椅靠背角度，调整至合适位置后，松开按键即可。

Push this key back and forth slightly to adjust the angle of the seat back. After adjusting to the appropriate position, release the key.
2. 座椅前后调节按键 Front and rear adjustment buttons

前后轻轻推动整个按键，可调节座椅前后移动，调整至合适位置后，松开按键即可。

Gently push the whole button forward and backward to adjust the seat to move forward and backward. After adjusting to the appropriate position, release the key.

老板键* Boss key*



- | | |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <p>1. 靠背角度调节按键</p> <p>Backrest angle adjustment button</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <p>2. 座椅前后调节按键</p> <p>Front and rear adjustment buttons</p> |
|--|---|
- 老板键调节方式与电动调节副驾座椅方式一致。

The adjustment mode of boss key is consistent with that of electrically adjusting the front passenger seat.



注意 Notice

驾驶过程中，驾驶员请勿调节座椅。

Do not adjust the seat while driving.

调节座椅时应小心，确保移动座椅时不会伤及其他乘客。

Be careful when adjusting the seat to ensure that other passengers will not be injured when moving the seat.

调节座椅时请勿将手放在座椅下方或移动的零件附近以免受伤。

When adjusting the seat, do not put your hand under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.

确保脚部留有足够空间，以防卡住。

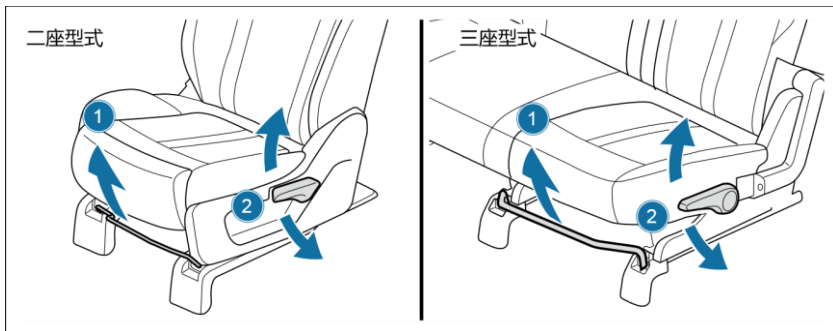
Make sure there is enough space for the feet to prevent jamming.

请勿过度倾斜座椅，否则腰部座椅安全带可能会滑过髋部而直接勒住腹部，或使肩部座椅安全带触及颈部，在发生事故时，会造成严重的伤害，甚至增加死亡的风险。

Do not tilt the seat excessively, otherwise the waist seat belt may slide over the hips and directly strangle the abdomen, or make the shoulder seat belt touch the neck, which will cause serious injury and even increase the risk of death in the event of an accident.

中间排座椅 Middle row seat

手动调节中间排座椅 Manually adjust the middle row seat



1. 座椅前后调节拉杆

Front and rear adjusting lever

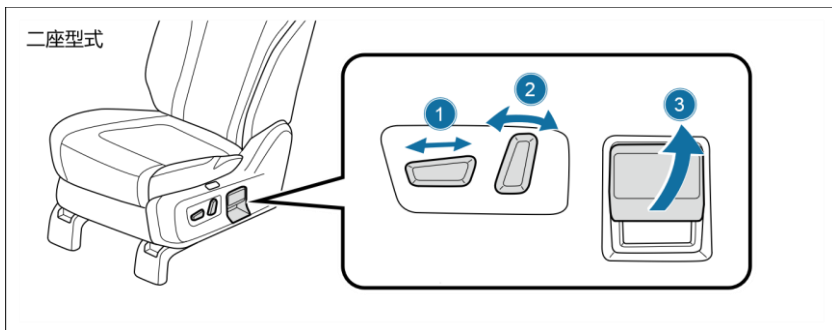
2. 靠背角度调节手柄

Backrest angle adjusting handle

手动调节中间排座椅方式与手动调节主驾座椅一致。

The way of manually adjusting the middle row seat is the same as that of manually adjusting the driver's seat.

电动调节中间排座椅* Electrically adjustable middle row seat*



1. 座椅前后调节按钮 Front and rear adjustment buttons
2. 靠背角度调节按钮 Backrest angle adjustment button
座椅前后及角度调节与电动调节副驾座椅方式一致。
The front, rear and angle adjustment of the seat is consistent with the electric adjustment of the front passenger seat.
3. 座椅左右滑动拉手 Left and right sliding handle of seat
将拉手扣起，可左右推动座椅在轨道内滑动，增大空间方便后排乘客上下车。
When the handle is buckled up, the seat can be pushed left and right to slide in the track, which increases the space and facilitates the rear passengers to get on and off.

中间排座椅扶手*

Middle row seat armrest*

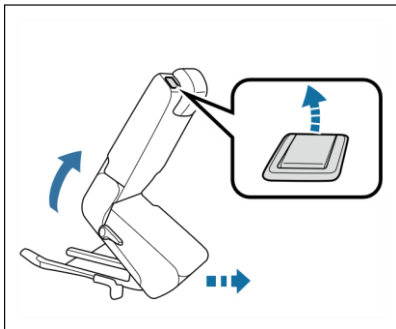


二座型式的中间排座椅带有座椅扶手，使用时向下翻转至固定位置，收回时向上翻转。

The two-seat type middle row seat is equipped with seat armrest, which turns down to the fixed position when in use and up when retracted.

中间排座椅上车辅助功能*

Boarding assistance function of middle row seat*



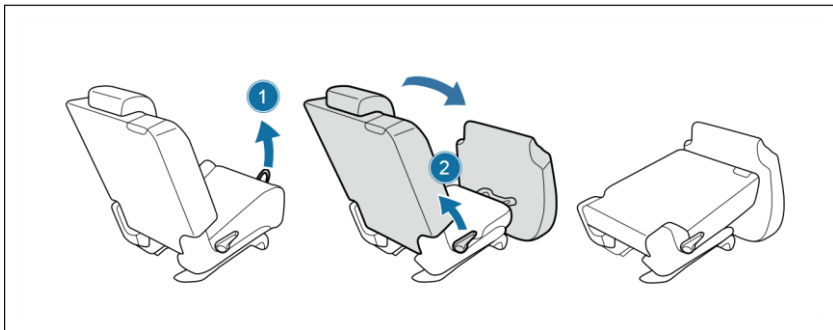
三座型式的中间排座椅可将左侧座椅整体向前翻折以增加空间。操作时，先将中间排左侧座椅头枕放到最低位置，再向上拉动座椅翻折拉手，然后向前推动并翻折座椅，可进一步增加空间。待乘客上、下车后，将座椅往回翻后下压、锁止，并将座椅向后滑动至可锁止区间，即可将座椅还原至初始状态。

The middle row seat of three-seat type can fold the left seat forward as a whole to increase space. During operation, first put the left seat headrest in the middle row to the lowest position, then pull the seat folding handle upward, and then push and fold the seat forward to further increase the space. After passengers get on and off the car, turn the seat back, press down and lock it, and slide the seat back to the lockable section to restore the seat to its original state.

中间排座椅放平* Center row seat flat*

三座型式的中间排座椅可放平，具体操作如下：

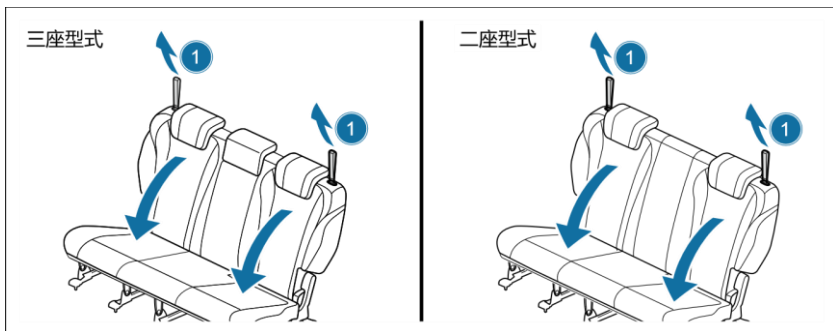
The middle row seats of three-seat type can be laid flat. The specific operations are as follows:



1. 拉动座椅下方的坐垫翻折拉带，将坐垫向前翻折。
Pull the cushion folding strap under the seat to fold the cushion forward.
2. 抬起靠背角度调节手柄将座椅靠背放平。
Lift the backrest angle adjustment handle to level the seat backrest.

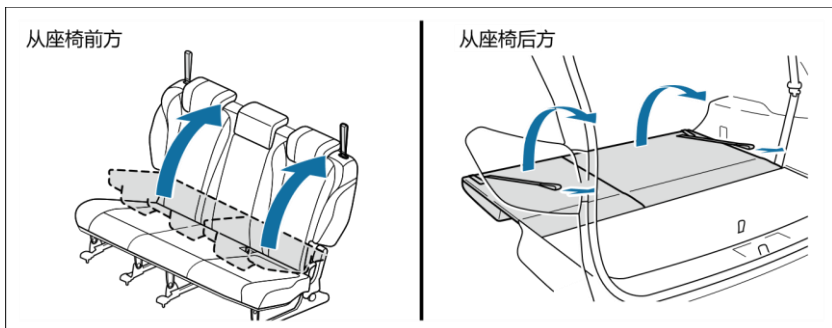
后排座椅 Rear seat

后排座椅靠背调节及放平 Rear seat back adjustment and leveling



1. 拉动后排座椅翻折拉带可以调整座椅靠背角度，持续拉住拉带将靠背从后向前推动可将座椅放平。
Pull the folding pull strap of the rear seat to adjust the angle of the seat back. Continue to pull the pull strap and push the backrest forward from the rear to flatten the seat.

复位后排座椅 Reset the rear seat



- 从座椅前方复位后排座椅：直接抬起座椅靠背直至锁定。
- Reset the rear seat from the front of the seat: directly lift the seat back until it locks.
- 从座椅后方复位后排座椅：拉动座椅背部拉带将靠背拉起直至锁定。
- Reset the rear seat from the rear of the seat: pull the seat back strap to pull up the backrest until it locks.

警告 Warning

- 行驶过程中，请勿折叠座椅靠背。
- Do not fold the seat back while driving.
- 放平后排座椅时，小心不要卡住手。
- Be careful not to jam your hands when flattening the rear seats.
- 有乘客坐在后排座椅上或行李放在座椅上时，请勿折叠后排座椅靠背。
- Do not fold the rear seat back when there are passengers sitting on the rear seat or there is luggage on the seat.
- 复位后排座椅时，要前后轻轻晃动座椅及其靠背，确保其牢固锁定到位。
- When resetting the rear seat, gently shake the seat and its backrest back and forth to ensure that it is firmly locked in place.
- 检查并确认座椅安全带未扭曲或卡在座椅靠背内。
- Check and confirm that the seat belt is not twisted or stuck in the seat back.

座椅加热、通风与按摩*

Seat heating, ventilation and massage*

通过显示屏控制

Controlled by display screen

具体操作方式详见第五章“影音娱乐系统”中的“座椅设置”章节。

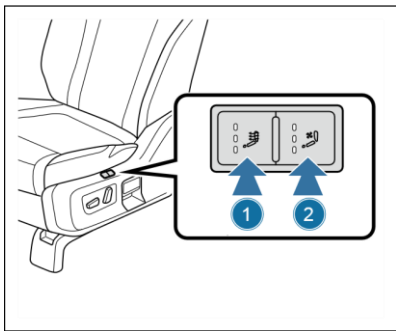
See "seat settings" in Chapter V "Video Entertainment System" for specific operation methods.

通过实体按键控制

Controlled by physical keys

中间排座椅外侧设有座椅通风与加热实体按键。

The outer side of the middle row seat is provided with seat ventilation and heating keys.



1. 座椅加热按键：有三个档位可以调整。

Seat heating button: there are three adjustable gears.

2. 座椅通风按键：有三个档位可以调整。

Seat ventilation button: there are three adjustable gears.

警告 Warning

如果身体因服用药物、瘫痪、麻痹等疾病无法感知疼痛及温度时，请勿使用座椅加热功能，否则可能造成身体灼伤。

If your body cannot feel pain and temperature due to taking drugs, paralysis, paralyzation and other diseases, do not use the seat heating function, otherwise the body may be burned.

注意 Notice

- 请勿跪在座椅上或使座椅承受集中负荷，以免损坏座椅加热元件。
- Do not kneel on the seat or make the seat bear concentrated load, so as not to damage the seat heating element.
- 请勿用湿洗方式清洁座椅。
- Do not clean the seat by wet washing.
- 座椅加热功能开启时请勿放置座椅坐垫。
- Do not place the seat cushion when the seat heating function is activated.

座椅记忆* Seat memory*

部分车型前排及中间排座椅具有记忆功能，具体操作方式详见第五章“影音娱乐系统”中的“用户个性化记忆”章节。

The front and middle seats of some models have memory function. For the specific operation mode, see the chapter "User Personalized Memory" in Chapter V "Video Entertainment System".

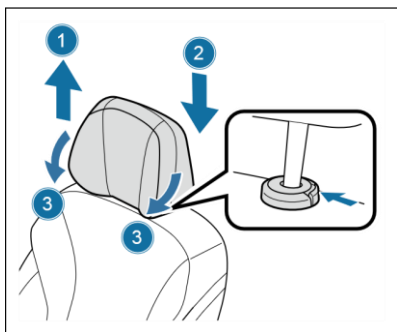
头枕调节

Head restraint adjustment

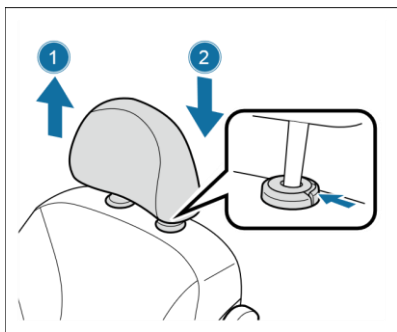
前排座椅 Front seat

带侧翼式头枕

Head restraint with wings



普通头枕 Ordinary head restraint



1. 如需升高头枕，可以直接抬起头枕至所需位置，直至听到“咔哒”声，确保头枕锁定到位。

If you need to raise the head restraint, you can directly lift the head restraint to the required position until you hear the "click" sound to ensure that the head restraint is locked in place.

2. 如需降低头枕，按住位于座椅头枕侧面的调节开关，向下按压头枕至所需高度，然后松开开关，直至听到“咔哒”声，确保头枕锁定到位。

To lower the head restraint, press and hold the adjustment switch located on the side of the seat head restraint, press the head restraint down to the required height, and then release the switch until a "click" sound is heard to ensure that the head restraint is locked in place.

3. 带侧翼的头枕可以将头枕两侧向中间翻折，能更好的包裹头部，给乘客带来更舒适的感受。

The head restraint with wings can fold both sides of the head restraint to the middle, which can better wrap the head and bring more comfortable feeling to passengers.

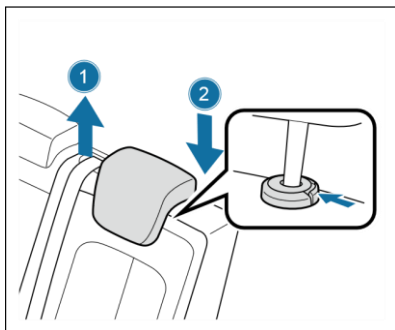
中间排座椅 Middle row seat

二座型式 Two-seat type

型式和调整方式与前排座椅头枕相同。

The type and adjustment method are the same as that of the front seat headrest.

三座型式 Three-seat type



调整方式与前排座椅头枕相同。

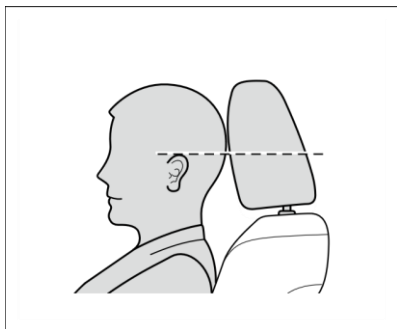
The adjustment method is the same as that of the front seat head restraint.

后排座椅 Rear seat

型式和调整方式与中间排座椅（三座型式）头枕相同。

The type and adjustment method are the same as the head restraint of the middle row seat (three-seat type).

头枕高度 Head restraint height



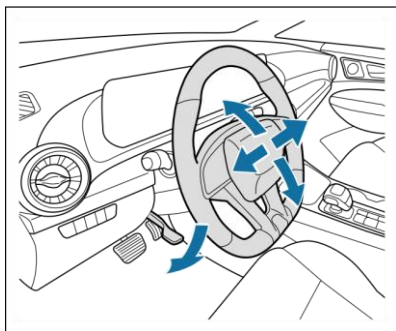
调节头枕时，确保头枕中心与耳朵上部齐平，这样头枕才能发挥最大的保护作用。

When adjusting the head restraint, make sure that the center of the head restraint is flush with the upper part of the ear, so that the head restraint can play the most protective role.

方向盘 Steering wheel

方向盘调节

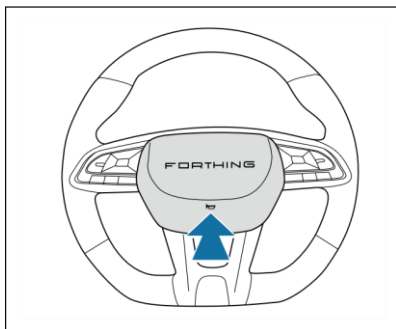
Steering wheel adjustment



一只手握住方向盘，另一只手向下扳动调节手柄后，可沿水平和垂直方向移动方向盘，将其调节至理想位置。调整结束后拉起调节手柄，并确认其已锁止到位。

After holding the steering wheel with one hand and pulling down the adjustment handle with the other hand, the steering wheel can be moved along the horizontal and vertical directions to adjust it to the ideal position. After adjustment, pull up the adjustment handle and confirm that it has been locked in place.

喇叭 Horn

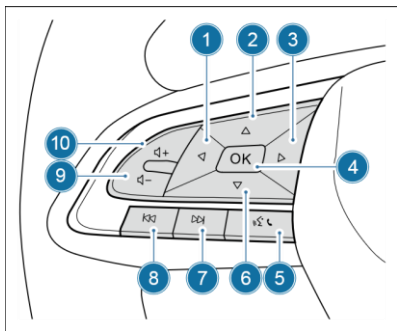


喇叭位于方向盘中部，按压喇叭可

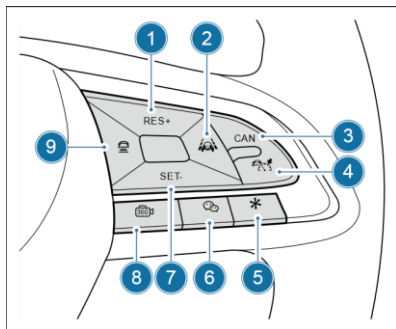
提醒车外行人及车辆。合理地使用喇叭将有助于保障驾驶安全，减少事故发生的频率。方向盘按键操作

The horn is located in the middle of the steering wheel. Pressing the horn can remind pedestrians and vehicles outside the vehicle. Reasonable use of the horn will help to ensure driving safety and reduce the frequency of accidents. Steering wheel key operation

型式一 Type I

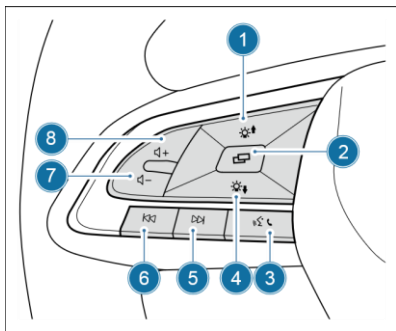


1. 向左键 Left key
2. 向上键 Up key
3. 向右键 Right key
4. OK 键 OK key
5. 蓝牙电话/语音唤醒键 Bluetooth phone / voice wake-up key
6. 向下键 Down key
7. 前进键 Forward key
8. 后退键 Backspace key
9. 音量减小键 Volume down key
10. 音量增大键 Volume up key



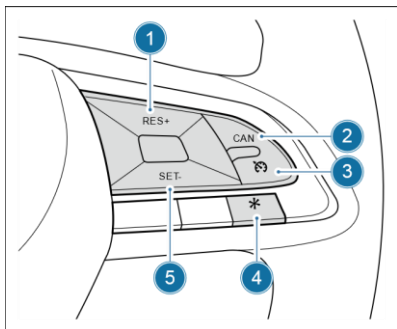
1. 巡航恢复/加速键 Cruise resume / acceleration key
2. 车道保持键 Lane hold key
3. 巡航暂停键 Cruise pause key
4. 自适应巡航键 Adaptive cruise key
5. 自定义键 Custom key
6. 微信键 Wechat key
7. 车速设置/减速键 Speed setting / deceleration key
8. 360°全景键 360° panoramic key
9. 车距调节键 Distance adjustment key

型式二 Type II



1. 亮度增加键 Brightness increase key
2. 翻页键 Page turning key

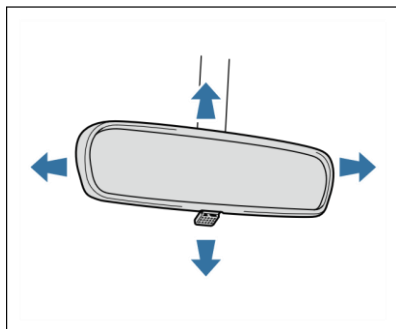
3. 蓝牙电话键/语音控制键 Bluetooth phone key / voice control key
4. 亮度降低键 Brightness reduction key
5. 前进键 Forward key
6. 后退键 Backspace key
7. 音量减小键 Volume down key
8. 音量增大键 Volume up key



1. 巡航恢复/加速键 Cruise resume / acceleration key
2. 巡航暂停键 Cruise pause key
3. 定速巡航键 Constant speed cruise key
4. 自定义键 Custom key
5. 车速设置/减速键 Speed setting / deceleration key

内后视镜

Interior rearview mirror



握住内后视镜右侧，上下左右调节镜体，直至可从镜面中充分看清后方的视野。

Hold the right side of the interior rearview mirror and adjust the mirror body up, down, left and right until the rear view can be fully seen from the mirror.



注意 Notice

由于内后视镜结构限制，调整内后视镜时，请务必轻力慢速调整，以防调节过度，导致后视镜镜体脱出。

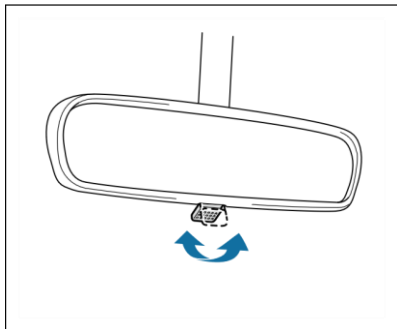
Due to the structural limitation of the interior rear-view mirror, when adjusting the interior rear-view mirror, be sure to adjust it slowly with light force, so as to prevent the mirror body from falling out due to excessive adjustment.

内后视镜防眩目调节

Anti glare adjustment of interior rearview mirror

手动防眩目内后视镜

Manual anti glare interior rearview mirror

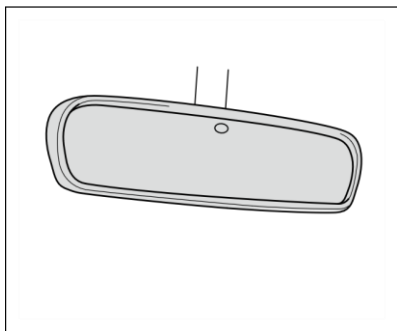


轻轻地扳动内后视镜底部边缘的凸舌，可切换镜片反射状态以防眩目。

Gently pull the tab on the bottom edge of the interior rearview mirror to switch the reflection state of the lens to prevent glare.

自动防眩目内后视镜*

Automatic anti glare interior rearview mirror*



夜间行车时，内后视镜会根据前后光线强弱的差异自动调整镜片反射率实现防眩目。当车辆处于 R 档状态时，为保证倒车视野清晰安全，后视镜自动防眩目功能暂时会停用。

When driving at night, the interior rearview mirror will automatically adjust

the reflectivity of the lens according to the difference between the front and rear light intensity to achieve anti glare. When the vehicle is in R gear, in order to ensure clear and safe reversing vision, the automatic anti glare function of the rearview mirror will be temporarily disabled.

警告 Warning

驾驶过程中请勿调节后视镜位置，否则可能因操控失误而引发事故，从而导致严重伤害甚至死亡。

Do not adjust the position of the rearview mirror during driving, otherwise accidents may be caused due to misoperation, resulting in serious injury or even death.

04

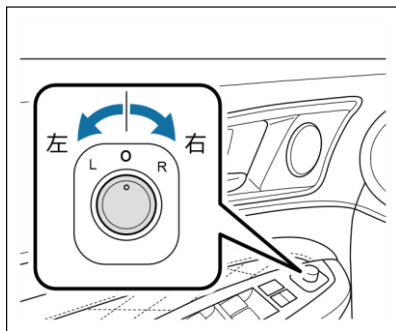
基本功能操作

外后视镜

Exterior rearview mirror

外后视镜电动调节

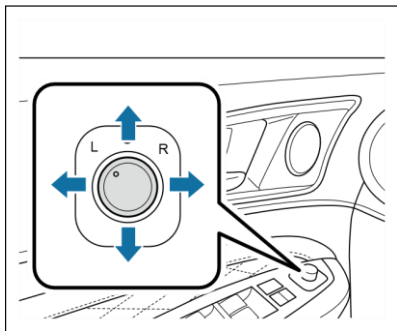
Electric adjustment of exterior rearview mirror



转动镜面调节开关可选择需调节的外后视镜。

Turn the mirror adjustment switch to

select the external rearview mirror to be adjusted.



上下左右推动镜面调节开关，可以调整外后视镜到最佳视野角度。

Push the mirror adjustment switch up, down, left and right to adjust the external rearview mirror to the best view angle.

外后视镜折叠和展开

Folding and unfolding of exterior rearview mirror



在显示屏顶端进行下滑操作可唤出下拉栏快捷菜单，点击【后视镜折叠】，即可实现外后视镜折叠或展开。

Click down on the top of the display screen to call up the shortcut menu of the

drop-down bar, and click [mirror folding] to fold or expand the external rearview mirror.

自动折叠和展开外后视镜

Automatic folding and unfolding of exterior rearview mirror

依次点击显示屏中【设置】-【车辆】-【附件】，选择开启【外后视镜自动折叠】功能。在启动开关置于“OFF”档，四车门关闭时，按下智能钥匙上锁或解锁键，即可实现外后视镜自动折叠或展开。

Click [settings] - [vehicle] - [accessories] in the display screen, and select to turn on the [automatic folding of exterior rearview mirror] function. When the start switch is set to "off" and the four doors are closed, press the lock or unlock key of the smart key to realize the automatic folding or expansion of the exterior rearview mirror.

外后视镜记忆*

Exterior rearview mirror memory*

部分车型配有外后视镜记忆功能，具体操作方式详见第五章“影音娱乐系统”中的“用户个性化记忆”章节。

Some models are equipped with exterior rearview mirror memory function. For the specific operation mode, see the chapter "User Personalized Memory" in Chapter 5 "Video Entertainment System".

外后视镜倒车自动下翻*

The exterior rearview mirror automatically turns down in reverse*

依次点击显示屏中【设置】-【车辆】-【附件】，开启【倒车后视镜下翻】功能，当车辆倒车时外后视镜可自动下翻一定的角度，方便驾驶员查看路面情况。

Click [settings] - [vehicle] - [accessories] in the display screen in turn to turn on the [reverse rearview mirror down] function. When the vehicle is reversing, the external rearview mirror can automatically turn down a certain angle to facilitate the driver to view the road conditions.

后视镜加热除霜

Heating and defrosting of exterior rearview mirror

当启动开关置于“ON”档时，按下空调控制面板上的后风窗除霜按键，可打开或关闭除霜功能，此功能可除去外后视镜上的雾、霜及薄冰。

When the start switch is set to "on", press the rear windshield defrosting button on the air conditioning control panel to turn on or off the defrosting function, which can remove fog, frost and thin ice on the exterior rearview mirror.



注意 Notice

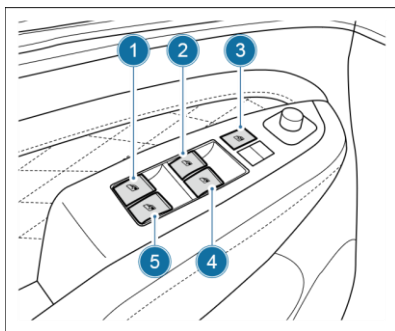
- 驾驶前为保证行车安全，需确保外后视镜复位后再进行镜面角度调节。
- Before driving, in order to ensure driving safety, it is necessary to ensure that the mirror angle is adjusted after the external rearview mirror is reset.
- 驾驶过程中请勿调节外后视镜。
- Do not adjust the exterior rearview mirror during driving.

- 如外后视镜未折叠或展开，可能是外后视镜被碰撞后未复位，需手动将镜头向前推动直至发出“哒”的一声，再操作外后视镜折叠或展开两三次即可。
- If the exterior rearview mirror is not folded or unfolded, it may be that the exterior rearview mirror is not reset after being impacted. Manually push the lens forward until there is a "Da", and then operate the exterior rearview mirror to fold or unfold it twice or thrice.
- 如果外后视镜上有积雪时，请先清除积雪后再调节外后视镜，避免损坏外后视镜。
- If there is snow on the exterior rearview mirror, please remove the snow first and then adjust the exterior rearview mirror to avoid damaging the exterior rearview mirror.

04

基本功能操作

电动车窗 Power windows



1. 左后车窗开关
Left rear window switch
2. 左前车窗开关

Left front window switch

3. 车窗锁止开关

Window lock switch

4. 右前车窗开关

Front right window switch

5. 右后车窗开关

Right rear window switch

手动打开/关闭车窗

Manually open / close the window

向上拉起或向下长按车窗开关并保持住，可手动控制车窗上升或下降。

Pull up or press down the window switch and hold it, you can manually control the window to rise or fall.

自动打开/关闭车窗

Automatic window opening / closing

向上拉起或向下短按车窗开关，车窗可自动上升或下降，如需中途停止，再次拉起或按压此开关即可。

Pull up or press down the window switch briefly, and the window can rise or fall automatically. If you need to stop halfway, pull up or press the switch again.

遥控打开/关闭车窗

Remote opening / closing of windows

当启动开关置于“OFF”档且整车车门关闭时，长按智能钥匙上的解锁键，四扇车窗会同时下降直至完全开启，长按智能钥匙上的上锁键，四扇车窗会同时

上升直至完全关闭。

When the start switch is in the "off" position and the vehicle door is closed, long press the unlock key on the smart key, and the four windows will fall at the same time until they are fully opened. Long press the lock key on the smart key, and the four windows will rise at the same time until they are fully closed.

车窗锁止开关

Window lock switch

为防止儿童意外打开或关闭车窗，按下车窗锁止开关可禁用前排乘客侧车窗和后车窗操作，此时车窗只能由驾驶员控制，如需恢复可再次按下此开关。

To prevent children from accidentally opening or closing the window, press the window lock switch to disable the operation of the front passenger side window and the rear window. At this time, the window can only be controlled by the driver. If you need to restore, press the switch again.

车窗热保护

Window thermal protection

如果在短时间内反复操作车窗，会触发电机保护功能而导致电动车窗控制开关失效。要恢复车窗操作，需稍等一段时间后再次操作。

If the window is operated repeatedly in a short time, the motor protection

function will be triggered, resulting in the failure of the power window control switch. To resume window operation, wait a while and then operate again.

车窗防夹保护

Window anti pinch protection

在车窗关闭过程中，如果遇到障碍物，车窗会停止关闭并往反方向运行一段距离。如果出现冲击或与车窗障碍物类似的情况，自动防夹功能也会起作用。

If an obstacle is encountered during closing the window, the window will stop closing and run in the opposite direction for a distance. The automatic anti pinch function will also work in case of impact or similar conditions to window obstacles.

防夹电动车窗的激活条件

Activation conditions of anti pinch power windows

当启动开关置于“ON”档或车辆熄火后约 60 秒内。

When the start switch is set to "on" or the vehicle is turned off, it will take about 60 seconds.

车窗初始化

Window initialization

- 当车辆蓄电池重新充电、断开连接或未正常工作时，
- When the vehicle battery is recharged, disconnected or not working properly,

- 当车门护板和门控模块更换后，需要对带有防夹功能的电动车窗进行初始化学习，以便可以正常使用。
- When the door guard and door control module are replaced, it is necessary to initialize the power window with anti pinch function so that it can be used normally.

初始化学习步骤

Initialization learning steps

1. 向上拉起车窗开关并保持住，直至车窗完全关闭后，继续保持 2 秒以上。

Pull up the window switch and hold it until the window is completely closed, and keep it for more than 2 seconds.

2. 向下按住车窗开关并保持住，直至车窗完全打开后，继续保持 2 秒以上。

Press and hold the window switch down until the window is fully opened, and continue to hold for more than 2 seconds.

3. 再次向上拉起车窗开关，直至车窗关闭。

Pull up the window switch again until the window is closed.

4. 初始化学习结束。

Initialization learning is over.

以上步骤需连贯操作，以保证学习

成功。如果上述操作后电动车窗仍不能正常工作，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

The above steps need to be operated continuously to ensure the success of learning. If the power window still cannot work normally after the above operation, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

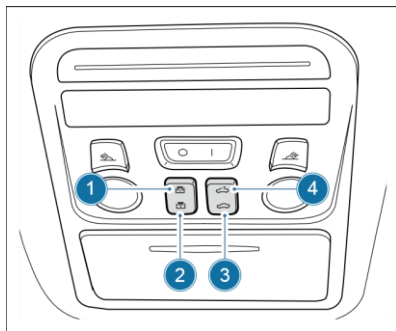
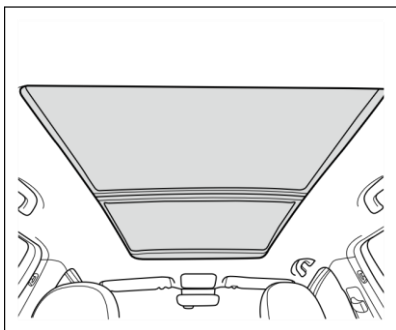


注意 Notice

- 操作车窗时，要确保不会夹住乘客身体的任何部位。
- When operating the window, make sure that no part of the passenger's body is caught.
- 请勿让儿童操作电动车窗。
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.
- 请勿故意以夹住身体任何部位的方式来测试防夹功能。
- Do not deliberately test the anti pinch function by clamping any part of the body.
- 如果车窗即将完全关闭时夹住物体，防夹功能可能不起作用。
- If an object is caught when the window is about to be fully closed, the anti pinch function may not work.

天窗 Sunroof

全景天窗 Panoramic sunroof



1. 遮阳帘开启按键
Sunshade opening button
2. 遮阳帘关闭按键
Sunshade close button
3. 天窗关闭按键
Sunroof close button
4. 天窗开启按键
Sunroof opening button

为了改善车内光线和车内空气流通，可打开遮阳帘和天窗。操作天窗时，启动开关必须置于“ON”档。

In order to improve the light and air circulation in the vehicle, the sun blind and sunroof can be opened. When operating the sunroof, the start switch must be in the "on" position.

天窗起翘和关闭

Sunroof warping and closing

天窗关闭时，点按天窗开启按键，天窗向后滑行至起翘状态，遮阳帘随动打开。

When the sunroof is closed, press the sunroof opening button, the sunroof will

slide backward to the tilted state, and the sunshade will open with the movement.

天窗起翘时, 点按天窗关闭按键, 天窗关闭。

When the sunroof is tilted, press the sunroof close button to close the sunroof.

天窗打开和关闭

Sunroof opening and closing

天窗关闭时, 点按天窗开启按键, 天窗起翘, 再次点按此键, 天窗一键打开至完全开启状态。

When the sunroof is closed, press the sunroof opening button to tilt the sunroof. Press this button again to open the sunroof to the fully open state.

天窗开启时, 点按天窗关闭按键, 天窗一键关闭。

When the sunroof is opened, press the sunroof close button to close the sunroof with one button.

在天窗一键打开或关闭过程中, 再次点按天窗操作按键, 天窗停止在当前位置。

In the process of one-key opening or closing of the sunroof, press the sunroof operation button again, and the sunroof will stop at the current position.

遥控关闭天窗

Remotely close the sunroof

车辆熄火后, 天窗无法通过车内按键操作, 如果此时发现天窗处于打开状

态, 可通过智能钥匙关闭天窗。

After the vehicle is turned off, the sunroof cannot be operated by the keys in the vehicle. If the sunroof is found to be open at this time, the sunroof can be closed by the smart key.

- 如果显示屏上, 遥控关窗功能选择的是【短按】, 则可通过短按智能钥匙的上锁键关闭天窗。
- If [short press] is selected for the remote window closing function on the display screen, the sunroof can be closed by briefly pressing the lock key of the smart key.
- 如果显示屏上, 遥控关窗功能选择的是【长按】, 则需长按智能钥匙的上锁键3秒以上, 天窗才会关闭。
- If [long press] is selected for the remote window closing function on the display screen, long press the lock key of the smart key for more than 3 seconds before the sunroof can be closed.

天窗延时关闭

Delayed closing of sunroof

此功能可以在车辆熄火后的30秒内, 继续通过车内按键操作天窗开启或关闭。

This function can continue to open or close the sunroof through the keys in the vehicle within 30 seconds after the vehicle is turned off.

天窗语音控制和远程遥控功能*

Sunroof voice control and remote control function*

- 在唤醒语音系统后，可以通过“打开天窗或关闭天窗”的指令操控天窗。
- After waking up the voice system, you can operate the sunroof through the command of "open sunroof or close sunroof".
- 可通过与车辆联网的手机程序实现远程操控天窗。
- The sunroof can be remotely operated through the mobile phone program connected with the vehicle.

遮阳帘打开/关闭

Sunshade open / close

点按遮阳帘开启或关闭按键可打开或者关闭遮阳帘，遮阳帘运动过程中再次按下此键可停止。

Press the sunshade open or close button to open or close the sunshade. Press this button again during the movement of the sunshade to stop.

在天窗打开状态下，遮阳帘关闭位置不能超过天窗开启位置。

When the sunroof is open, the closed position of the sunshade cannot exceed the open position of the sunroof.

天窗防夹保护

Sunroof anti pinch protection

当天窗或遮阳帘在自动关闭的过程中受到异常阻力或障碍物，天窗或遮阳帘将在中途自动停止并退回一段距离，防止人员受伤。

When the sunroof or sunshade is subject to abnormal resistance or obstacles in the process of automatic closing, the sunroof or sunshade will automatically stop and return for a certain distance in the middle of the way to prevent personal injury.



注意 Notice

天窗防夹保护功能在天窗或遮阳帘距离完全关闭 200 毫米以内有效。

The sunroof anti pinch protection function is effective within 200mm from the sunroof or sunshade completely closed.

天窗初始化 Sunroof initialization

当天窗无法完全关闭时，可通过以下操作恢复：

When the sunroof cannot be fully closed, it can be restored by the following operations:

1. 长按天窗关闭按键约 6~8 秒，此时天窗会前后窜动一小段距离（小于 10 毫米）。

Press and hold the sunroof close button for about 6 ~ 8 seconds. At this time, the sunroof will move back and forth for a short distance (less than 10mm).

2. 松开天窗关闭按键，五秒后再次长按，天窗会自动从完全打开到完全关闭运行一个来回，此时松开按键，天窗初始化完成。


Release the sunroof closing button and press it again after five seconds. The sunroof will automatically run back and forth from fully open to fully closed. At this time, release the button and the sunroof initialization is completed.

天窗热保护

Sunroof thermal protection

为防止天窗电机过热导致功能异常，在连续操作天窗 120 秒后（正常阻力状态下），天窗会开启热保护功能，此时再操作天窗将暂时无法动作，大约过 30 秒电机冷却后可再次操作天窗。

In order to prevent abnormal function caused by overheating of sunroof motor, after continuous operation of sunroof for 120 seconds (under normal resistance state), the sunroof will open the thermal protection function. At this time, the sunroof will not operate temporarily. After about 30 seconds, the sunroof can be operated again after the motor cools down.

 **警告** Warning

- 操作天窗或遮阳帘时，要确保不会夹住身体的任何部位。
- When operating the sunroof or sunshade, make sure that no part of the body is clamped.

 **警告** Warning

- 请勿让儿童操作天窗或遮阳帘。
- Do not allow children to operate the sunroof or sunshade.
- 车辆移动时，请勿让乘客把手或头伸出车外。
- When the vehicle is moving, do not let the passengers extend their hands or heads out of the vehicle.
- 请勿坐在天窗顶上。
- Do not sit on the roof of the sunroof.
- 请勿用身体的任何部位来测试防夹功能。
- Do not use any part of your body to test the anti pinch function.
- 如果天窗或遮阳帘即将完全关闭时夹住物体，防夹功能可能不起作用。
- If an object is caught when the sunroof or sunshade is about to close completely, the anti pinch function may not work.

全景天幕*

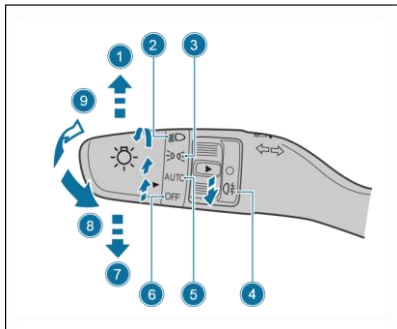
Panoramic sky curtain*

全景天幕采用整体式玻璃，无法开启。

The panoramic sky curtain adopts integral glass and cannot be opened.

灯 Lighting

车外灯光 Exterior lights



1. 右转向灯 Right turn signal lamp
2. 近光灯 Low-beam lamp
3. 位置灯 Position lamp
4. 后雾灯 Rear fog lamp
5. 自动灯光* Automatic lighting*
6. 大灯关闭状态 Headlamp off state
7. 左转向灯 Left turn signal lamp
8. 远光灯闪烁 High beam flashing
9. 远光灯 High beam

转向灯开关 Turn signal switch

向上或向下拨动灯光控制手柄，右侧或左侧转向灯闪亮，转向完成后，手柄回位，转向灯关闭。

Move the light control handle up or down, and the right or left steering light flashes. After the steering is completed, the handle returns and the steering light is turned off.

远/近光灯切换

High / low beam switching

当近光灯打开时，将灯光控制手柄向前推至极限位置，远光灯开启；向后拨回，远光灯关闭。

When the low-beam lamp is turned on, push the light control handle forward to the limit position, and the high beam lamp is turned on; Turn it back to turn off the high beam.

雾灯开关 Fog lamp switch

在近光灯打开时，拨动调节环使►指向后雾灯，后雾灯打开；再次拨动调节环使►指向O，后雾灯关闭。

When the low-beam lamp is turned on, move the adjusting ring► to point to the rear fog lamp, and the rear fog lamp is turned on; Move the adjusting ring► again to point to o, and the rear fog lamp will turn off.

日间行车灯* Daytime running lights*

日间行车灯主要在白天使用，可自动点亮，使其他驾驶员更清楚地看到您的车辆，保障行车安全。

Daytime running lights are mainly used in the daytime and can be automatically lit to make other drivers see your vehicle more clearly and ensure driving safety.

自动灯光* Automatic lighting*

拨动调节环使►指向AUTO时，前大灯和其它车外灯将根据环境亮度自动打开或关闭。

When the adjusting ring► is moved to point to auto, the headlights and other exterior lights will be turned on or off

automatically according to the ambient brightness.

伴我回家 Accompany me home

车辆熄火后 5 分钟内往回拨动一次灯光控制手柄，伴我回家功能开启，此时近光灯自动打开。

Turn back the light control handle within 5 minutes after the vehicle is turned off, and the function of accompanying me home will be turned on. At this time, the low-beam lamp will turn on automatically.

车门上锁 30 秒后或者伴我回家功能开启 5 分钟后近光灯自动关闭。

After the door is locked for 30 seconds or the function of accompanying me home is turned on, the low-beam lamp will turn off automatically after 5 minutes.

大灯高度调节

Headlamp height adjustment

当车辆承载较重时，车身后部会下沉，使近光灯光束被抬高，影响驾驶员的视线，引起安全隐患，此时应该找个安全的地方停车，然后对大灯高度进行调节。When the vehicle carries a heavy load, the rear part of the vehicle body will sink, which will raise the low-beam light, affecting the driver's sight and causing potential safety hazards. At this time, you should find a safe place to park, and then adjust the headlight height.

具体方法如下：

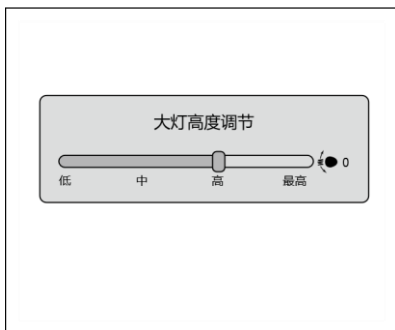
The specific method is as follows:

1. 启动开关置于“ON”档时，打开大灯。

Turn on the headlights when the start switch is in the "on" position.

2. 在显示屏顶端进行下划操作唤出下拉栏快捷菜单，可以看到大灯高度调节。

Click down at the top of the display screen to call up the shortcut menu of the drop-down bar, and you can see the headlamp height adjustment.

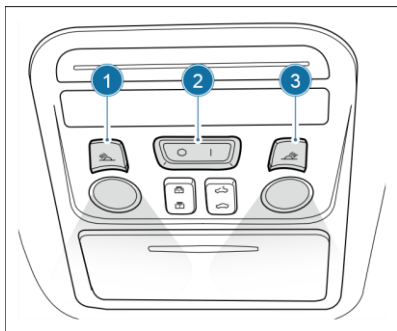


3. 左右滑动控制球可调节车辆大灯高度，有四个档位。

The left and right sliding control balls can adjust the height of the vehicle's headlights and have four gears.

车内灯光 Interior lights

前排室内灯 Front row interior lamp



1. 左前室内灯开关 Front left interior lamp switch
2. 门控开关 Door control switch
3. 右前室内灯开关

Front right interior lamp switch

门控开关操作

Door control switch operation

按下门控开关“O”时，门控功能关闭。

When the door control switch "O" is pressed, the door control function is closed.

按下门控开关“I”时，所有室内灯点亮。

When the door control switch "I" is pressed, all indoor lights are on.

当门控开关与面板平行时，室内灯会随着四车门的开启和关闭而点亮或熄灭。

When the door control switch is parallel to the panel, the indoor light will turn on or off with the opening and closing of the four doors.

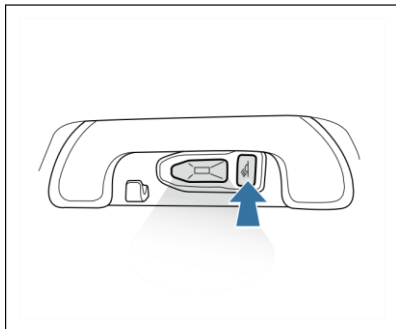
室内灯开关 Indoor light switch

当门控开关与面板平行或按下“O”

时，室内灯受对应的室内灯开关控制，按下时点亮，弹出时熄灭。

When the door control switch is parallel to the panel or "O" is pressed, the indoor lamp is controlled by the corresponding indoor lamp switch. It turns on when pressed and turns off when ejected.

后排室内灯 Rear interior lamp



后排室内灯位于后排拉手下方，当门控开关与面板平行或按下“O”时，后排室内灯的点亮或熄灭受后排室内灯开关控制。

The rear interior lamp is located under the rear handle. When the door control switch is parallel to the panel or "O" is pressed, the lighting or extinction of the rear interior lamp is controlled by the rear interior lamp switch.

氛围灯* Atmosphere lamp*

氛围灯能营造夜间车内氛围，并辅助车内照明。

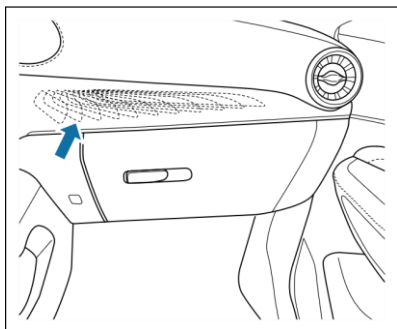
The atmosphere lamp can create an atmosphere in the car at night and assist the

lighting in the car.

可以通过点击显示屏【设置】-【车辆】-【灯光】选择氛围灯的亮度、颜色及律动模式。

You can select the brightness, color and rhythm mode of the atmosphere light by clicking [setting] - [vehicle] - [light] on the display screen.

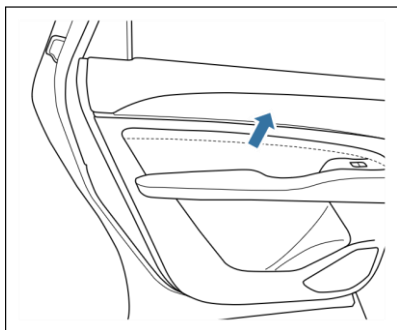
仪表台氛围灯 Atmosphere lamp on the instrument panel



仪表台氛围灯位于仪表台右侧。

The atmosphere light on the instrument panel is located on the right side of the instrument panel.

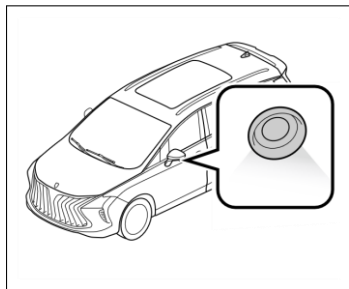
车门氛围灯 Door atmosphere lamp



车门氛围灯位于前后车门拉手处。

The door atmosphere lamp is located at the front and rear door handles.

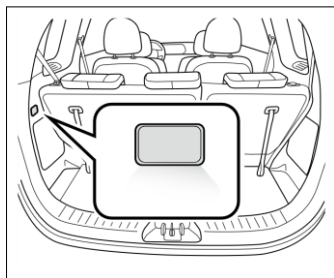
迎宾灯 Welcome lamp



迎宾灯位于车辆外后视镜下方，用于夜晚照亮地面，拉开车门时，迎宾灯点亮；车辆熄火后，推开车门时，迎宾灯点亮，车门关上后，迎宾灯熄灭。

The welcome lamp is located under the exterior rearview mirror of the vehicle and is used to illuminate the ground at night. When the door is opened, the welcome lamp will be on; after the vehicle is turned off, the welcome light will be on when the door is pushed open. After the door is closed, the welcome light will be off.

行李箱灯 Luggage compartment lamp



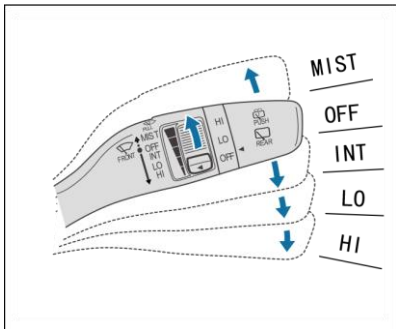
打开后背门时，行李箱灯自动点亮。

关闭后背门后，自动熄灭。

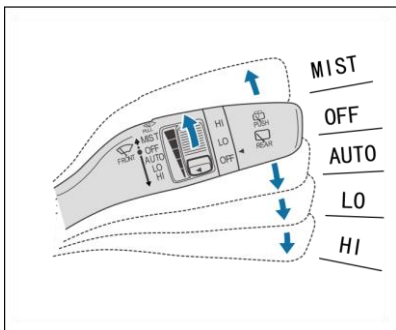
When the back door is opened, the trunk light will turn on automatically. After closing the back door, it turns off automatically.

雨刮 Wiper

前手动雨刮 Front manual wiper



前自动雨刮 * Front automatic wiper*



MIST: 点动模式。向上拨动雨刮控制手柄，雨刮刮刷一次，松手后手柄自动回位。

MIST: jog mode. Move the wiper control handle upward to brush the wiper once, and the handle will return automatically after

releasing.

OFF: 关闭雨刮。雨刮控制手柄在 OFF 档时，停止刮水。此档位为默认档位。

OFF: turn off the wiper. Stop wiping when the wiper control handle is in OFF gear. This gear is the default gear.

INT: 间歇刮水。向下拨动雨刮控制手柄至 INT 档，雨刮间歇刮刷，调节环可调整间歇时间。从上往下，间歇时间逐渐减小，刮水速度逐渐加快。

INT: intermittent wiping. Pull down the wiper control handle to INT gear, the wiper will wipe intermittently, and the adjustment ring can adjust the intermission time. From top to bottom, the intermittent time decreases gradually and the wiping speed increases gradually.

AUTO*: 自动刮水。向下拨动雨刮控制手柄至 AUTO 档，雨刮自动刮刷，调节环可调整灵敏度。从上往下，灵敏度逐渐增大，刮水速度逐渐加快。

AUTO*: automatic wiping. Pull down the wiper control handle to AUTO gear, the wiper will automatically wipe, and the sensitivity can be adjusted by adjusting the ring. From top to bottom, the sensitivity increases gradually and the wiping speed increases gradually.

LO: 低速刮水。向下拨动雨刮控制手柄至 LO 档，进行低速连续刮水。

LO: low speed wiper. Pull down the wiper

control handle to LO gear for low-speed continuous wiping.

HI: 高速刮水。向下拨动雨刮控制手柄至 HI 档，进行高速连续刮水。

HI: high speed wiper. Pull down the wiper control handle to HI gear for high-speed continuous wiping.

注意 Notice

当拨动雨刮控制手柄至 AUTO 档，雨刮自动刮水功能打开时，在下列情况下，雨刮可能会产生刮刷，属于正常现象：

When the wiper control handle is turned to AUTO and the automatic wiper function is turned on, the wiper may produce a wiper brush under the following conditions, which is a normal phenomenon:

- 经过光线明显变化的区域，如树林、天桥等。
- Pass through areas with obvious changes in light, such as trees, overpasses, etc.
- 有异物掉落在传感器区域，如树叶等。
- There are foreign objects falling in the sensor area, such as leaves, etc.
- 车辆经过灰尘较大的区域，如在大型车辆后面跟车或者经过施工路段。
- Vehicles pass through dusty areas, such as following behind large vehicles or passing through construction sections.

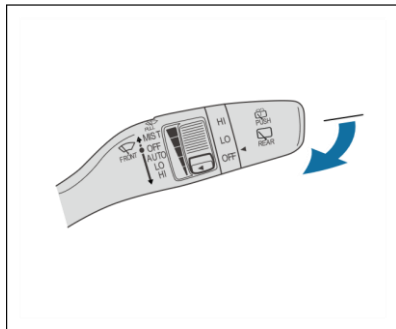
以下情况可能会导致自动刮水功能失效：

The following conditions may cause the automatic wipe function to fail:

- 雨量传感器表面附着异物
- Foreign matters are attached to the surface of rain sensor.
- 车上加装或连接其他电子设备，使用中可能也会影响此系统功能。
- Adding or connecting other electronic equipment on the vehicle may also affect the function of this system in use.

前挡风玻璃洗涤

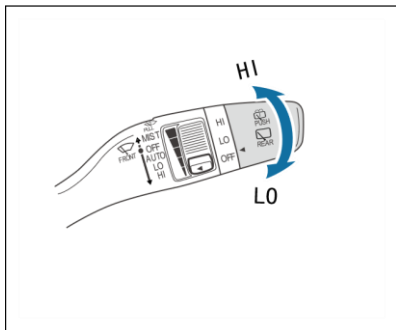
Front windshield washing



往回拨动雨刮控制手柄并保持住，前挡风玻璃洗涤器开始喷水，同时前雨刮进行低速刮刷，松开雨刮控制手柄后停止喷水和刮刷。

Move the wiper control handle back and hold it. The front windshield washer starts to spray water. At the same time, the front wiper wipes at a low speed. Release the wiper control handle and stop spraying and brushing.

后雨刮 Rear wiper



HI: 后雨刮高速刮水。扭动雨刮控制手柄后端到 HI 档位，后雨刮进行高速刮水。

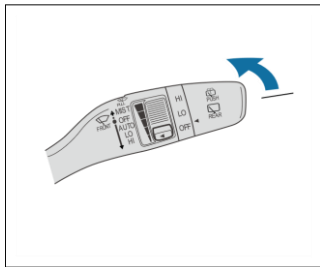
HI: high-speed wiping of rear wiper. Twist the rear end of the wiper control handle to

HI gear, and the rear wiper will wipe at high speed.

LO: 后雨刮低速刮水。扭动雨刮控制手柄后端到 LO 档位，后雨刮进行低速刮水。

LO: low-speed wiping of rear wiper. Twist the rear end of the wiper control handle to LO gear, and the rear wiper wipes at low speed.

后挡风玻璃洗涤 Rear windshield washing



向前推动雨刮控制手柄并保持住，后挡风玻璃洗涤器开始喷水，同时后雨刮进行低速刮刷，松开雨刮控制手柄后停止喷水和刮刷。

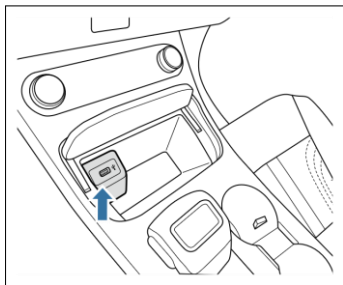
Push the wiper control handle forward and hold it. The rear windshield washer starts to spray water. At the same time, the rear wiper wipes at a low speed. Release the wiper control handle and stop spraying and brushing.

USB 接口 USB interface

USB 接口只有当启动开关置于“ON”档或“ACC”档时才能工作。此接口可供手机充电使用。

The USB interface can work only when the start switch is set to "on" or "ACC". This interface can be used for mobile phone charging.

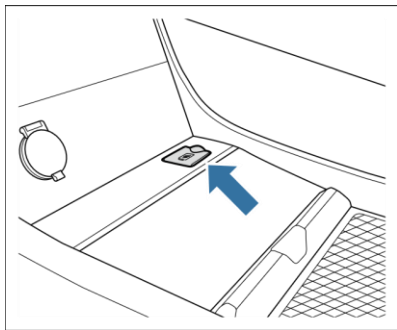
副仪表台前部 USB 接口 USB interface in front of auxiliary instrument panel



前部 USB 接口位于副仪表台上部储物格内。

The front USB interface is located in the upper storage compartment of the auxiliary instrument panel.

副仪表台下部 USB 接口 USB interface at lower part of auxiliary instrument panel



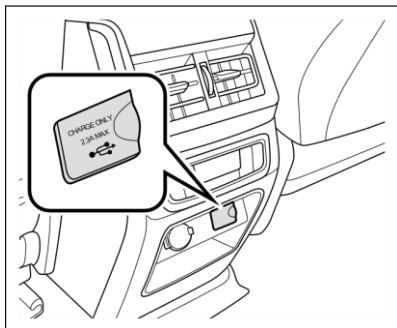
下部 USB 接口位于副仪表台下部储

物槽内。

The lower USB interface is located in the lower storage slot of the auxiliary instrument panel.

副仪表台后部 USB 接口

USB interface at the rear of auxiliary instrument panel

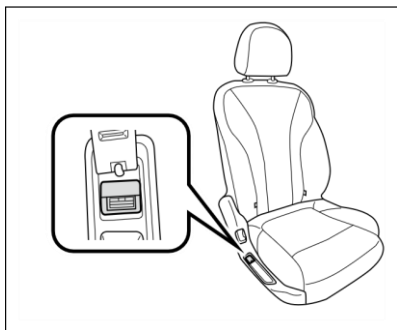


后部 USB 接口位于副仪表台后部出风口下方。

The rear USB interface is located under the air outlet at the rear of the auxiliary instrument panel.

中间排座椅外侧 USB 接口

USB interface outside the middle row seat

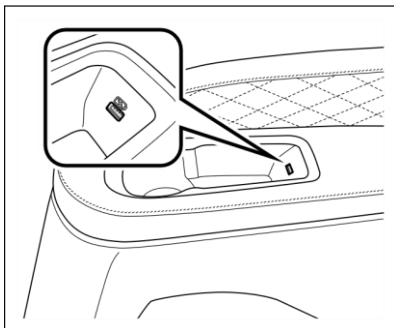


中间排座椅外侧设有 USB 接口供手机充电使用。

The outer side of the middle row seat is equipped with USB interface for mobile phone charging.

后排侧围 USB 接口

Rear side wall USB interface



后排 USB 接口位于后排左右侧围储物槽内，供手机充电使用。

The rear USB interface is located in the storage slot on the left and right sides of the rear row for mobile phone charging.



注意 Notice

- 不使用 USB 接口时，盖紧防尘盖。
- When the USB interface is not used, close the dust cover.
- 不要把金属异物插入接口内，以免短路而导致起火。
- Do not insert metal foreign matters into the interface to avoid short circuit and fire.



注意 Notice

- USB 接口只提供充电功能, 充电最大电流为 2.3A, 请勿插入大电流用电器, 以免引起火灾。
- The USB interface only provides charging function, and the maximum charging current is 2.3A. Do not insert high current appliances to avoid fire.
- 插拔 USB 数据线时, 插拔方向尽量保持与 USB 接口同一个方向不要倾斜, 以免损坏 USB 接口。
- When plugging the USB data cable, try to keep the plugging direction in the same direction as the USB interface and do not tilt to avoid damaging the USB interface.

12V 车载电源

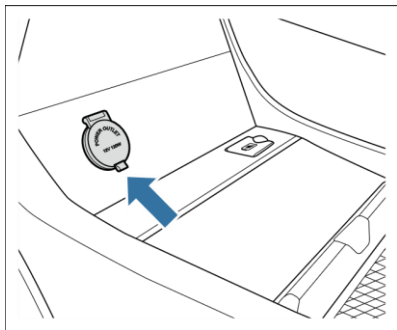
12V on-board power supply

12V 车载电源只有当启动开关置于“ON”档或“ACC”档时才能工作。

12V on-board power supply can work only when the start switch is in "on" or "ACC".

副仪表台前部车载电源

On-board power supply in front of auxiliary instrument panel



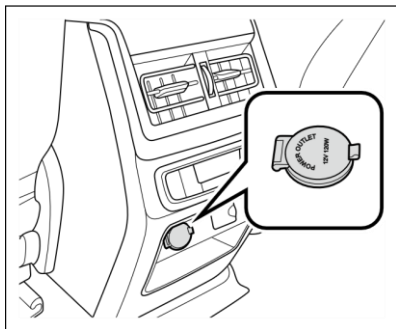
前部 12V 车载电源位于副仪表台下部储物槽内。

The front 12V on-board power supply is located in the lower storage tank of the

auxiliary instrument panel.

副仪表台后部车载电源

On-board power supply at the rear of auxiliary instrument panel

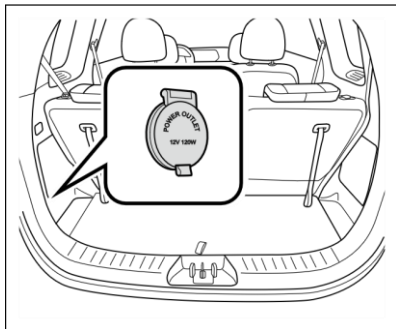


后部 12V 车载电源位于副仪表台后部出风口下方。

The rear 12V on-board power supply is located under the air outlet at the rear of the auxiliary instrument panel.

行李箱车载电源

Luggage compartment on-board power supply



行李箱 12V 车载电源位于行李箱左侧围下方。

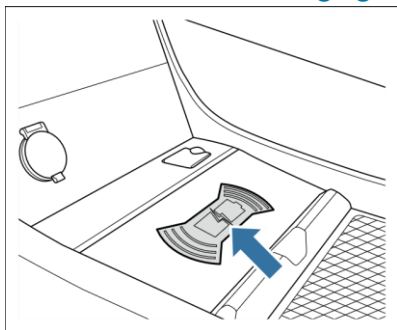
The luggage compartment 12V on-

board power supply is located under the left side wall of the luggage compartment.

注意 Notice

- 不使用 12V 车载电源时，盖紧防尘盖。
- When 12V on-board power supply is not used, cover the dust cover tightly.
- 12V 车载电源最大输出功率为 120W，请勿插入大功率用电器，以免引起火灾。
- The maximum output power of 12V on-board power supply is 120W. Do not insert high-power appliances to avoid fire.
- 不要让儿童使用或接触 12V 车载电源，不要把金属异物插入电源接口内，以免短路而导致起火。
- Do not let children use or contact the 12V on-board power supply, and do not insert metal foreign matters into the power interface to avoid short circuit and fire.
- 12V 车载电源只作为取电使用，请勿将点烟器插入 12V 车载电源插座，以免因短路而引起火灾。
- The 12V on-board power supply is only used for power supply. Do not insert the cigarette lighter into the 12V on-board power socket to avoid fire caused by short circuit.

无线充电* Wireless charging*



无线充电装置位于副仪表台下部储物槽内。供支持无线充电的设备（如：手机）充电。The wireless charging unit is

located in the lower storage slot of the auxiliary instrument panel. For charging of devices that support wireless charging (e.g., cell phones).

充电 Charging

充电前，请确保无线充电区域没有其他物品干扰。当启动开关置于“ON”档或“ACC”档时，将待充电的设备放置在充电区域中间位置，根据设备的充电状态指示灯判断是否充电成功。

Before charging, please make sure there is no interference from other objects in the wireless charging area. When the start switch is in "ON" or "ACC", place the device to be charged in the middle of the charging area and judge whether the charging is successful according to the charging status indicator of the device.

当充电完成后，会自动停止充电。充电过程中如需停止充电，将充电设备移开无线充电装置表面即可。

When charging is complete, it will automatically stop charging. If you need to stop charging during the charging process, just move the charging device away from the surface of the wireless charging unit.

运行 Operation

充电模式由充电设备管理。在充电过程中，当车门打开或移动正在充电的设备时可能会中断充电。Charging mode is managed by the charging device. During

charging, charging may be interrupted when the door is opened or when the device being charged is moved.

遗忘提醒功能 Forgetting reminder function

无线充电装置具备遗忘提醒功能。

The wireless charging device has a forgetting reminder function.

触发条件 Trigger conditions

1. 无线充电装置表面有设备正在充电。

A device is charging on the surface of the wireless charging device.

2. 启动开关从“ACC”档或“ON”档切换到“OFF”档。


Switch the start switch from "ACC" or "ON" gear to "OFF" gear.

3. 主驾车门打开。

The main driver's door opens.

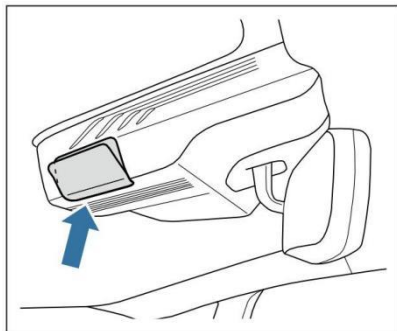
如果同时满足以上条件，组合仪表将显示【手机忘带】，并伴随蜂鸣报警。在此期间如有任意条件发生改变，提醒功能关闭。

If the above conditions are met at the same time, the instrument pack will display [Phone Forgotten] with a beeping alarm. If any of the conditions change during this period, the reminder function is turned off.

 注意 Notice

- 待充电的设备无论是设备本身，还是与其外接的无线充电外壳，都必须符合国家要求的无线充电标准。
- The device to be charged, both the device itself and its external wireless charging enclosure, must comply with the national requirements for wireless charging.
- 无线充电装置一次只能供一台设备进行充电。
- The wireless charging unit can only charge one device at a time.

行车记录仪*Car recorder* 内存卡插入与取出 Memory card insertion and removal



行车记录仪内存卡卡槽位于行车记录仪左侧，首次使用前请先确认卡槽内是否有内存卡。

The memory card slot of the car recorder is located on the left side of the car recorder, please check if there is a memory card in the slot before using it for the first time.

用一字起撬开行车记录仪左侧的堵盖即可看到内存卡槽的橡胶塞，拔出橡胶塞即可插拔内存卡，插卡时请将内存

卡文字标识面朝上。插入卡后将橡胶塞重新装回，并将堵盖扣紧。

Pry open the plug cover on the left side of the car recorder to see the rubber plug of the memory card slot, pull out the rubber plug to insert and remove the memory card. When inserting the card, please put the memory card text logo side up. After inserting the card, put the rubber plug back in and fasten the cover tightly.

建议新卡先在“AI 风行”APP 行车记录仪的设置中进行格式化操作，行车记录仪支持内存为 8G-64G，内存卡速率等级要求 Class10 以上。

It is recommended that the new card be formatted in the settings of the "AI FORTHING" APP car recorder first. The car recorder supports 8G-64G of memory, and the speed level of the memory card requires Class10 or above.

行车记录仪的操作

Operation of the car recorder

开启 Turn on

当启动开关置于“ACC”档或“ON”档时，行车记录仪开始工作，进入录像状态。

When the start switch is set to "ACC" or "ON", the car recorder starts to work and enters the recording state.

关闭 Turn off

当启动开关由“ACC”档或“ON”

档转到“OFF”档时，行车记录仪自动关闭或延时关闭（延时时间可在设置菜单中选择）。

When the start switch is switched from "ACC" or "ON" to "OFF", the car recorder is automatically switched off or delayed (the delay time can be selected in the setup menu).

行车记录仪的状态显示



Status display of the car recorder

行车记录仪录像状态在显示屏的状态栏上可以查看到。具体含义如下：

The recording status of the car recorder can be viewed on the status bar of the display. The specific meaning is as follows.

行车记录仪可通过“AI 风行”APP 进行操作。具体操作方式详见第五章“影音娱乐系统”中的“行车记录仪”部分。

The car recorder can be operated via the "AI FORTHING" App. For details of how to operate it, please refer to the "Car Recorder" section in Chapter 5 "Video Entertainment System".

	行车记录仪录像中 Car recorder recording in progress
	行车记录仪异常 Car recorder anomaly



存储卡异常
Memory card
anomaly

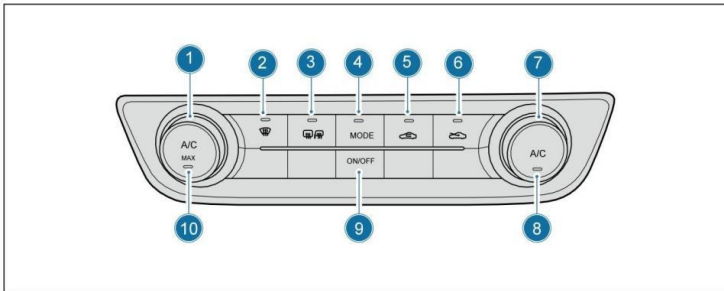


存储卡满
Memory card full

04

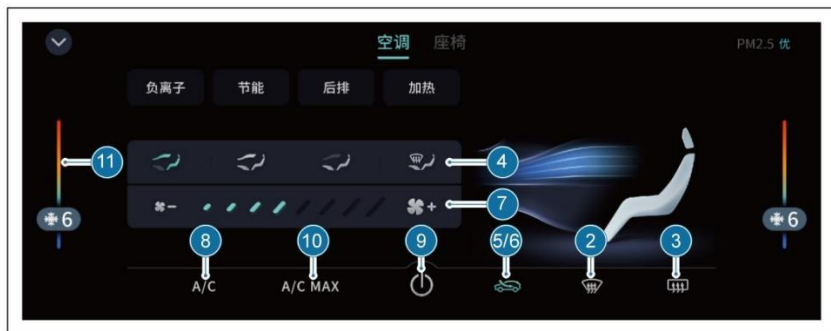
空调系统 Air conditioning systems 电动空调 Electric air conditioning

前空调按键面板 Front air conditioning button panel



基
本
功
能
操
作

显示屏操作界面Display operator interface



功能说明 Function description

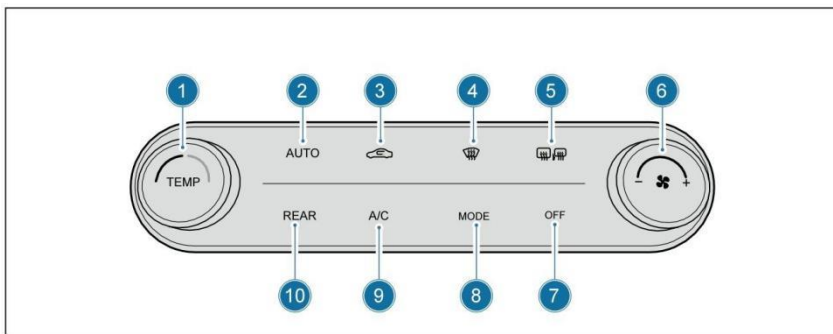
- 1 温度调节旋钮：旋转此旋钮可调节车内温度。
Temperature adjustment knob: turn this knob to adjust the temperature inside the car.
- 2 前除霜按键：按下此键可开启或关闭前挡风玻璃除霜/除雾功能，开启后可清除前挡风玻璃上的雾气或凝霜。
Front defrost button: press this button to turn on or off the front windscreen defrost/defog function, when on it will clear the fog or condensation on the front windscreen.
- 3 后除霜按键：按下此键可开启或关闭后挡风玻璃/外后视镜除霜功能。开启后可清除后挡风玻璃和外后视镜上的雾、霜及薄冰。如果开启后没有关闭，此功能会在10~20 分钟后自动关闭。
Rear defrost button: press this button to switch the rear windscreen/outside mirror defrost function on or off. When switched on, it removes fog, frost and thin ice from the rear windscreen and exterior mirrors. This function will automatically switch off after 10-20 minutes if it is not switched off after being switched on.
- 4 吹风模式调节 (MODE) 按键：按下此键可选择吹风模式，显示屏上会显示所选定的模式。分别为：吹头、吹头/吹脚、吹脚、吹脚/除霜模式。
Blowing mode adjustment (MODE) button: press this button to select the blowing mode, the display will show the selected mode. They are: blowing head, blowing head/foot, blowing foot, blowing foot/defrost mode.
- 5 内循环按键：当路过烟尘较多的地区时，按下此键空气在车内循环，再次按下后恢复到外循环模式。
Internal circulation button: when passing through smoky areas, press this button to circulate the air inside the vehicle, press it again to return to external circulation mode.
- 6 外循环按键：按下此键空气循环来自车外。
External circulation button: press this button for air circulation from outside the vehicle.
- 7 风量调节旋钮：旋转此旋钮可调节出风口风量的大小，同时显示屏上会显示当前风量大小。
Air volume adjustment knob: turn this knob to adjust the air volume at the outlet, while the display will show the current air volume size.

- 8 A/C 按键：按下此键可开启或关闭空调整冷。
A/C button: press this button to turn the air conditioning cooling on or off.
- 9 空调系统 (ON/OFF) 按键：按下此键可开启或关闭空调系统。
Air conditioning system (ON/OFF) button: press this button to turn on/off the air conditioning system.
- 10 最大制冷 (A/C MAX) 按键：按下此键进入最大制冷模式，此时风量最大，温度最低。
A/C MAX button: press this button to enter the maximum cooling mode, when the airflow is maximum and the temperature is minimum.
- 11 空调档位调节：调节控制球可调节车内温度。
Air conditioning gear adjustment: adjust the control ball to adjust the interior temperature.

04

自动空调*Automatic air conditioning*

前空调触控面板Front air conditioning touch panel



显示屏操作界面

Display operator interface

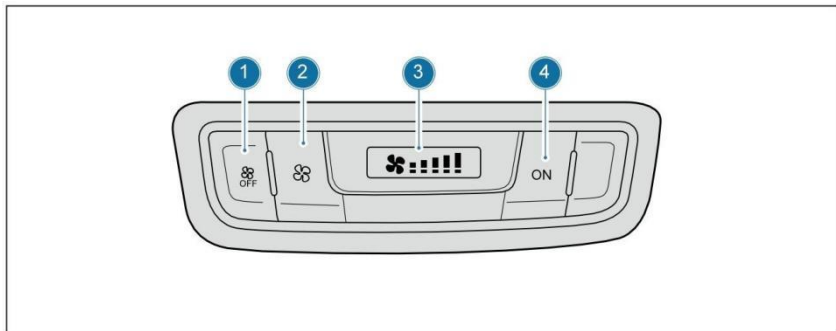


功能说明 Function description

1. 温度调节旋钮：旋转此旋钮可调节车内温度。
Temperature adjustment knob: turn this knob to adjust the temperature inside the car.

2. **AUTO 按键：**按下此键，空调系统由非自动状态进入全自动状态，空调系统会自动调节车内温度。
AUTO button: press this button to bring the air conditioning system from a non-automatic state to a fully automatic state, and the air conditioning system will automatically adjust the interior temperature.
3. **内外循环切换按键：**当路过烟尘较多的地区时，按下此键空气在车内循环，再次按下此键恢复到外循环模式。
Internal and external circulation switch button: when passing through smoggy areas, press this button to circulate the air inside the car, press it again to return to the external circulation mode.
4. **前除霜按键：**按下此键开启或关闭前挡风玻璃除霜/除雾功能，开启后可清除前挡风玻璃上的雾气或凝霜。
Front defrost button: press this button to turn on or off the front windscreen defrost/defog function, which clears the fog or condensation on the front windscreen when switched on.
5. **后除霜按键：**按下此键开启或关闭后挡风玻璃/外后视镜除霜功能。开启后可清除后挡风玻璃和外后视镜上的雾、霜及薄冰。如果开启后没有关闭，此功能会在10~20 分钟后自动关闭。
Rear defrost button: press this button to switch on or off the rear windscreen/external rear view mirror defrost function. When switched on, it will remove fog, frost and thin ice from the rear windscreen and exterior mirrors. If the function is not switched off after switching on, it will automatically switch off after 10 to 20 minutes.
6. **风量调节旋钮：**旋转此旋钮可调节出风口风量的大小。同时显示屏上会显示当前风量大小。
Air volume adjustment knob: Turn this knob to adjust the air volume at the air outlet. At the same time the display will show the current air volume.
7. **空调系统 (OFF) 按键：**按下此键可开启或关闭空调系统。
Air conditioning system (OFF) button: press this button to turn the air conditioning system on or off.
8. **吹风模式调节 (MODE) 按键：**按下此键可选择吹风模式，显示屏上会显示所选择的模式。分别为：吹头、吹头/吹脚、吹脚、吹脚/除霜模式。
Blowing mode adjustment (MODE) button: Press this button to select the blowing mode and the display will show the selected mode. The modes are: blowing head, blowing head/foot, blowing foot and blowing foot/defrost mode.
9. **A/C 按键：**按下此键可开启或关闭空调制冷。
A/C button: press this button to turn the air conditioning cooling on or off.
10. **后排空调 (REAR) 按键：**按下此键后再按下后排空调面板上的后排空调开启 (ON) 按键，可开启后排空调。再按一次该按键，后排空调关闭。
Rear air conditioning (REAR) button: press this button and then press the rear air conditioning ON button on the rear air conditioning panel to switch on the rear air conditioning. Press this button again to switch off the rear air conditioning.
11. **空调温度调节：**上下滑动可调节车内温度。
Air conditioning temperature adjustment: slide up and down to adjust the interior temperature.
12. **最大制冷开关 (A/C MAX) 按键：**按下此键进入最大制冷模式，风量最大，温度最低。
Maximum cooling switch (A/C MAX) button: press this button to enter the maximum cooling mode, with maximum airflow and minimum temperature.

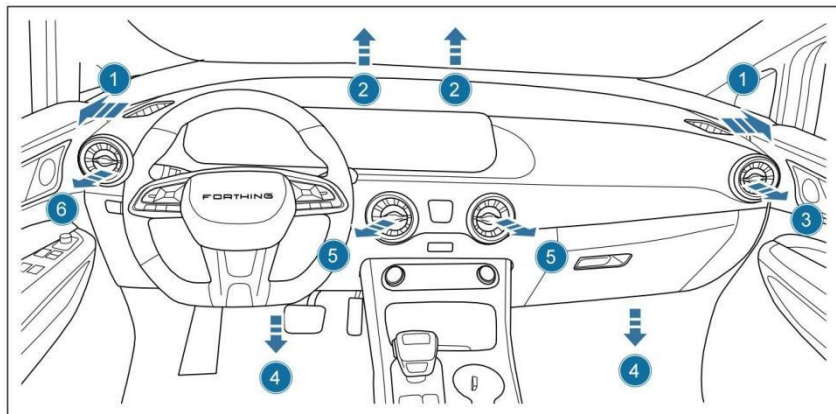
后排空调控制面板 *Rear air conditioning control panel*



1. 后排风量减小按键/OFF 按键：按下此键可调节后排空调风量的大小，每按下一次，风量减小一档，共有五档，当风量降到零时，后排空调关闭。
Rear air volume reduction button/OFF button: press this button to adjust the rear air conditioning air volume, each time you press it, the air volume is reduced by one gear, there are five gears, when the air volume drops to zero, the rear air conditioning is switched off.
2. 后排风量增加按键：按下此键可调节后排空调风量的大小，每按下一次，风量增加一档，直至升到五档。
Rear air volume increase button: press this button to adjust the rear air volume, each time you press it, the air volume increases by one gear until it rises to five.
3. 后排空调显示屏：显示当前后排空调出风量的大小
Rear air conditioning display: shows the current level of airflow from the rear air conditioning
4. 后排空调开启 (ON) 按键：按下前空调触控面板上的后排空调 (REAR) 按键后，再按下此键，后排空调即可开启。
Rear air conditioning on (ON) button: Press the rear air conditioning (REAR) button on the front air conditioning touch panel and then press this button to turn on the rear air conditioning.

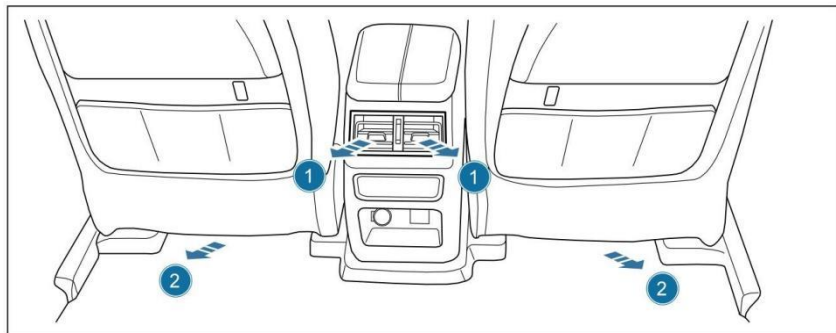
出风口位置 Air outlet position

前排出风口 Front air vents



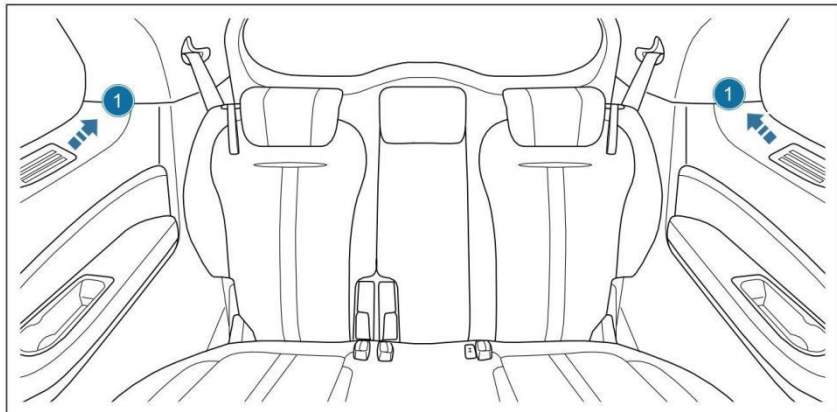
- | | | | |
|---|--|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 | 侧风窗除雾出风口
Sidewindscreen defogging vents | 4 | 前排脚部出风口
Front foot outlets |
| 2 | 前挡风玻璃除雾出风口
Front windscreen defogging vents | 5 | 中央出风口
Central air outlet |
| 3 | 右侧出风口
Right-hand air outlet | 6 | 左侧出风口
Left side air outlet |

中间排出风口 Middle exhaust air outlet



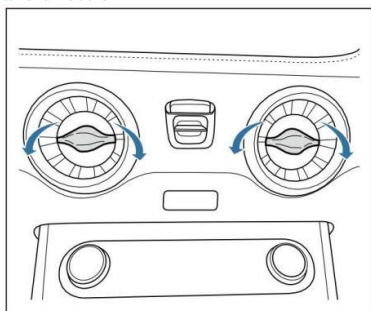
- | | | | |
|---|--|---|---|
| 1 | 中间排头出风口
Middle row head air outlets | 2 | 中间排脚部出风口
Middle row foot air outlets |
|---|--|---|---|

后排出风口 Rear air outlet



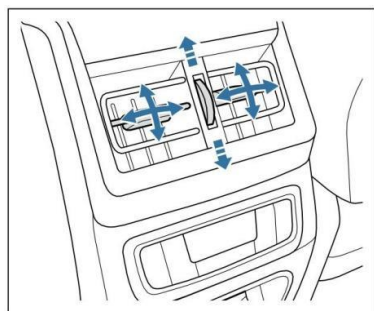
- 1 后排头部出风口
Rear head air outlet

气流和方向的调节 Regulation of air flow and direction



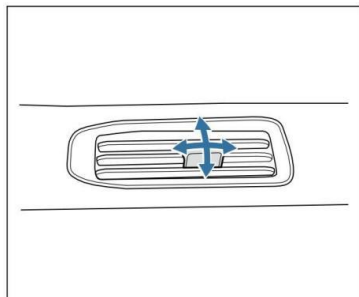
顺时针旋转出风口开关旋钮可以关闭出风口，逆时针旋转打开出风口。上下、左右拨动出风口中部格栅可以改变风向。

Turning the air outlet switch knob clockwise closes the air outlet and turning it counterclockwise opens the air outlet.



上下滚动滚轮可以打开和关闭中间排出风口，上下、左右拨动出风口中部格栅可以改变风向。

Rolling the wheel up and down opens and closes the middle air outlet, and toggling the middle grille of the outlet up and down, left and right changes the air direction.



上下、左右拨动出风口中部格栅可以改变后排出风口风向。

The direction of the rear air outlet can be changed by toggling the central grille of the air outlet up and down, left and right.

空气净化系统*

Air purificationsystem*



空气净化系统能快速消减空气中的有害化学气体及粉尘、细菌和 TVOC，减少异味，改善车内空气质量。同时，空气净化系统能检测空气质量，并通过显示屏进行空气质量显示，从而达到最佳的空气净化效果。

The air purification system quickly reduces harmful chemical gases and dust, bacteria and TVOC in the air, reduces odours and improves the air quality in the car. At the same time, the air purification system detects the air quality and displays it through the display for optimal air purification.

敬告用户 NOTICE TO USERS104

主页 HOME PAGE105

第一页 Page one 105

第二页 Page two 105

下拉栏快捷菜单 DROP DOWN BAR
QUICK MENU.....107

空调设置 AIR CONDITIONING
SETTINGS108

电动空调 Electric air conditioning 108

自动空调 Automatic air conditioning 108

座椅设置* SEAT SETTINGS*109

支持座椅加热与通风的车型 Models with
heated and ventilated seats 109

支持座椅加热、通风与按摩的车型

Models with heated, ventilated and
massaging seats..... 110

蓝牙电话 BLUETOOTH
PHONES 111

多媒体 MULTIMEDIA 111

蓝牙音乐 BLUETOOTH MUSIC 111

收音机 RADIOS..... 113

设置 SETTINGS 120

影音娱乐系统

Video Entertainment System

敬告用户 Notice to users

- 1 使用影音娱乐系统（以下简称“系统”）时，请仔细阅读相关操作说明，如果未遵循操作说明而造成系统损坏，将不能享受保修服务。When using the Video Entertainment System (hereinafter referred to as "the system"), please read the relevant operating instructions carefully. If the system is damaged due to failure to follow the operating instructions, it will not be eligible for warranty service.
- 2 车辆配置不同、系统版本更新会导致部分操作说明也略有不同，请您以实车为准。Different vehicle configurations and system updates may result in slightly different operating instructions, so please refer to the actual vehicle.
- 3 驾驶员在使用本系统时必须遵守相关法规，需将车辆停靠在安全的地方再进行操作，比如：输入或变更目的地等，此外根据法规，在达到一定车速后，为了保障您的行车安全，系统将不显示某些功能。When using the system, the driver must comply with the relevant regulations and must stop the vehicle in a safe place before operating it, e.g. to enter or change the destination. In addition, according to the regulations, the system will not display certain functions after a certain speed has been reached in order to protect your driving safety.
- 4 如果操作过于频繁，系统可能需要一段时间才能反应过来，需耐心等待，请勿反复操作。If the operation is too frequent, it may take some time for the system to respond, so please be patient and do not repeat the operation.
- 5 如果系统异常，请勿自行维修，需及时联系东风风行特约服务站进行检修。If the system is abnormal, please do not repair it by yourself, you need to contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station for service in time.
- 6 车辆未启动时，为避免耗尽蓄电池的电量，请勿长时间使用系统。To avoid draining the battery when the vehicle is not started, do not use the system for long periods of time.
- 7 请勿使用尖利物体接触、摩擦或敲击显示屏，请勿将液体泼溅到显示屏上，这可能会导致显示屏损坏。Do not touch, rub or knock the display screen with sharp objects, and do not splash liquid on the display screen, which may cause damage to the display screen.
- 8 请勿在前挡风玻璃表面贴金属膜，这可能会造成网络和导航中的某些功能失效。Do not apply metallic film to the surface of the front windscreen as this may cause certain functions in the network and navigation to be disabled.
- 9 在偏远地区、山区、隧道或地下停车场等网络信号弱的区域，可能会影响导航及网络功能的使用，离开这些区域后，网络信号会自动恢复。In remote areas, mountainous areas, tunnels or underground car parks where the network signal is weak, the navigation and network functions may be affected, and the network signal will be automatically restored when you leave these areas.

主页

Home page

可在第一页任意空白处向左滑动进入第二页，也可以在第二页向右滑动返回第一页。

You can swipe left on any blank space on the first page to go to the second page, or swipe right on the second page to return to the first page.

第一页

Page one

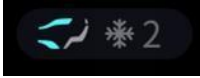










第二页

Page two

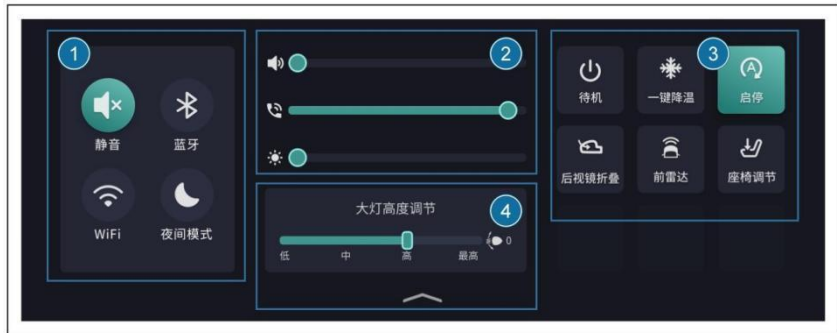
- 1 主页按钮：任何界面点击此键可返回主页。Home button: Click this button on any screen to return to the home page.
- 2 语音助理*：详见“语音助理”一节。Voice Assistant*：See the “Voice Assistant” section for details.
- 3 媒体信息区：显示当前所播放的媒体信息，点击可快速进入正在播放媒体的应用。Media information area: displays information about the currently playing media, click on it to quickly access the application of the media being played.

4 状态区: Status zone:

图标 Icons	说明 Description
	显示空调状态, 包括吹风模式、冷暖档位, 点击可展开空调详情页面 (电动空调车型) Display the status of the air conditioner, including the blowing mode, the cool and warm settings. Click to expand the air conditioning details page (electric air conditioning models)
	显示空调状态, 包括吹风模式、温度, 点击可展开空调详情页面 (自动空调车型) Display the status of the air conditioning, including the blowing mode, temperature Click to expand the air conditioning details page (automatic models)
	显示 WiFi 状态 Display WiFi status
	显示网络状态及网络环境* Display network status and network environment*
	显示 USB 连接状态 Display USB connection status
	显示蓝牙连接状态 Show Bluetooth connection status
	显示热点打开状态 Show hotspot open status
	显示静音状态 Show mute status
	行车记录仪状态*, 包括: 录像中、设备异常、存储卡异常、存储卡满 Car recorder status*, including: recording in progress, device abnormal, memory card abnormal, memory card full

下拉栏快捷菜单 Drop down bar shortcut menu

在显示屏顶端进行下划操作可唤出下拉栏快捷菜单。Swipe down at the top of the display screen to bring up the drop-down bar shortcut menu.



1. 左侧快捷开关控制区： Quick switch control area on the left

静音：点击开启/关闭静音模式。Mute: Click to turn on/off the mute mode.

蓝牙：点击开启/关闭蓝牙功能，长按进入蓝牙设置界面。

Bluetooth: Click to turn on/off the Bluetooth function and long press to enter the its settings interface.

WiFi：点击开启/关闭 WiFi 功能，长按进入 WiFi 设置界面。

WiFi: Click to turn on/off the WiFi function and long press to enter the WiFi settings interface.

白天模式/夜间模式：点击可切换白天/夜间模式。

Day mode/night mode: click to switch between day/night mode.

2. 音量/亮度快速调节： Quick volume/brightness adjustment.

多媒体音量调节：左右划动控制球可调节多媒体音量。Multimedia volume adjustment: swipe the control ball left and right to adjust the multimedia volume.

蓝牙电话音量调节：左右划动控制球可调节蓝牙电话音量。

Bluetooth phone volume adjustment: swipe the control ball left or right to adjust the Bluetooth phone volume.

显示屏亮度调节：左右划动控制球可调节显示屏亮度。Display brightness adjustment: swipe the control ball left or right to adjust the display brightness.

3. 右侧快捷开关控制区： Right-hand quick switch control area.

待机：点击进入显示屏待机界面。Standby: Click to enter the display standby screen.

一键降温：点击开启/关闭一键降温功能。One-touch cooling: click to turn on/off the one-key cooling function.

启停：点击开启/关闭启停功能。Start/Stop: Click to turn on/off the start/stop function.

后视镜折叠：点击折叠/展开后视镜。Mirror folding: click to fold/expand the rear-view mirror.


前雷达：点击开启/关闭前雷达。Front radar: click to turn on/off the front radar.


座椅调节：点击进入座椅调节界面。Seat adjustment: click to access the seat adjustment screen.

4. 大灯高度调节：左右划动控制球可调节车辆大灯高度。Headlight height adjustment: the

vehicle headlight height can be adjusted by swiping the control ball left or right.

空调设置 Air conditioning settings

点击空调面板任意界面或点击空调状态栏可进入空调设置。

Click on anywhere of the air conditioning panel or click on the air conditioning status bar to access the air conditioning settings.

电动空调 Electric air conditioning



自动空调 Automatic air conditioning



- 1 空调档位调节（电动空调）。
Air conditioning gear adjustment (electric airconditioning)
- 2 可开闭负离子、节能、后排空调、加热功能，具体以您的车型配置为准。
Negativeion, energy saving, rear air conditioning and heating functions can be switched on andoff, depending on the equipment of your model.
- 3 切换空调与座椅（通风/加热/按摩）设置*。
Switching between air conditioning andseat (ventilation/heating/massage) settings*.
- 4 显示当前空气质量状态*。
Display the current air quality status*.
- 5 吹风模式显示区。

Blowing mode display area *.

- 6 风向显示区，可点击不同模式切换风向。

Wind direction display area, you can click on different modes to switch the wind direction.

风量控制区，可调节风量大小。

Airflow control zone with adjustable airflow

- 7 空调状态，从左至右依次为A/C 按键、最大制冷（A/C MAX）按键、空调系统按键、内外循环按键、前除霜按键、后除霜按键。

Air conditioning status, from left to right: A/C button, maximum cooling (A/C MAX) button, air conditioning system button, internal and external circulation button, front defrost button, rear defrost button.

- 8 空调温度调节（自动空调）

Air conditioning temperature adjustment (automatic airconditioning)

- 9 可开闭负离子、后排空调，具体以您的车型配置为准。

Negative ions and rear airconditioning can be switched on and off, depending on the configuration of your model.

- 10 空调状态切换，从左至右依次为 AUTO 按键、A/C 按键、最大制冷（A/C MAX）按键、空调系统按键、内外循环按键、前除霜按键、后除霜按键。

Air conditioning status switch, from left to right: AUTO button, A/C button, maximum cooling (A/C MAX) button, air conditioning system button, internal and external circulation button, front defrost button, rear defrost button.

座椅设置*

Seat settings*

通过空调设置页面可进入座椅设置页面。The air conditioning settings page provides access to the seat settings page.

支持座椅加热与通风的车型

Models with heated and ventilated seats



支持座椅加热、通风与按摩的车型 Models with heated, ventilated and massaging seats



- 1 前排/中排座椅切换调节。
Switching adjustment of the front/mid-row seats.
- 2 加热功能开闭及档位调节。
Heating function on/off and gear adjustment.
- 3 通风功能开闭及档位调节。
Ventilation function opening and closing and gear adjustment.
- 4 通风加热与座椅按摩切换。
Switch between ventilation and heating with seat massage.
- 5 按摩开闭及强度调节（本车仅支持主驾座椅按摩功能）。
Massage on/off and intensity adjustment (this vehicle only supports the main driver's seat massage function)
- 6 按摩模式选择（本车仅支持主驾座椅按摩功能）。
Massage mode selection (this vehicle only supports the main driver's seat massage function)

蓝牙电话 Bluetooth phones

在系统主界面点击【电话】图标可进入蓝牙电话界面。

Click the [Phone] icon on the main system screen to access the Bluetooth phone interface.

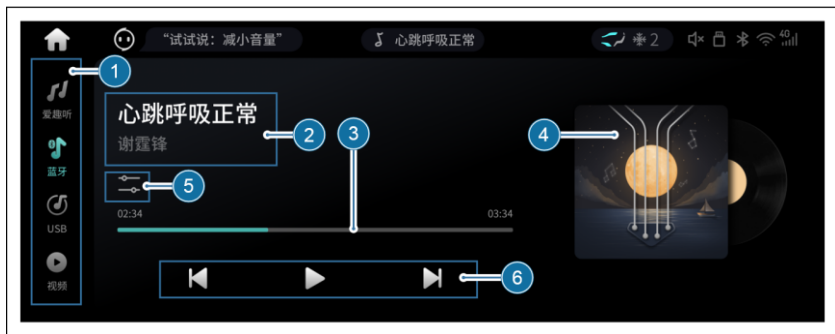


在蓝牙功能未开启时界面显示蓝牙设置，点击此处可开启蓝牙功能，同时提示连接手机蓝牙，连接成功后可进行其他操作。When the Bluetooth function is not turned on, the interface shows Bluetooth settings, click here to turn on the Bluetooth function, and at the same time prompted to connect to the mobile phone Bluetooth, you can perform other operations after successful connection.

多媒体 Multimedia

在系统主界面点击【多媒体】图标可进入多媒体界面。Click on the [Multimedia] icon on the main system screen to access the multimedia interface.

蓝牙音乐 Bluetooth music





- 1 点击可切换使用爱趣听*、蓝牙音乐、USB 音乐、USB 视频功能。Click to switch between using the Love to Listen*, Bluetooth Music, USB Music and USB Video functions.
- 2 蓝牙音乐信息显示区域：显示歌曲名、歌手名。Bluetooth music information display area: displays the song name and artist name.
- 3 进度条控制：可划动调节播放进度条。Progress bar control: the progress bar can be adjusted by swiping.
- 4 蓝牙音乐信息显示区域：显示歌曲专辑图片/默认图片。Bluetooth music information display area: display song album picture / default picture.
- 5 音效调节：点击可进入音效调节界面。Sound adjustment: Click to enter the sound adjustment interface.
- 6 蓝牙音乐播放控件及进度条：播放/暂停、上一曲/下一曲切换。Bluetooth music playback controls and progress bar: play/pause, previous/next song toggle.
- 7 返回：点击从音效调节界面返回蓝牙音乐界面。Back: Click to return to the Bluetooth music interface from the sound adjustment interface.
- 8 均衡器调节：上下划动调节低音、中音、高音效果。Equaliser adjustment: move up and down to adjust bass, midrange and treble effects.
- 9 声场调节：划动光标可对声场进行调节，将光标拖至中心处即可进行声场复位。Sound field adjustment: Swipe the cursor to adjust the sound field, drag the cursor to the centre to reset the sound field.
- 10 均衡器模式：点击即可切换均衡器模式。Equaliser mode: click to switch the equaliser mode.
- 11 蓝牙设置：未连接蓝牙时，想进入蓝牙音乐可点击蓝牙设置进行蓝牙连接操作。Bluetooth settings: When you are not connected to Bluetooth, you can click on Bluetooth settings for Bluetooth connection when you want to enter Bluetooth music.

收音机Radio

在系统主界面点击【收音机】图标可进入收音机界面。

Click the [Radio] icon on the main system screen to access the radio interface.



1 播放控件：收藏电台、搜索电台。

Playback controls: collect stations, search for stations.

2 频道切换控件：切换列表上一个电台、收音机频道显示/播放/暂停、切换列表下一个电台。

Channel switching controls: switch the previous station in the list, radio channel display/play/pause, switch the next station in the list.

3 FM/AM 切换：点击切换 FM/AM 频段。

FM/AM switching: Click to switch FM/AM bands.

4 收音机频段条：左右划动可切换频段。

Radio band bar: swipe left or right to switch bands.

5 列表切换：点击切换预设电台/收藏电台列表。

List Switching: Click to switch the list of preset stations/favorite stations.

6 电台列表：显示预设电台/收藏电台列表。

Radio List: Display a list of preset stations/favorite stations.

设置 Settings

在系统主界面点击【设置】图标可进入设置界面。

Click the [Settings] on the main system screen to access the settings screen.

通用设置 General settings



- 1 点击可切换查看并调节通用设置、连接设置、车辆设置、系统设置。
Click to toggle through and adjust General Settings, Connection Settings, Vehicle Settings and System Settings.
- 2 通用设置包括：显示、声音、音效调节。
General settings include: display, sound and sound adjustment.

模块 Modules	包含功能 Included features
显示 Display	屏幕亮度、日夜模式、行车时视频警告、自动对时*、时间制式、语言设置* Screen brightness, day/night mode, video warning while driving, automatic time alignment*, time system, language setting*
声音 Sound	电话音量、导航音量、按键提示音 Phone volume, navigation volume, key beeps
音效调节 Sound effects adjustment	均衡器、声场 Equaliser, soundstage

储物装置 STORAGE UNIT.....116

车门储物槽 DOOR STORAGE SLOTS116

仪表台储物盒 DASHBOARD STORAGE BOX..116

中央扶手箱 CENTRAL ARMREST BOX.....116

副仪表台储物 SUB-DASHBOARD STORAGE...117

手套箱 GLOVE BOX.....117

副仪表台后部储物槽 REAR STORAGE SLOT IN SUB-DASHBOARD 117

中间排座椅内侧储物槽 INTERIOR MIDDLE ROW SEAT STORAGE
SLOT.....118

后排侧围储物槽 REAR SIDE STORAGE SLOTS 118

杯架 CUP HOLDER..... 118

座椅背部刊物袋 SEAT BACK PUBLICATION BAG 119

眼镜盒 EYEGLASS CASE 119

票夹 TICKET HOLDER 119

其它装置 OTHER DEVICES.....120

遮阳板 SUN VISORS..... 120

梳妆镜 DRESSING MIRROR..... 120

手机支架 MOBILE PHONE STAND 120

顶部拉手 TOP HANDLE..... 120

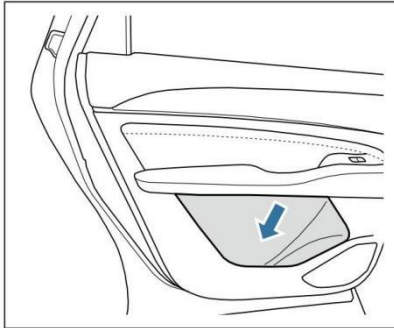
挂钩 HOOKS..... 121

便利性装置

Convenience devices

储物装置 Storage units

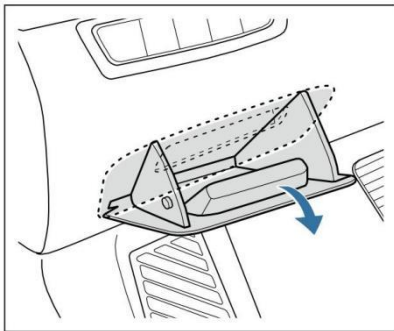
车门储物槽 Door storage slots



前、后车门内饰板上设有车门储物槽，可放置水杯等物品。

Door storage slots in the interior trim panels of the front and rear doors for items such as water glasses.

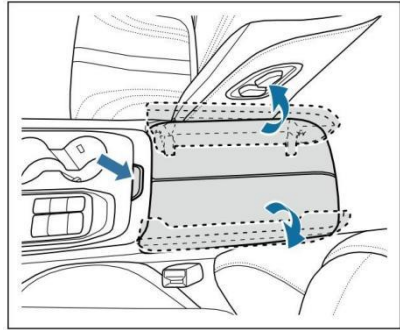
仪表台储物盒 Dashboard storage box



仪表台设有储物盒，拉动凸舌可以打开，推回可关闭。

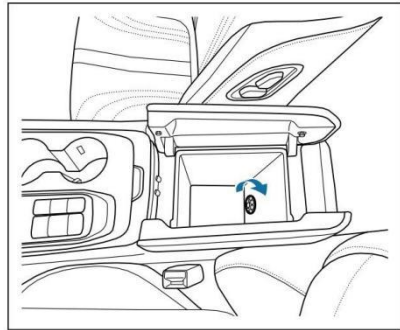
The dashboard has a storage box that can be opened by pulling the tab and closed by pushing it back.

中央扶手箱 Central armrest box



按压中央扶手箱前部锁扣，左右两侧扶手自动开启。

The left and right armrests open automatically when the front latch of the central armrest box is pressed.

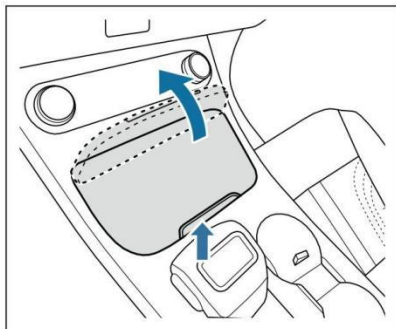


中央扶手箱内有通风口，转动开关即可打开或关闭通风口。

There is a vent in the central armrest box, and turn the switch. There are vents in the centre armrest box, which can be turned on or off by turning a switch.

副仪表台储物 Sub-dashboard storage unit

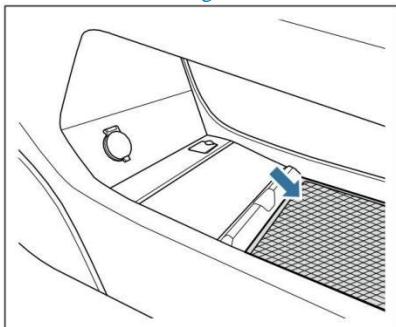
副仪表台上部储物格 Upper storage compartment on sub-dashboard



副仪表台上部设有储物格，可存放手机等物品。按压储物格开启按键，可打开储物格盖板，关闭时需要按压盖板直至听到“咔哒”声。

There is a storage compartment on the sub-dashboard for storing mobile phones and other items. Press the compartment open button to open the compartment flap, to close it you need to press the flap until you hear a "click".

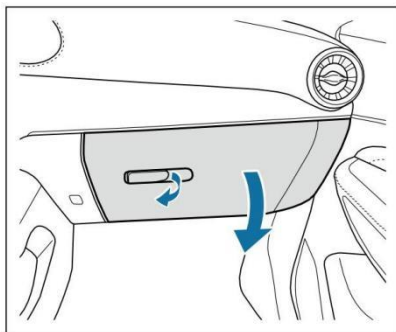
副仪表台下部储物槽 Sub-dashboard lower storage slot



副仪表台下部设有储物槽，可存放手机、钥匙等小物品。

The lower part of the sub-dashboard has a storage slot for small items such as mobile phones and keys.

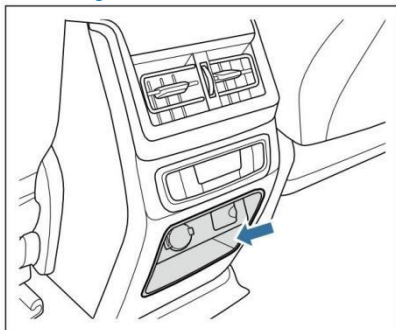
手套箱 Glove box



手套箱位于仪表台右侧，可存放随车文件和资料。向外拉动手套箱拉手可打开，向前推回可关闭。

The glove box is located on the right-hand side of the dashboard and can be used to store accompanying documents and information. The glove compartment can be opened by pulling the glove compartment handle outwards and closed by pushing it back forward.

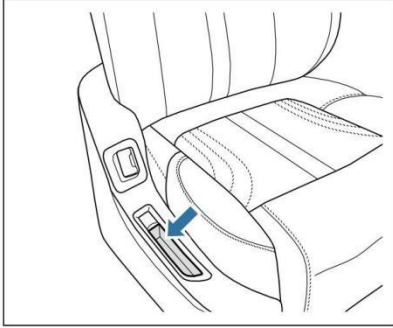
副仪表台后部储物槽
Rear storage slot in sub-dashboard



副仪表台后部下方设有储物槽，可存放手机等物品。

There is a storage slot under the rear of the sub-instrument panel, which can store items such as mobile phones.

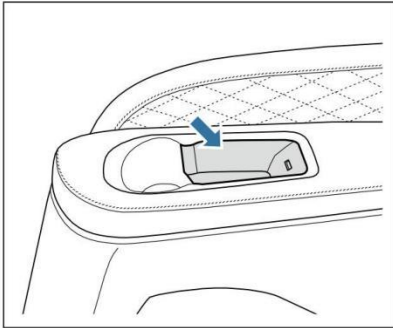
中间排座椅内侧储物槽 Inside seat storage slot



中间排座椅内侧设有储物槽，供手机充电时存放。

There are storage slots on the inside of the middle row of seats for storing mobile phones while they are being charged.

后排侧围储物槽 Rear side storage slots

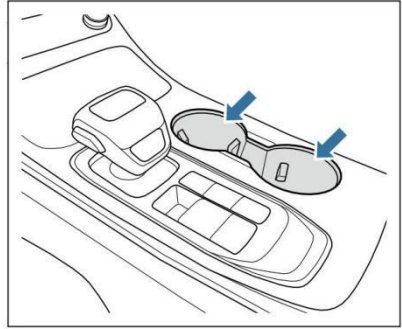


后排座椅两侧分别设有储物槽，可存放小型物品。

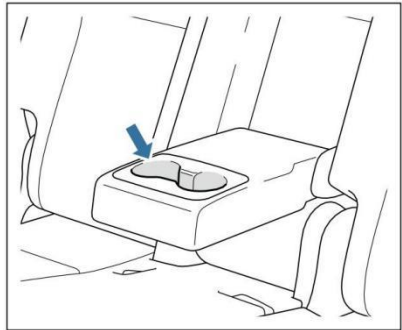
There are storage slots on each side of the rear seats for storing small items.

杯架 Cup holder

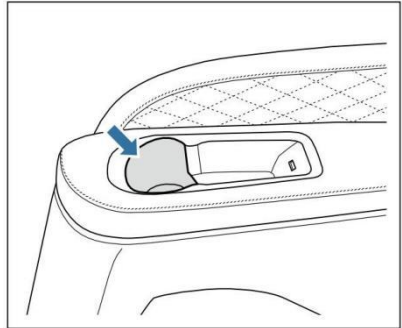
前杯架 Front cup holder



后杯架**Rear cup holder**



后排侧围杯架 *Rear side cup holders*

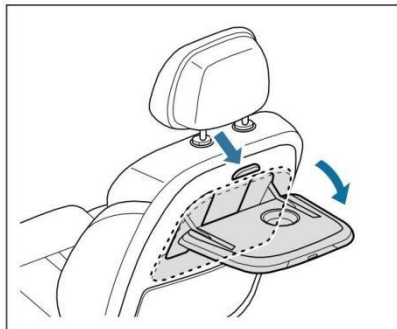


杯架可放置茶杯、饮料瓶等物品，方便旅行时使用。

Cup holder to hold teacups, drinks bottles and other items for easy travel.

小桌板及杯架

Small table plate and cup holder

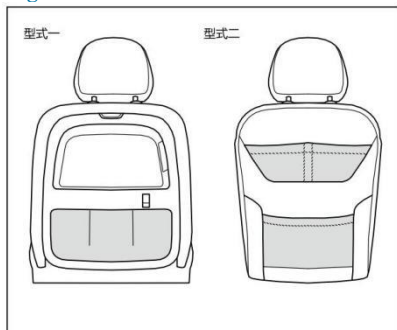


前排座椅后部设有小桌板及杯架，按压座椅背部释放按键可以将桌板放平，不用时推回即可。The rear of the front seats has a small tabletop and cupholders, which can be flattened by pressing the seat back release button and pushed back when not in use.

注意 Note

车辆在行驶过程中不要使用小桌板。不要将超过 5 千克的物品斜靠或放在小桌板上，以免物品因惯性翻倒导致乘客受伤。Do not use the small tabletop while the vehicle is in motion. Do not lean or place objects over 5 kg on the small tabletop as they may tip over due to inertia and cause injury to passengers.

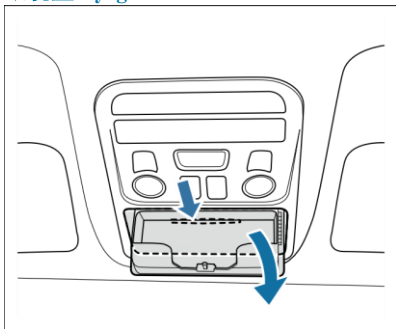
座椅背部刊物袋 Seat back publication bag



刊物袋位于前排及中间排座椅背部用于放置杂志，纸巾等小型物品。

Publication bags are located in the front and middle seat backs for small items such as magazines and tissues.

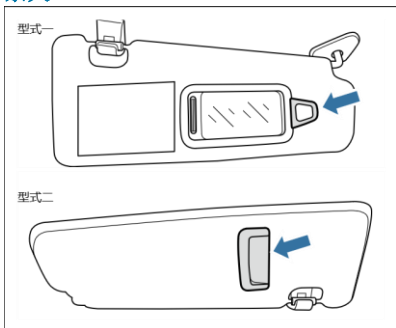
眼镜盒 Eyeglass case



眼镜盒用来存放眼镜，按压眼镜盒前端即可缓慢打开，推回即可关闭。

The glasses case can be used to store glasses by pressing the front of the case to open it slowly and pushing it back to close it.

票夹 Ticket Holder

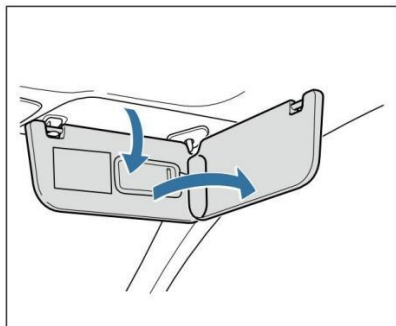


遮阳板上设有票夹，可存放发票，加油卡等物品。

The sun visor has a ticket holder for storing invoices and fuel cards.

其它装置 Other devices

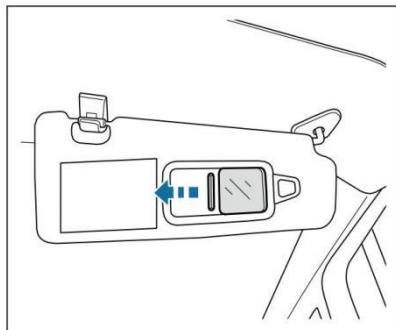
遮阳板 Sun visors



将遮阳板向下翻转可遮挡正面阳光。如需遮挡侧面阳光，先将左/右侧支撑杆从扣夹上脱开，然后将遮阳板转向侧面。

Flip the sun visor down to block the front sun. To block the side sunlight, disengage the left/right support bar from the clips and turn the sun visor to the side.

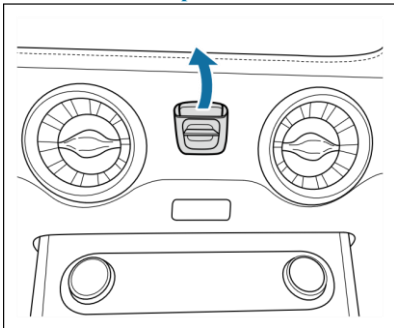
梳妆镜 Dressing Mirror



遮阳板内侧配备有梳妆镜。下翻遮阳板，将梳妆镜盖板往左/右推开即可使用。

The sun visor is equipped with a dressing mirror on the inside. The sun visor can be used by flipping it down and pushing the dressing mirror flap to the left/right.

手机支架 Mobile phone stand



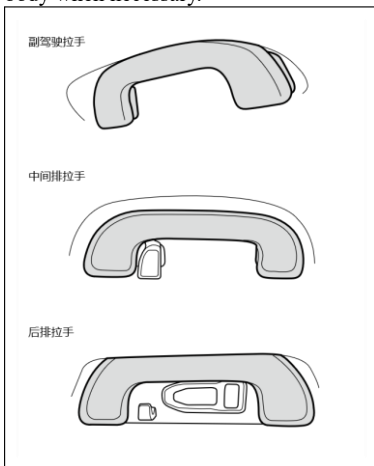
仪表台中部设有手机支架接口，方便在行车过程中使用。

There is a mobile phone holder port in the middle of the dashboard for easy access during driving.

顶部拉手 Top Handle

顶部拉手可供需要时支撑身体。

Top handle is used for supporting the body when necessary.

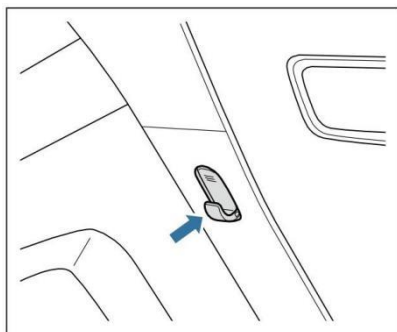


请勿在顶部拉手上悬挂重物或对顶部拉手施加过大的力以防止其损坏。

Do not hang heavy objects on the top handle or apply excessive force to the top handle to prevent it from being damaged.

挂钩 Hooks

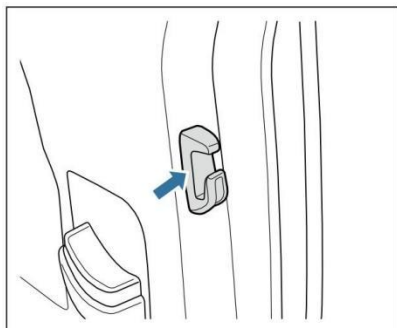
仪表台挂钩 Dashboard hook



手套箱左侧设计有仪表台挂钩, 按压凹槽展开, 按压凸筋收回。

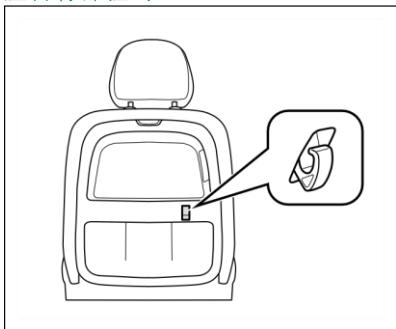
The left side of the glove box is designed with a dashboard hook that deploys by pressing the notch and retracts by pressing the tab.

后门挂钩 Rear door hook



后门侧围上方设有挂钩供乘客使用。
Hooks are provided above the rear door side panel for passenger use.

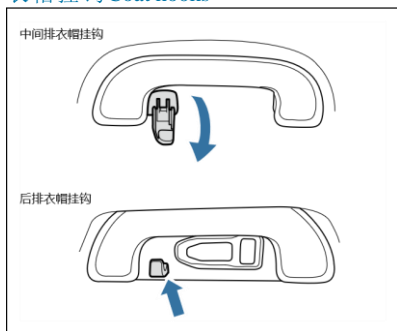
座椅背部挂钩 Seat back hook



前排座椅背部设有挂钩供乘客使用。按压展开, 推回关闭。

Front seat backs have hooks for passengers to use. Press to unfold, push back to close.

衣帽挂钩 Coat hooks



部分顶部拉手配有衣帽挂钩。

Some of the top handles are fitted with coat hooks.

注意 Notice

请勿在衣帽挂钩上悬挂衣架或其他坚硬物体。侧面帘式安全气囊展开时, 这些物品可能会被弹出并导致乘客受到伤害。

Do not hang hangers or other hard objects from the coat hooks. When the side curtain airbags deploy, these objects may be ejected and cause injury to passengers.

注意 Notice

挂钩的最大承载重量为 3 公斤, 请勿悬挂超重物品。

The maximum load capacity of the hook is 3 kg, please do not hang overweight items.

启动车辆 START THE

VEHICLE.....126

启动开关模式 Activate switch mode.....126

无钥匙启动发动机 Keyless start engine..... 126

低电量启动发动机 Low battery start engine..... 126

如果未能启动发动机 If the engine fails to start..... 127

关闭发动机 Switching off the engine 127

自动变速器AUTOMATIC

TRANSMISSION.....127

档位介绍 Introduction to the gears 127

驾驶操作 Driving Operations 128

驾驶模式切换 Driving mode switching 130

驻车制动器PARKING BRAKE.....130

驻车制动器（EPB）开关 Park brake (EPB) switch..... 130

自动驻车功能（AUTO HOLD）

Automatic parking function (AUTO HOLD) 131

牵引力控制（TCS）系统 TRACTION

CONTROL SYSTEM (TCS).....132

加注燃油 FUEL FILLING.....132

燃油要求 Fuel requirements 132

打开和关闭加油口盖 Opening and closing the filler cap 132

加注燃油 Fuel filling.....132

驾驶建议 DRIVING TIPS.....133

车辆磨合期 Vehicle break-in period..... 133

夜间行车 Night driving 134

酒后驾车 Drunk driving 133

涉水行车 Wade driving..... 133

长途行车 Long distance driving. 135

雨天和湿滑路面行车 Driving in the rain and on slippery roads 134

坡道和山区路面行车Driving on hills and mountainous roads..... 135

冰雪路面行车 Driving on ice and snow roads..... 135

冬季驾驶 Winter driving 136

电动助力转向ELECTRIC POWER

STEERING.....136

制动辅助系统 BRAKE ASSIST

SYSTEM.....137

制动辅助(BA)系统 Brake Assist (BA)system..... 137

制动优先 Braking priority..... 137

防抱死制动（ABS）系统 Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 137

制动力分配(EBD)Brake force distribution (EBD)..... 138

电子稳定控制（ESP）系统 Electronic Stability Control (ESP) system 138

自适应巡航 (ACC) 系统*

ADAPTIVE CRUISE (ACC) SYSTEM.....153

真空助力器制动 Vacuum booster

brake..... 139

制动系统合理使用建议 Suggestions
for the proper use of the braking
system 139上坡起步辅助 (HHC) 系统 Hill -
start assist (HHC) system 139陡坡缓降 (HDC) 系统 Steep Hill
Descent (HDC) system 140

制动助力 Brake booster 141

泊车辅助系统 PARKING ASSISTANCE
SYSTEM.....141泊车雷达系统 Parking radar
system..... 141

前雷达*Front radar* 141

倒车影像 Reverse image 143

360°全景影像*360° panoramic
image*..... 144自动泊车系统*Automatic parking
system* 147

定速巡航系统 Cruise control system..152

按键说明 Button description 152

定速巡航开启和暂停 Cruise control
on and off 153定速巡航功能恢复 Cruise control
function is restored..... 153改变设定的车速 Changing the set speed
..... 153

按键说明 Button description 156

自适应巡航开启和关闭 Adaptive
cruise control on and off..... 157

跟车显示 Car follow display 157

需驾驶员接管车辆的情况
Circumstances that require the driver to
take over the vehicle..... 159系统功能可能受限的情况
Circumstances where system
functionality may be limited..... 160车道保持辅助系统 (LKA) *LANE KEEPING
ASSIST (LKA) *.....162

按键说明 Button description 163

车道保持辅助开启和关闭 Lane
Keeping Assist on and off..... 163系统工作状态显示 System working
status display..... 163需驾驶员接管车辆的情况
Circumstances that require the driver to
take over the vehicle..... 164系统功能可能受限的情况
Circumstances where system
functionality may be limited..... 165

交通拥堵辅助 (TJA) 系统*

TRAFFIC JAM ASSIST (TJA)
SYSTEM*.....167

按键说明 Button Description 170

交通拥堵辅助开启和关闭 Traffic
jam assist on and off..... 171

跟车显示 Car-following	171
功能说明 Function description ...	172
车道偏离预警 (LDW) 系统* Lane Departure Warning (LDW) System*	172
车道偏离预警开启和关闭 Opening and closing of LDW	173
预警灵敏度 Sensitivity of alert	174
系统工作状态显示 Display of working state	174
LDW 系统可能受限的情况 Situations where the LDW System may be constrained	175
变道辅助 (LCA) 系统* LCA SYSTEM*	176
变道辅助开启和关闭 Start and closing of LCA	176
变道辅助范围 Range of LCA	177
变道辅助预警 Lane Change Assist Alert	177
系统可能不工作的情况 Conditions that the system does not work	178
开门预警 (DOW) 系统* Door Open Warning (DOW) System*	178
开门预警开启和关闭 Start and closing of DOW	179
开门预警范围 Range of DOW	179
功能预警 Early warning of functions	180
系统可能不工作的情况 Conditions that the system does not work	180

后方横穿预警 (RCTA) 系统* Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System*	181
后方横穿预警开启和关闭 Start and closing of RCTA	181
后方横穿预警范围 Range of RCTA	181
RCTA 系统可能不工作的情况 Conditions that RCTA does not work	182
自动紧急制动 (AEB) 系统* Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System*	182

自动紧急制动开启与关闭 Start and closing of AEB	183
系统报警方式说明 Description of the alarm mode	183
系统功能可能受限的情况 Conditions that functions of AEB may be constrained	183
交通环境对系统安全性的制约 Restrictions of traffic environment on system safety	185
车辆操作稳定性与系统状态说明 Description of operational stability and system stat	185
系统自动解除提示说明 Prompt that the system is off	186
系统抑制条件说明 Description of conditions that restrict the system	186
系统打断条件说明 Description of conditions that the system is interrupted	186

前碰撞预警 (FCW) 系统* Forward Collision Warning (FCW) System*.....186

- 系统控制能力局限性说明
Description of limitations of control 187
- 前碰撞预警开启与关闭 Start and closing of FCW 187
- 系统功能可能受限的情况
Conditions that the functions are restricted..... 188
- 交通环境对系统安全性的制约
Restrictions of traffic environment of safety 189
- 系统自动解除提示说明 Prompt that the system is closed.....190
- 系统抑制条件说明 Description of conditions that the system is restricted 190

交通标志识别 (TSR) 系统* Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System*.....190

- 交通标志识别开启与关闭 Start and closing of TSR..... 191
- TSR 系统功能可能受限的情况
Conditions that the functions of TSR are restricted..... 192
- 系统清除当前限速条件说明
Description of conditions that the system removes the speed limit 192
- 传感器清洁操作说明 Description of cleaning the sensor 193

远光灯自动控制 (IHC) 系统* IHC SYSTEM*.....193

- 远光灯自动控制开启与关闭 Start and closing of IHC.....194
- IHC 系统功能可能受限的情况
Conditions that functions of IHC System are restricted.....194
- 传感器清洁操作说明 Operation of cleaning sensor..... 190

后排乘客检测 (ROD) 系统* Rear-seat Occupant Detection (ROD) System*.....196

- 后排乘客检测开启与关闭 Start and closing of ROD.....196
- 后排乘客检测范围 Detection range

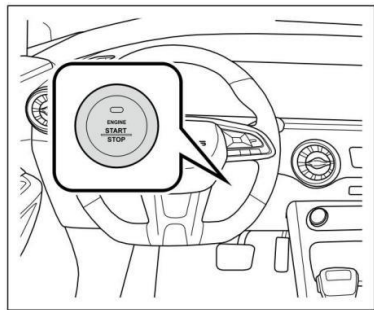
- of ROD.....196
- 功能预警提示信息 F Prompt of warning.....197

舒适驾驶

Comfortable driving

启动车辆 Start the vehicle

启动开关模式 Activate switchmode



携带与车辆匹配的智能钥匙进入车内。

Enter the vehicle with the smart key that matches the vehicle.

OFF 档: 该档位是车辆关闭状态下的档位。

OFF: This is the gear in which the vehicle is switched off.

ACC 档: 当车辆处于“OFF”档时，不踩下刹车踏板，按一下启动开关，车辆切换到“ACC”档，此时影音娱乐系统等部分相关功能可以使用。

ACC: When the vehicle is in "OFF", without pressing the brake pedal, press the start switch and the vehicle switches to "ACC", at this time some functions such as the audio-visual entertainment system can be used.

ON 档: 当车辆处于“ACC”档时，不踩下刹车踏板，按一下启动开关，车辆切换到“ON”档，此时座椅加热等大多数电气设备可以使用。再次按下启动开关，车辆回到“OFF”档位置。

ON: When the vehicle is in "ACC", press the start switch without depressing the brake pedal and the vehicle switches to "ON", when most of the electrical equipment, such as heated seats, can be used. Press the start switch again to return the vehicle to the "OFF" position.

START 档: 车辆启动后的档位。当启动开关处于“OFF/ON/ACC”档位时，踩下刹车踏板，启动开关指示灯变绿，确认换挡杆处于P/N档后，按下启动开关可直接启动车辆。

START gear: the gear after the vehicle has been started. When the start switch is in "OFF/ON/ACC", depress the brake pedal, the start switch indicator will turn green, confirm that the gearstick lever is in P/N and press the start switch to start the vehicle directly.

无钥匙启动发动机

Keyless start engine

- 1 携带与车辆匹配的智能钥匙进入车辆，且换挡处于P/N档时，踩下刹车踏板。

Enter the vehicle with the Smart Key that matches the vehicle and with the gearstick lever in P/N, and depress the brake pedal.

- 2 当启动开关指示灯变绿后，按下启动开关，待发动机启动后及时松开启动开关。

When the starter switch indicator light turns green, press the starter switch and release it promptly after the engine has started.

低电量启动发动机

Low battery start engine

当智能钥匙电量过低或无电量时，可以使用智能钥匙内部的机械钥匙打开车门，然后将智能钥匙放入前杯架第一个杯座内（车前方向），踩下刹车踏板的同时按下启动开关。

When the Smart Key is low or out of battery, you can use the mechanical key inside the Smart Key to open the door, then put the Smart Key into the first cup holder in the front cupholder (towards the front of the car) and press the start switch while depressing the brake pedal.

如果未能启动发动机 If the engine fails to start

- 1 检查蓄电池接线柱是否拧紧和清洁。

Check that the battery terminals are tight and clean or not.

- 2 如果蓄电池的接线柱没有问题，则打开室内灯。在启动发动机时，如果室内灯不亮、变暗或熄灭，则表明蓄电池电量已用完，可尝试跨接启动。如果室内灯正常，但又不能启动，请联系东风风行特约服务站。If the battery terminals are OK, turn on the interior light. When starting the engine, if the interior light is not ON, goes dark or goes out, the battery power has been used up and a jumpered start can be attempted. If the interior light is normal and it does not start, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.



注意

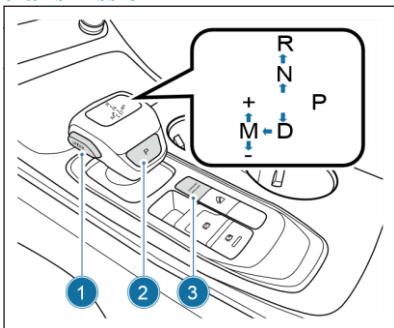
- 在海拔高于 2400 米的地带，由于空气稀薄，启动更加困难。
- At altitudes above 2,400 metres, start-up is even more difficult due to the thin air.
- 在天气寒冷或者车辆停放时间较长时，在驾驶之前，建议先将发动机预热几分钟再上路行驶。
- In cold weather or when the vehicle has been parked for a long time, it is advisable to warm up the engine for a few minutes before driving on the road.

关闭发动机 Switching off the engine

- 1 待车辆停止后，挂入 P 档。
When the vehicle has stopped, put it into P gear.
- 2 按下启动开关，关闭发动机。
Press the start switch and switch off the engine.
- 3 紧急关闭发动机：在车辆未停止时，长按启动开关约 3 秒或者在 2 秒内续按下启动开关 3 次，可以紧急关闭发动机。

Emergency engine switch-off: When the vehicle is not stopped, press and hold the start switch for approximately 3 seconds or press the start switch 3 times in succession within 2 seconds to turn off the engine in an emergency.

自动变速器 Automatic transmission



1. 档位解锁按键 Gear unlock button
2. P 档按键 P-position button
3. 驾驶模式按键 Drive mode button

组合仪表会显示车辆所处的档位。
The instrument pack displays the gear the vehicle is in.

档位介绍 Introduction to the gears

P 档（驻车档）P(Park)

驻车或将车辆置于准备驾驶状态时使用该档位，通过按压换挡手柄上 P 档按键可进入 P 档。挂入 P 档前务必完全停下车辆。

Use this gear when parked or when the vehicle is in a ready-to-drive position, which can be accessed by pressing the P button on the gearshift handle. Always bring the vehicle to a complete stop before shifting into P.

D 档（行车档）D (running gear)

只有在车辆启动状态下才能进入 D 档。向前行驶时使用此档位。

You can only enter D Gear when the vehicle is started. Use this gear when driving forward.

R档（倒档）R (reverse)

只有在车辆启动状态下才能进入R档。倒车时使用此档位。挂入R档前务完全停下车辆。

You can only enter R Gear when the vehicle is started. Use this gear when reversing. Always bring the vehicle to a complete stop before shifting into R.

N档（空档）N (Neutral)

当车辆处于该档位时，减速器不会提供辅助驻车。挂入N档前务必完全停下车辆。

When the vehicle is in this gear, the decelerator does not provide assisted parking. Always bring the vehicle to a complete stop before engaging N gear.

M档（手动模式）M (manual mode)

在手动模式下，驾驶员可根据路况及驾驶习惯自主选择合适的档位，提升驾驶乐趣。

In manual mode, the driver can select the right gear according to road conditions and driving habits, enhancing driving pleasure.

在山路或丘陵地带等路况驾驶时，建议使用该模式。

This mode is recommended when driving in mountainous or hilly terrain, etc.

驾驶操作 Driving Operations

换挡方法 Shift method

车辆起步前应一直踩下刹车踏板，否则在处于行驶档位的情况下车辆会自行移动。车辆启动后，可进行正常的换挡操作。

The brake pedal should be kept depressed until the vehicle starts, otherwise the vehicle will move on its own while in a driving gear. Once the vehicle has started, normal gear shifting can be carried out.

每次换挡操作后换挡杆会回到中间位置，档位按照 R-N-D 顺序从前向后排布。

The gearshift lever returns to the centre position after each shift operation and the gears are arranged from front to rear in the R-N-D sequence.

切换 P 档 Switching to P

待车辆完全停止后，按下换挡杆上的P档按键进入P档。

When the vehicle has come to a complete stop, press the P button on the gearshift lever to enter P.

切换 R 档 Switching to R

车辆启动后，按下档位解锁键的同时踩下刹车踏板，将换挡杆向上推至R档位置。

Once the vehicle has started, depress the brake pedal while pressing the gear unlock button and push the gearshift lever up to the R position.

切换 N 档 Switching to N

P档-N档：按下档位解锁键同时踩下刹车踏板，将换挡杆向上或向下推至N档位置。

P - N: Press the gear unlock button while depressing the brake pedal and push the gearshift lever up or down to the N position.

R档-N档：向下推动换挡杆到N档位置。

R - N: Push the gearshift lever down to the N position.

D 档-N 档：向上推动换挡杆到 N 档位置。

D - N: Push the gearshift lever upwards to the N position.

切换 D 档 Shifting D

向下推动换挡杆到D档位置。

Push the gearshift lever down to the D position.

切换M档 Switching to M

车辆处于D档位置时，向左推动换挡杆到M档位置。

With the vehicle in D position, push the gearshift lever to the left to M position.

当车辆处于M档时，向上/下推动换挡杆可增加/减小档位。

When the vehicle is in M, push the gearshift lever up/down to increase/decrease the gear.

换挡条件说明 Description of gear change conditions

1 车辆未启动时，档位只能在P档和N档之间切换；

The gear can only be switched between P and N when the vehicle is not started.

- 退出 P 档需按下档位解锁按键的同时踩下刹车踏板；

To exit P, depress the brake pedal while pressing the gear unlock button.

- 当车辆在 M 档时，要切换到 R 档或 N 档，需先将换挡手柄向右推至 D 档位置再进行切换。

To switch to R or N when the vehicle is in M, push the gearshift handle to the right to the D position before switching.

爬行功能（蠕动）Crawling function (creeping)

车辆启动后，将换挡杆切换至行驶档位(D 档或 R 档)，释放驻车制动器(EPB)开关并松开刹车踏板，此时不需要踩下油门踏板，车辆可以缓慢前行。

Once the vehicle has started, switch the gearshift lever to a driving gear (D or R), release the parking brake (EPB) switch and depress the brake pedal; it is not necessary to depress the accelerator pedal at this point and the vehicle can move forward slowly.

起步 Start

正常起步：Normal start:

- 启动发动机。
Start the engine.
- 踩下刹车踏板，将换挡杆切换至行驶档位（D 档或 R 档）。
Depress the brake pedal and switch the gearshift lever to the driving gear (D or R).
- 释放 EPB 开关。
Release the EPB switch.
- 松开刹车踏板，然后慢慢踩下油门踏板，即可起步。
Release the brake pedal and then slowly depress the accelerator pedal to start.

坡道起步：Hill starts:

- 确认在施加驻车制动的状态下，将换挡杆切换至行驶档位（D 档或 R 档）。
Make sure that the gearshift lever is switched to the driving gear (D or R) with the parking brake applied.

- 慢慢踩下油门踏板，感觉到车辆有向前的趋势后，释放 EPB 开关，即可起步。

Slowly depress the accelerator pedal and release the EPB switch when you feel the vehicle trending forward to start.

停车 Parking

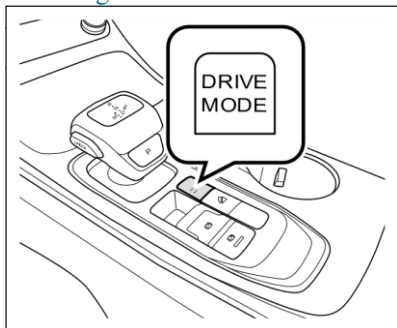
- 松开油门踏板，踩下刹车踏板。
Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.
- 待或施加驻车制动，车辆停稳后，按下 P 档按键。
Once the vehicle has come to a stop, press the P-gear button.
- 拉起 EPB 开关。
Pull up the EPB switch.
- 关闭发动机，松开刹车踏板。
Switch off the engine and release the brake pedal.



注意

- 需要在坡道上临时停车（驾驶员在车上）时，必须踩下刹车踏板或施加驻车制动，禁止使用油门踏板或爬行功能来保持车辆不溜车，否则会损伤自动变速器。
- When you need to temporarily park the vehicle on the ramp (the driver is on the car), you must press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake, prohibit using the accelerator pedal or crawling function to keep the vehicle free, otherwise it will damage the automatic transmission.
- 需要在坡道上长时间停放车辆（驾驶员不在车上）时，如果坡度较大，可根据需要设置障碍物挡住车轮，防止车辆后溜。
When you need to park the vehicle on the ramp for a long time (the driver is not on the car), if the slope is large, obstacles can be set up to block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from slipping behind.
- 不要同时踩下刹车和油门踏板，否则可能使自动变速器过热或发生故障。
- Do not press both the brake and accelerator pedal, or overheating or failing the automatic transmission.

驾驶模式切换 Driving mode switching



车辆启动时驾驶模式默认为“Normal”模式，按下一次驾驶模式按键切换为“SPORT”模式，再次按压此键切换为“ECO”模式。

When the vehicle is started the default driving mode is "Normal", press the drive mode button once to switch to "SPORT" and again to switch to "ECO" mode.

可在Normal → SPORT → ECO → Normal 之间循环切换。

Can be cycled between Normal → SPORT → ECO → Normal.

标准模式 (Normal) Standard mode(Normal)

综合车辆动力性和经济性，适用于各种路面。

Combined vehicle dynamics and economy for all road surfaces.

运动模式 (SPORT) Sport mode (SPORT)

提高车辆的动力性，带来更高级别的响应速度和驾乘感受。适用于车辆较少的平坦路面。

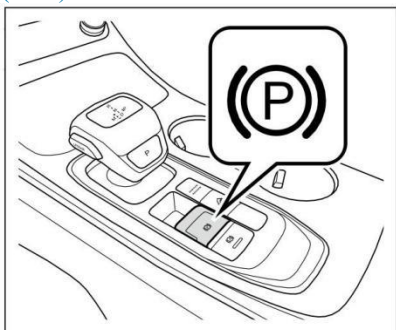
Improves the dynamics of the vehicle, resulting in a higher level of responsiveness and driving experience. Suitable for flat roads with fewer vehicles.

经济模式 (ECO) Economic model (ECO)

提高车辆的燃油经济性，适用于城市道路、铺装路等平坦坚硬路面。

Improves fuel economy and is suitable for flat and hard surfaces such as urban roads and paved roads.

驻车制动器 Parking brake 驻车制动器 (EPB) 开关 Park brake (EPB) switch



驾驶员可以使用EPB 开关使车辆可靠停驻。

The driver can use the EPB switch to bring the vehicle to a reliable stop.

EPB 启用和解除 EPB enable and disable

启用：车辆停稳后，向上拉起EPB开关，手动驻车完成，驻车状态指示灯 P 点亮。

Enable: After the vehicle has come to a stop, pull up on the EPB switch, manual parking is complete and the parking status indicator P lights up.

解除：踩下刹车踏板，同时按下EPB开关，驻车制动器松开，驻车状态指示灯熄灭。

To release: Depress the brake pedal and press the EPB switch at the same time, the parking brake is released and the parking status indicator goes out.

紧急制动功能 Emergency braking function

此功能只能在刹车踏板失效或受阻的情况使用。持续拉起EPB开关，即可在紧急情况下用电子驻车功能实现车辆制动。只要松开EPB开关，即可退出紧急制动。

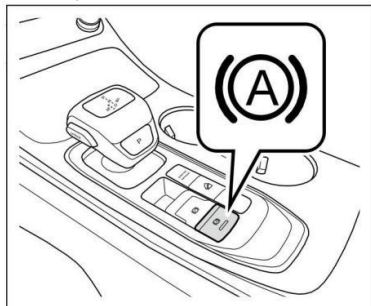
This function can only be used if the brake pedal is disabled or obstructed. The vehicle can be braked in an emergency with the electronic parking function by continuously pulling up the EPB switch. The emergency brake can be withdrawn by simply releasing the EPB switch.

警告 Warning

应尽量避免使用紧急制动功能，在弯度较大、路况不良或湿滑的道路上，使用紧急制动功能可能导致车辆甩尾、侧滑。

Use of the emergency braking function should be avoided at all costs. On roads with large curves, poor road conditions or slippery conditions, using the emergency braking function may cause the vehicle to drift and skid sideways.

自动驻车功能 (AUTO HOLD) Automatic parking function (AUTO HOLD)



自动驻车功能可以帮助驾驶员在坡道路段或红绿灯路口更舒适地起步。该功能可通过AUTO HOLD开关开启或关闭。开启功能后，驾驶员在坡道起步或红绿灯路口松开刹车踏板时，系统继续保持制动。

The AUTO HOLD function helps the driver to start more comfortably on hilly sections or at traffic light junctions. This function can be switched on or off via the AUTO HOLD switch. When the function is switched on, the system continues to hold the brakes when the driver releases the brake pedal at a hill start or at a traffic light junction.

AUTO HOLD 开启条件: AUTO HOLD ON condition

- 发动机处于启动状态。
The engine is in starting condition.
- 驾驶员已系好座椅安全带。
The driver has fastened his seat belt.
- 车辆所有车门已关闭。

All doors of the vehicle have been closed.

开启 AUTO HOLD 功能 Turn on the AUTO HOLD function

- 按下 AUTO HOLD 开关，即可开启 AUTO HOLD 功能，开关指示灯点亮。

Press the AUTO HOLD switch to switch on the AUTO HOLD function and the switch indicator lights up.

- 行车时如果 AUTO HOLD 功能已开启，当驾驶员踩下刹车踏板使车辆停止后，车辆会自动驻车，组合仪表上自动驻车工作指示灯点亮呈绿色，此时驾驶员可松开刹车踏板。

If the AUTO HOLD function is switched on when driving, when the driver depresses the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, the vehicle will automatically park and the AUTO HOLD indicator lights up in green on the instrument pack, at which point the driver can release the brake pedal.

- 起步时，无论是平路或上下坡，都需要踩下油门踏板，驻车才会自动解除，否则可能造成车辆无法起步。
- When starting, whether on a flat road or up or down a hill, the accelerator pedal needs to be depressed for the parking to be automatically released, otherwise the vehicle may not start.

关闭 AUTO HOLD 功能 Disable the AUTO HOLD function

- 当 AUTO HOLD 功能开启时，按下 AUTO HOLD 开关，即可关闭 AUTO HOLD 功能，开关指示灯熄灭。组合仪表上的自动驻车工作指示灯由绿色变成红色。

When the AUTO HOLD function is on, press the AUTO HOLD switch to switch off the AUTO HOLD function and the switch indicator light goes out. The AUTO HOLD operating indicator on the instrument pack turns from green to red.

- 如果打开主驾车门、松开主驾驶座椅安全带或关闭发动机，AUTO HOLD

功能将自动退出并转化为 EPB 驻车，以保证驻车安全。

- If the driver's door is opened, the driver's seat belt is released or the engine is switched off, the AUTO HOLD function will automatically exit and convert to EPB Park for safe parking.

牵引力控制 (TCS) 系统 Traction Control System (TCS)

在车辆行驶过程中，牵引力控制 (TCS) 系统通过控制发动机和对驱动轮适当制动，降低车轮在其旋转方向上的滑移。

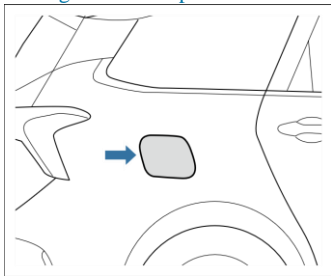
The traction control (TCS) system reduces wheel slip in the direction of its rotation by controlling the engine and braking the drive wheels appropriately while the vehicle is in motion.

加注燃油 Fuel filling

燃油要求 Fuel requirements

请使用 92# 或以上无铅汽油。Please use 92# or above unleaded petrol.

打开和关闭加油口盖 Opening and closing the filler cap



打开 Opening

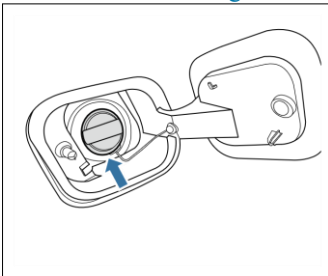
在车门解锁的状态下，按压加油口中部位置，可打开加油口盖。With the door unlocked, open the filler cap by pressing on the middle left side of the cap.

关闭 Closing

关闭加油口盖后按下中控锁止键或智能钥匙上锁键，加油口盖锁。

After closing the filler cap, press the central locking button or the smart key locking button and the filler cap is locked.

加注燃油 Fuel filling



逆时针旋转燃油加注口盖，将其缓缓打开后添加燃油。加油完成后，顺时针旋转加注口盖直至听到“咔嗒”声，关闭加油口盖。

Turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise to open it slowly and add fuel. When refuelling is complete, close the filler cap by turning it clockwise until you hear a "click".



警告 Warning

加油时，应关闭发动机，并远离热源及明火。

When refueling, turn off the engine and keep away from heat and flames

在加油枪首次自动关闭后，应停止加油，此时燃油箱内留有一定的空间，用于应对温度变化时的燃油膨胀。否则油箱将被填满，在炎热环境下，燃油膨胀将会引起燃油泄漏。

After the refueling gun is automatically turned off for the first time, the refueling should be stopped. At this time, there is a certain space in the fuel tank to deal with the expansion of the fuel when the temperature changes. Otherwise the fuel tank will fill up and in hot conditions, fuel expansion will cause fuel leaks.

驾驶建议 Driving advice

车辆磨合期 Vehicle break-in period

在新车 1000 公里里程内，应特别注意驾驶方式，这将有助于保障车辆的可靠性以及延长车辆的使用寿命。在此阶段，应注意以下事项：

Within 1000 kilometers of a new car, special attention should be paid to the driving style, which will help ensure the reliability of the vehicle and prolong the service life of the vehicle. At this stage, the following should be noted:

- 应避免全负荷下驾驶车辆，不要超载。
- Driving the vehicle under full load should be avoided and not overloaded.
- 应尽量避免急踩刹车踏板。
- Try to avoid depressing the brake pedal suddenly.
- 禁止使用本车拖挂其它车辆。
- It is prohibited to use this vehicle to tow other vehicles.
- 建议尝试在不同的工况下行驶。
- It is recommended to try driving under different conditions.

夜间行车 Night driving

夜间行车要比白天行车危险，主要原因是夜间视野较差和驾驶员容易疲劳。夜间行车请注意以下事项：

Driving at night is more dangerous than driving during the day, mainly due to poor night vision and driver fatigue. Please note the following when driving at night:

- 严禁酒后驾车。
- Drunk driving is strictly prohibited.
- 调节车辆内后视镜位置，减少眩光。
- Adjust the position of the rear-view mirror in the vehicle to reduce glare.
- 低速行驶。
- Drive at low speed.
- 注意会车灯光眩目，应放慢车速，避免直视对面来车的前照灯。
- Pay attention to the dazzling lights of passing vehicles, slow down and avoid looking directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles.

- 请勿疲劳驾驶，如果困乏时应及时将车辆停靠在路边安全处休息。
- Do not drive fatigued. If you are sleepy, you should park the vehicle in a safe place on the roadside in time to rest.
- 保持所有玻璃的整洁，避免灯光的眩目以及遮挡视线。
- Keep all glass clean to avoid glare from lights and obscuring the view.

酒后驾车 Drunk driving

请勿酒后驾车。酒后驾车非常危险，即使是少量的酒精也会影响人的反应力、感知力、注意力和判断力。酒后驾车不仅会引发事故还会导致严重的人身伤亡。交通管理部门会依照《道路交通安全法》的规定，依法对酒后驾车进行相应处罚。

Do not drink and drive. Drunk driving is very dangerous, and even a small amount of alcohol can affect a person's reflexes, perception, concentration and judgment. Drunk driving can lead to not only an accident but also serious personal injury or death. The traffic department will impose corresponding penalties on drunk driving in accordance with the *Road Traffic Safety Law*.

涉水行车 Wade driving

为了避免涉水行车时损坏车辆，要注意以下事项：

To avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through water, pay attention to the following:

- 在涉水行车前先确定水深。水位最高只能达到车轮的1/4高。
- Determine the water depth before driving in water. The water level can only be as high as 1/4 of the wheel.
- 最高以 10km/h 的速度行驶。如果车速过高则可能在车辆前面形成波浪，从而使水流进入发动机进气系统或车辆的其它部件内部，导致车辆损坏。
- Travel at a maximum speed of 10km/h. If the vehicle speed is too high, waves may form in front of the

vehicle, allowing water to enter the engine air intake system or other parts of the vehicle and cause damage to the vehicle

- 在任何情况下都不要在水中停车、倒车或关闭发动机。
- Do not park, reverse or turn off the engine in water under any circumstances.



注意 Notice

- 水中可能隐藏着坑洼、泥坑或石头，这些会加大涉水行车的难度或阻碍涉水行车。
- Potholes, mudholes or stones may be hidden in the water, which can make wading difficult or hinder wading.
- 涉水行车后，要立即用淡水冲洗所有与咸水接触过的车辆部件。因为盐会引起金属件锈蚀，所以尽量不要涉水行车。
- Flush all parts of the vehicle that have been in contact with salt water immediately after driving in salt water. Because salt can cause rust of metal parts, try not to wade in salt water.
- 涉水行车后，建议到东风风行特约服务站对车辆进行全面检查，排查隐患，保证行车安全。
- After driving in water, it is recommended to go to Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station to conduct a comprehensive inspection of the vehicle, check for hidden dangers, and ensure driving safety.

- 水中可能隐藏着坑洼、泥坑或石头，这些会加大涉水行车的难度或阻碍涉水行车。
- Potholes, mudholes or stones may be hidden in the water, which can make wading difficult or hinder wading.
- 涉水行车后，要立即用淡水冲洗所有与咸水接触过的车辆部件。因为盐会引起金属件锈蚀，所以尽量不要涉水行车。
- Flush all parts of the vehicle that have been in contact with salt water immediately after driving in salt water. Because salt can cause rust of metal parts, try not to wade in salt water.
- 涉水行车后，建议到东风风行特约服务站对车辆进行全面检查，排查隐患，保证行车安全。
- After driving in water, it is recommended to go to Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station to conduct a comprehensive inspection of the vehicle, check for hidden dangers, and ensure driving safety.

长途行车 Long distance driving

在长途行车之前请确认已做好相关准备，并尽量休息好。

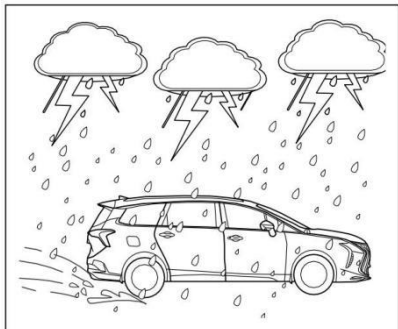
Please confirm that you are well prepared and rest as much as possible before the long drive.

旅行前请检查车辆以下几个部件：

Before traveling, please check the following parts of the vehicle:

- 检查洗涤剂储液罐是否装满，所有车窗的内外侧是否清洗干净。
- Check that the washer fluid reservoir is full and that all windows are cleaned inside and out.
- 检查燃油、发动机机油及其它油液是否达到规定油液面。
- Check whether the fuel, engine oil and other fluids reach the specified fluid level.
- 检查车灯是否都正常工作。
- Check that the lights are all working properly.
- 检查车灯表面是否清洁。
- Check that the light surface is clean.
- 检查轮胎胎面花纹是否适合长途行驶及所有轮胎是否已充气至推荐的气压值。
- Check that the tyre tread pattern is suitable for long-distance travel and that all tyres are inflated to the recommended air pressure.

雨天和湿滑路面行车 Driving on rainy and slippery roads

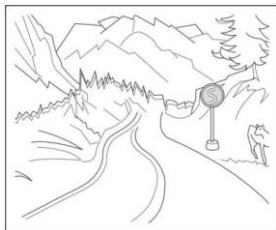


在雨天行车时请注意以下事项：

Please note the following when driving in the rain:

- 大雨会使视线变差并增大制动距离，请务必减速慢行。□
- Heavy rain will make the vision worse and increase the braking distance, please be sure to slow down.
- 应该经常检查雨刮，如果在前挡风玻璃上有条纹或有漏刮区域时请及时更换雨刮片。□
- The wipers should be checked frequently. If there are stripes or leaking areas on the front windshield, please replace the wiper blades in time.
- 如果车辆轮胎状况不佳，在湿滑路面上制动时可能会导致车辆滑移，甚至可能引发事故，所以请确保车辆轮胎处于良好状态。□
- If the tyres of the vehicle are in poor condition, braking on a slippery road may cause the vehicle to slip or even cause an accident, so please make sure that the tyres of the vehicle are in good condition.
- 打开车辆大灯和危险警告灯。
- Turn on vehicle headlights and hazard warning lights.
- 在通过积水路面时请务必减速慢行。
- Be sure to slow down when passing through a flooded road.
- 如果制动器潮湿，请在驾驶中轻踩刹车踏板直至制动恢复正常。
- If the brakes are wet, lightly press the brake pedal while driving until the braking returns to normal.
- 行车过程中，请勿急转向或急刹车，以免造成事故。□
- During the driving process, do not steer or brake suddenly to avoid accidents.
- 涉水行车后，可在低速行驶中，慢踩刹车踏板使制动器干燥。
- After wading in water, at low speed, slowly depress the brake pedal to dry the brakes.

坡道和山区路面行车 Driving on slopes and mountain roads

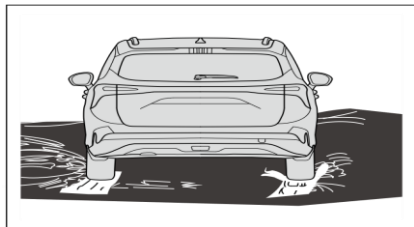


在坡道和山区路面行车时：

When driving on slopes and mountain roads:

- 请保持良好的车况。□
- Please keep the car in good condition.
- 下陡坡或长坡时应降低档位，利用发动机制动效应来减速。
- When going down a steep or long slope, lower the gear and use the engine braking effect to slow down.
- 上坡越过坡顶时要特别注意，在您的车道上可能会有障碍物。
- Be especially careful when going uphill and over the top of the slope, there may be obstacles in your lane.
- 在山区公路上可能会看到特殊的警告标志，驾车时应注意这些信号并采取适当的措施。
- You may see special warning signs on mountain roads, you should pay attention to these signals and take appropriate measures when driving.

冰雪路面行车 Driving on ice and snow roads



- 在积雪中行车时，尽可能使用雪地轮胎。请选择与最初装配轮胎相当的尺寸和型号的雪地轮胎。
- When driving in snow, use snow tyres as much as possible. Please select snow tyres of the same size and model as originally fitted.

- 在雪地中行车时，高速、急加速、紧急制动和小角度转弯都是非常危险的，应尽量避免。
- When driving in snow, high speed, rapid acceleration, emergency braking and small-angle turns are very dangerous and should be avoided as much as possible.
- 在冰地面上行车时，紧急制动会引起车辆甩尾，请保持安全车距。
- When driving on icy ground, emergency braking will cause the vehicle to drift. Please keep a safe distance.

冬季驾驶 Winter driving



冬季恶劣的驾驶环境会增大车辆的磨损或引发车辆故障。参考以下建议可降低故障发生概率：

Harsh driving conditions in winter can increase vehicle wear and tear or cause vehicle breakdowns. Refer to the following suggestions to reduce the probability of failure:

- 如有必要，更换低粘度的冬季用发动机机油。
- If necessary, replace the low-viscosity winter engine oil.
- 检查冷却液规格，确认冰点是否适合冬季预期温度。
- Check the coolant specification to confirm whether the freezing point is suitable for the expected winter temperature.
- 检查雨刮，确保雨刮片可以自由刮刷。
- Check the wiper to make sure the wiper blade can wipe freely.

- 在车辆熄火前原地深踩油门踏板，重复多次防止排气系统冰堵导致发动机无法启动。
- Before turning off the vehicle, step on the accelerator pedal deeply, and repeat several times to prevent the engine from being unable to start due to ice blockage in the exhaust system.
- 根据天气变化携带适当的紧急装备。
- Carry appropriate emergency gear according to weather changes.

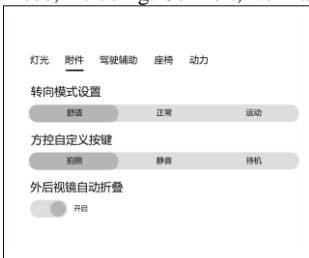
电动助力转向 Electric power steering

电动助力转向系统可以在驾驶时提供助力，从而使驾驶员能够轻便地转动方向盘。

The electric power steering system provides assistance while driving, allowing the driver to turn the steering wheel lightly.

依次点击显示屏中【设置】-【车辆】-【附件】-【转向模式设置】，可以选择转向模式，包含：舒适、正常和运动三种模式。

Click [Settings] - [Vehicle] - [Accessories] - [Steering Mode Settings] in turn on the display screen to select the steering mode, including: Comfort, Normal and Sport.



舒适：转向助力增加，转向较为轻松。

Comfort: Steering assistance is increased and steering is easier.

正常：转向助力适中，适用于一般驾驶习惯。此项为默认状态。

Normal: Steering assist is moderate, suitable for general driving habits. This is the default state.

运动：转向助力减少，转向手感沉稳。

Sport: Steering assist is reduced and steering feels firm.



注意 Notice

- 请在车辆静止且未执行转向操作时进行转向模式选择。□
- Please select the steering mode when the vehicle is stationary and no steering operation is performed.
- 驻车或极低车速行驶时，如果反复连续转动方向盘或将方向盘转动到末端保持较长时间，会导致电动助力转向系统过热，转向电机助力减小甚至暂时无法提供助力，为避免该情况的发生，尽量不要有类似操作。□
- When parking or driving at a very low speed, if you repeatedly turn the steering wheel continuously or turn the steering wheel to the end for a long time, the electric power steering system will overheat, and the power assistance of the steering motor will be reduced or even temporarily unable to provide assistance. To avoid such situation, try not to have similar operations.



注意 Notice

- 当快速转动方向盘时，可能会听到转向助力电机工作声音，属正常状态，并非故障。如果发动机运转时转向系统故障警告灯点亮，说明 EPS 转向系统或关联系统存在异常，此时转动方向盘可能需要更大力度，请尽快降低车速并安全停靠到路边，关闭发动机 5 分钟后重启车辆，如果此灯不再点亮则可正常行驶，如果仍然点亮，请尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。□
- When you turn the steering wheel quickly, you may hear the working sound of the power steering motor, which is normal and not a malfunction. If the steering system fault warning light is on when the engine is running, it means that the EPS steering system or related systems are abnormal. At this time, it may take more force to turn the steering wheel. Please reduce the speed as soon as possible and park on the roadside safely. Turn off the engine for 5 minutes and restart the vehicle, if the light is no longer on, you can drive normally. If it is still on, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station as soon as possible.

制动辅助系统 Brake assist system

制动辅助(BA)系统 Brake Assist (BA) system

驾驶员在大多数危险情况下都能及时进行制动，但踩下刹车踏板的力量却不足，导致制动距离增加。拥有制动辅助系统的车辆，在车辆行驶过程中，快速踩下刹车踏板时将启动液压辅助制动系统。此时制动辅助将产生一个比正常制动时更大的制动力，从而缩短制动距离。

The driver is able to apply the brakes in time in most dangerous situations, but has insufficient force to depress the brake pedal, resulting in increased braking distances. For vehicles with a brake assist system, the hydraulic assist brake system will be activated when the brake pedal is quickly depressed while the vehicle is in motion. At this time, the brake assist will generate a larger braking force than normal braking, thereby shortening the braking distance.

制动优先 Brake priority

制动优先系统可以在探测到驾驶员试图施加制动而没有成功时，自动将发动机切换到怠速状态。

The Brake priority system automatically switches the engine to idle when it detects an unsuccessful attempt by the driver to apply the brakes.

防抱死制动 (ABS) 系统 Anti-lock Braking (ABS) System

工作原理 Working principle

ABS 系统控制车辆的制动器，通过检测各个车轮的转速来调节制动力，以防止车轮抱死和侧滑。在车辆制动过程中，仍然可以用方向盘转向，避免发生碰撞。

The ABS system controls the vehicle's brakes and adjusts the braking force by detecting the rotational speed of each wheel to prevent wheel locking and sideslip. During the braking process of the vehicle, the steering wheel can still be used to avoid a collision.

系统自检 System self-check

ABS 系统内置自检功能, 在启动车辆和低速行驶时, 系统会进行自检。如有故障, 自检功能会关闭 ABS 系统并点亮组合仪表上的 ABS 系统故障警告灯。此时制动系统工作正常, 但 ABS 系统不起作用。如果在自检或行驶过程中, ABS 系统故障警告灯点亮, 请联系东风风行特约服务站。

The ABS system has a built-in self-test function, and the system will perform a self-test when starting the vehicle and driving at low speed. If there is a malfunction, the self-check function will turn off the ABS system and illuminate the ABS system malfunction warning light on the instrument pack. At this point the braking system works normally, but the ABS system does not work. If the ABS system fault warning light is on during self-check or driving, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

正常工作 Normal work

ABS 系统在车速达到 5km/h 以上会自动开启。当 ABS 系统检测到一个或多个车轮接近抱死状态时, 执行器迅速动作以释放和恢复制动力。执行器工作时, 可能会感到刹车踏板轻微震动, 并听到由发动机舱盖下的执行器发出的震动响声, 属于正常状态, 表示 ABS 系统在正常工作。

The ABS system will automatically turn on when the vehicle speed reaches 5km/h or more. When the ABS system detects that one or more wheels are approaching a locked state, the actuators act quickly to release and restore braking force. When the actuator is working, you may feel the brake pedal vibrate slightly, and hear the vibration sound from the actuator under the engine compartment cover, which is a normal state, indicating that the ABS system is working normally.



注意 Notice

- ABS 系统不能减少制动距离。□
- The ABS system cannot reduce the braking distance.
- 紧急制动时, 转向要适度。
- During emergency braking, the steering should be moderate.

制动力分配(EBD)

Brake force distribution (EBD)

EBD 系统会自动分配前、后轮之间的制动力, 使车辆在不同负载状态下都能够具有良好的制动性能。

The EBD system will automatically distribute the braking force between the front and rear wheels, so that the vehicle can have good braking performance under different load conditions.

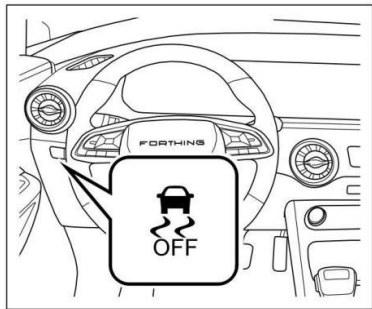
电子稳定控制 (ESP) 系统

Electronic Stability Control (ESP) system

ESP 系统可以提高驾驶车辆的稳定性。当 ESP 系统检测到实际的行驶状态与理想的行驶状态可能出现偏差时, ESP 系统就会开始工作。ESP 系统会有选择地对车辆制动器施加制动力, 改善车辆行驶的稳定性。

The ESP system can improve the stability of the driving vehicle. When the ESP system detects a possible deviation between the actual driving state and the ideal driving state, the ESP system starts to work. The ESP system selectively applies braking force to the vehicle's brakes to improve vehicle stability.

ESP 开关 Switch



ESP 系统默认开启, 按下 ESP 开关, ESP 系统关闭, 组合仪表上的 ESP 电子稳定系统关闭指示灯点亮。

The ESP system is turned on by default, press the ESP switch, the ESP system is turned off, and the ESP electronic stability system off indicator on the instrument pack is on.

ESP 系统关闭后，当车速超过80km/h时，ESP 系统会自动开启，ESP 电子稳定系统关闭指示灯熄灭。

After the ESP system is turned off, when the vehicle speed exceeds 80km/h, the ESP system will be turned on automatically, and the ESP electronic stability system off indicator will go out.

ESP 系统关闭后，再次按下 ESP 开关，ESP 系统会自动开启，组合仪表上 ESP 电子稳定系统关闭指示灯熄灭。

After the ESP system is turned off, press the ESP switch again, the ESP system will automatically turn on, and the ESP electronic stability system off indicator light on the instrument pack will go out.

真空助力器制动

Vacuum booster braking

真空助力器适用于发动机真空辅助制动。

The vacuum booster is suitable for engine vacuum-assisted braking.

制动系统合理使用建议

Suggestions for the proper use of the braking system

驾驶时不要将脚放在刹车踏板上，这会使制动器过热，加快制动盘和摩擦片的磨损，并增加油耗。

Do not put your foot on the brake pedal while driving, this will overheat the brakes, accelerate the wear of the brake discs and friction pads, and increase the fuel consumption.

在下长坡时，应尽量避免频繁制动，以免制动器过热，制动性能降低。

When going down a long slope, frequent braking should be avoided as much as possible to prevent the brakes from overheating and reducing the braking performance.

在光滑路面上行驶时，需谨慎驾驶。突然制动或加速会导致车轮打滑。

Drive with caution when driving on slippery surfaces. Sudden braking or acceleration can cause the wheels to slip.

洗车、涉水或下雨天行驶时，制动器可能会变湿，制动性能降低，此时应以安全车

速行驶，注意保持车距。

When washing the car, wading in water or driving in the rain, the brakes may become wet and the braking performance will be reduced. At this time, you should drive at a safe speed and keep your distance.

上坡起步辅助（HHC）系统

Hill Start Assist (HHC) system

车辆在陡峭或光滑坡面上起步时，驾驶员从刹车踏板切换到油门踏板，车辆可能向下滑动，从而导致起步困难。为防止此情况发生，HHC 系统会短暂（最长约2 秒）对四个车轮施加制动力来阻止车辆下滑。

When the vehicle starts off on a steep or slippery slope, if the driver switches from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal, the vehicle may slide down, making it difficult to start off. To prevent this, the HHC system briefly (up to approximately 2 seconds) applies braking force to all four wheels to prevent the vehicle from rolling down.

警告 Warning

- 请勿仅依靠 HHC 系统来避免车辆在坡道下滑。□
- Do not rely solely on the HHC system to prevent the vehicle from sliding down the slope.
- 车辆在陡坡、结冰、泥泞的道路上停车时，应踩下刹车踏板，防止车辆向后滑动。□
- When the vehicle is parked on a steep, icy or muddy road, depress the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from sliding backwards.

在下列条件下，HHC 系统将自动工作：

The HHC system will work automatically under the following conditions:

- 档位挂入 D 档或R 档且上坡时。
- When the gear is in D or R gear and going uphill.
- 踩下刹车踏板制动，车辆在坡道上完全停下。

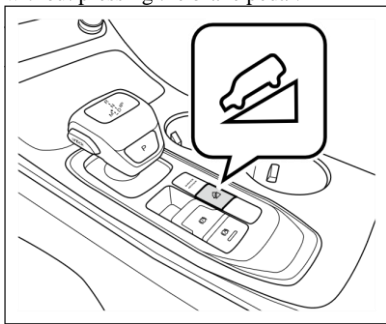
- Depress the brake pedal to brake, and the vehicle comes to a complete stop on the slope.
- 在下列条件下, HHC 系统将不工作:
- The HHC system will not work under the following conditions:
- 当档位挂入N 档或P 档或车辆位于水平路面时。
- When the gear is in N or P, or the vehicle is on a level road.
- 当组合仪表中的ESP 电子稳定性控制系统关闭指示灯点亮时。
- When the ESP electronic stability control system off indicator in the instrument pack is on.

陡坡缓降 (HDC) 系统

Steep Descent (HDC) System

HDC 系统可以让驾驶员在不踩刹车踏板的情况下, 平稳通过陡峭的下坡路段。

The HDC system allows the driver to smoothly negotiate steep downhill sections without pressing the brake pedal.



按下 HDC 开关, 组合仪表上的陡坡缓降系统工作指示灯点亮, 表示 HDC 系统开启。再次按下 HDC 开关或车速超过 60km/h 时, 陡坡缓降系统工作指示灯熄灭, HDC 系统关闭。

Press the HDC switch, and the steep hill descent system working indicator on the instrument pack lights up, indicating that the HDC system is on. When the HDC switch is pressed again or the vehicle speed exceeds 60km/h, the working indicator of the steep hill descent system goes off and the HDC system is turned off.

陡坡缓降系统制动

Steep descent system braking

车辆下陡坡时, HDC 系统开启状态下, 系统会主动制动, 使车速保持在 8km/h 至 35km/h 范围内, 驾驶员可通过踩下油门或刹车踏板, 在此速度范围内调整使用陡坡缓降功能下坡需保持的速度。

When the vehicle goes down a steep slope, when the HDC system is on, the system will actively brake to keep the vehicle speed within the range of 8km/h to 35km/h. The driver can adjust the use of steep slopes within such speed range by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal. The speed to be maintained when descending the slope.

HDC 系统进行主动制动时, 组合仪表上的陡坡缓降系统工作指示灯闪烁, 车辆制动灯会点亮。同时车辆ESP系统会发出电机工作的声音, 属于正常现象。

When the HDC system is actively braking, the hill descent system working indicator on the instrument pack flashes, and the vehicle brake light will illuminate. Meanwhile, the ESP system of the vehicle will make the sound of the motor working, which is a normal phenomenon.

警告 Warning

- 在使用陡坡缓降功能前, 驾驶员需确认系统处于开启状态。
- Before using the hill descent function, the driver needs to confirm that the system is turned on.
- 陡坡缓降功能仅通过主动刹车来控制车速, 驾驶员需随时注意控制车辆, 确保驾驶安全。□
- The steep slope descent function only controls the speed of the vehicle through active braking, and the driver needs to pay attention to control the vehicle at any time to ensure driving safety.

制动助力 Brake booster

当施加在刹车踏板上的力超过一定程度时，将开启制动助力，此时即使轻踩刹车踏板，也会产生较大的制动力，属于正常现象。

When the force exerted on the brake pedal exceeds a certain level, the brake booster will be turned on. At this time, even if the brake pedal is lightly stepped on, a large braking force will be generated, which is a normal phenomenon.

泊车辅助系统*

Parking assistance system*

泊车雷达系统

Parking radar system

根据配置不同，泊车辅助系统雷达传感器分为两类：

According to different configurations, radar sensors of parking assistance system can be divided into two categories:

型式一：后方 4 个雷达传感器。

Type 1: 4 radar sensors at the rear.

型式二：前方和后方各6个雷达传感器。

Type 2: 6 radar sensors each on the front and rear.

当泊车辅助系统启动时，系统会自动检测功能是否正常，如系统鸣叫 1 声，持续 3 秒，则表明系统有故障，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

When the parking assist system is activated, the system will automatically detect whether the function is normal. If the system beeps once for 3 seconds, it indicates that the system is faulty. Please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

前雷达* Front radar*



在显示屏顶端进行下划操作可唤出下

拉栏快捷菜单，点击【前雷达】，可以开启和关闭前雷达系统。

Swipe down at the top of the screen to call up the drop-down bar shortcut menu, and click [Front Radar] to turn on and off the front radar system.

开启 Turn on

启动开关置于“ON”档时，前雷达系统处于上一次熄火时的设置状态。

When the start switch is placed in the "ON" position, the front radar system is in the setting state when the engine was last turned off.

以下操作同时满足时可以开启前雷达系统：

The front radar system can be turned on when the following operations are met at the same time:

- 前雷达开关处于开启状态。□
- The front radar switch is on.
- 换挡杆处于非P 档。□
- The shift lever is in a non-P position.
- 起步后车速小于 15km/h 或行车途中从较高速度减速到 10km/h
- After starting, the vehicle speed is less than 15km/h or the vehicle decelerates from a higher speed to 10km/h while driving.
- EPB开关释放。□
- EPB switch is released.

关闭 Turn off

以下操作均可以关闭前雷达系统。

The following operations can turn off the front radar system.

- 前雷达开关处于关闭状态。□
- The front radar switch is off.
- 换挡杆处于 P 档。□
- The selector lever is in the P position.
- 车速超过 15km/h。□
- The vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h.
- EPB 开关拉起。□
- EPB switch is pulled up.



注意 Notice

前雷达开关控制前保险杠上的雷达传感器。当此开关关闭时，前雷达系统不工作，如果此时处于自动泊车模式中，前雷达系统可工作；退出自动泊车模式后，前雷达系统不工作。

The front radar switch controls the radar sensor on the front bumper. When this switch is off, the front radar system does not work. If it is in the automatic parking mode, the front radar system can work; after exiting the automatic parking mode, the front radar system does not work.

探测范围 Detection range

泊车辅助系统雷达传感器的探测范围如下表所示：

The detection ranges of the Park Assist radar sensors are shown in the table below:

传感器位置 Sensor location	最远探测距离 Farthest detection distance
后部两侧* Rear sides*	50~70cm
后部中间 Middle rear	140~160cm
前部两侧* Front sides*	50~70cm
前部中间* Front middle*	110~130cm

报警方式 Alarm method

泊车辅助系统根据雷达传感器与障碍物之间的距离在组合仪表盘上发出间断性报警音或长鸣报警音，距离越短，报警音的间隔时间越短。

According to the distance between the radar sensor and the obstacle, the parking assist system makes intermittent alarm sounds or long beeps on the instrument cluster. The shorter the distance, the shorter the interval between the alarm sounds.

型式一：在显示屏上根据障碍物距离有对应颜色显示，具体对应如下表：

Type 1: There is a corresponding color display on the display screen according to the distance of the obstacle, which corresponds to the following table:

障碍物距离 Obstacle distance	组合仪表报警音 Instrument cluster Alarm tone	音响报警显示 Audible alarm display
0~30cm	长鸣音 Long beep	红色 Red
30~100cm	4HZ 的急促间隙音 4HZ rapid interstitial sound	黄色 Yellow
100~150cm	2HZ 的间隙音 Interstitial sound at 2Hz	绿色 Green

型式二：仅在全景影像界面进行报警显示，不进行声音报警。

Type 2: The alarm display is only performed on the panoramic image interface, and the sound alarm is not performed.

系统可能不工作的情况 A situation in which the system may not work

由于物体特性，位置、角度、大小、材质或背景复杂的场所等关系，可能造成系统不工作或误报，以下情况会造成无法检测或检测不良：

Due to the characteristics of the object, position, angle, size, material or complex background, etc., the system may not work or cause false alarms. The following conditions will result in undetectable or poor detection:

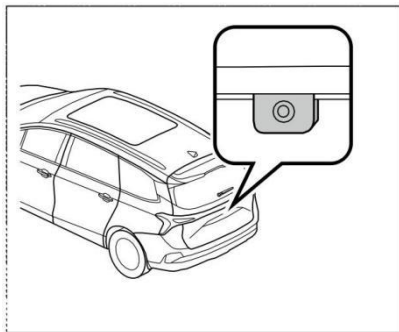
- 铁丝网、钢索类物体。□
- Barbed wire, wire rope objects.
- 在草丛中或崎岖不平的路面行。
- Driving on grass or rough roads.
- 棉质或表面易吸收音波的材料。
- Cotton or materials whose surface is easy to absorb sound waves.
- 传感器表面附着异物。□
- Strange objects are attached to the sensor surface.
- 同频率的超音波杂音、金属声、高压气体排放声。
- Ultrasonic noise, metal sound and high-pressure gas discharge sound of the same frequency.
- 加装或连接其它电子设备，使用中也会影响此系统功能。□
- Adding or connecting other electronic equipment will also affect the function of this system during

use.

警告 Warning

- 泊车辅助系统仅作为泊车、倒车时对车辆前后障碍物的辅助警示，不能代替驾驶员对周围环境的观察。驾驶员需对整个驾驶过程中的环境进行实时监测，东风风行无需为驾驶员因疏忽而产生的意外事故负责。
- The parking assist system is only used as an auxiliary warning for obstacles in the front and rear of the vehicle when parking and reversing, and cannot replace the driver's observation of the surrounding environment. The driver needs to monitor the environment during the entire driving process in real time, and Dongfeng Forthing is not responsible for the accident caused by the driver's negligence.
- 由于泊车辅助系统存在工作盲区，请勿以此作为倒车安全的唯一依据，驾驶员负责驾驶安全。□
- Because the parking assist system has a working blind spot, please do not use it as the only basis for reversing safety. The driver is responsible for driving safety.

倒车影像 Reverse image



倒车影像通过安装在车辆后方的摄像头采集图像，方便驾驶员在倒车时及时查看后方障碍物。

The reversing image collects images through the camera installed at the rear of the vehicle, which is convenient for the driver to check the rear obstacles in time when reversing.

倒车影像开启 Reverse image on

- 1 启动开关处于“ON”档。
The start switch is in the "ON" position.
- 2 挂R档时，倒车影像会自动开启，退出R档后系统自动关闭。
When the R gear is engaged, the reversing image will be automatically turned on, and the system will be automatically turned off after exiting the R gear.

倒车辅助线 Reversing auxiliary line



倒车辅助线说明:

Reversing auxiliary line description:

红色: 表示车后约 1 米距离。
Red: Indicates about 1 meter behind the car.
黄色: 表示车后约 2 米距离。
Yellow: Indicates about 2 meters behind the car.
绿色: 表示车后约 3 米距离。
Green: Indicates about 3 meters behind the car.
辅助线宽度: 表示两侧外后视镜的最长距离加 7 厘米。

Auxiliary line width: Indicates the longest distance of the exterior mirrors on both sides plus 7 cm.

倒车辅助线可辅助驾驶员判断倒车轨迹，需要方向盘转到一定角度后才会激活。
The reversing assist line can assist the driver in judging the reversing trajectory, and it will be activated only after the steering wheel is turned to a certain angle.

360°全景影像* 360°panoramic image*

全景影像可拼接位于车辆前、后、左、右的四个摄像头图像，合成一幅鸟瞰视图在显示屏上。搭配倒车雷达使用，使停泊车辆时更加安全便利。

Panoramic images can be stitched from four cameras located in the front, rear, left and right of the vehicle to synthesize a bird's-eye view on the display. Use with reversing radar to make parking the vehicle safer and more convenient.

打开和关闭全景影像

Turn panorama on and off

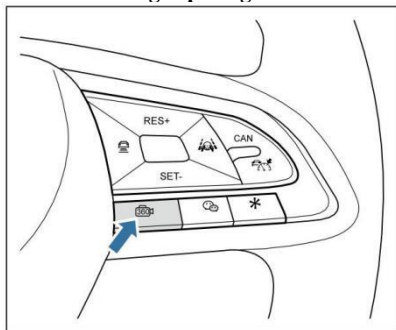
全景影像开启前提条件:

Prerequisites for enabling panoramic images:

- 1 启动开关处于“ON”档;
The start switch is in the "ON" position;
- 2 车速低于30km/h。
The vehicle speed is lower than 30km/h.

全景影像开启方式

Panoramic image opening method



- 按下方向盘上的 360°全景键可手动打开全景影像，再次按下可关闭全景影像。□
- Press the 360° panorama button on the steering wheel to manually open the panoramic image, and press it again to close the panoramic image.



- 当【转向灯进入】功能开启，驾驶员

左右打转向灯时，全景影像会自动开启。□

- When the [Turn Signal Entry] function is turned on and the driver turns left or right, the panoramic image will be turned on automatically.
- 换挡杆置于 R 档时，全景影像会自动开启。□
- When the shift lever is in the R position, the panoramic image will be automatically turned on.



注意

开启优先级：R 档>左右转向>360° 全景键，高优先级条件触发时会优先自动切换到对应画面。

Turn on priority: R gear > left and right steering > 360° panorama key, when a high priority condition is triggered, it will automatically switch to the corresponding screen first.

全景影像功能说明

Panoramic image function description

2D视图 2D View



点击右侧前、后、左、右摄像头图标，会切换对应视角。

Click the front, rear, left and right camera icons on the right to switch the corresponding viewing angle.

3D视图 3D View



点击左侧【3D 视图】，可进入 3D 视角界面，点击并拖动图像显示的任意区域可实现 360° 旋转，支持缩放和拖拽功能。

Click [3D View] on the left to enter the 3D perspective interface, click and drag any area of the image display to achieve 360° rotation, and support zoom and drag functions.

前、后广角视图

Front and rear wide angle view



点击 2D 视图前、后单视图切换至对应前、后广角视图。

Click the front and rear single views of the 2D view to switch to the corresponding front and rear wide-angle views.

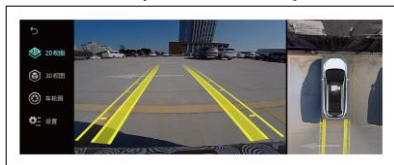
车轮图 Wheel diagram



点击【车轮图】，切换对应视图。

Click [Wheel Diagram] to switch the corresponding view.

动态辅助线 Dynamic auxiliary line



2D 前、后单视图(中间)和 2D 拼接视图(右侧)均有辅助线,辅助线随 D 档、R 档切换而切换前后方向,辅助线表示的实际长度为 5 米。

2D front and rear single view (middle) and 2D splicing view (right) have auxiliary lines. The auxiliary lines switch the front and rear directions with the switching of D and R gears. The actual length of the auxiliary lines is 5 meters.

- 外层宽度为两侧外后视镜的最长距离加7厘米;内层宽度为车轮宽度。
- The width of the outer layer is the longest distance of the exterior mirrors

on both sides plus 7 cm; the width of the inner layer is the width of the wheel.

- 刻度样式轨迹线带有刻度线,刻度线分为三段 0~0.3 米, 0.3~1 米, 1~1.5 米。
- The scale style track line has scale lines, and the scale line is divided into three sections: 0~0.3 meters, 0.3~1 meters, and 1~1.5 meters.

警告

辅助线仅作参考,不能作为判断车辆实际距离和行驶轨迹的依据,停泊车辆时请注意车辆周围环境,安全驾驶。

The auxiliary line is only for reference and cannot be used as the basis for judging the actual distance and driving trajectory of the vehicle. When parking the vehicle, please pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle and drive safely.

3D 环绕 3D Surround

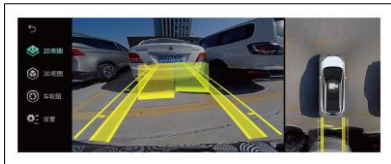


点击【3D 环绕】图标,单视图区域会显示环绕效果,时间维持约7秒钟,结束后返回上一视图。

Click the [3D Surround] icon, the single view area will display the surround effect for about 7 seconds, and return to the previous view after the end.

雷达障碍板显示

Radar Obstruction Panel Display



全景界面下,当满足雷达系统的工作条件时,会显示障碍板,同时会有报警音。

Under the panoramic interface, when the working conditions of the radar system

are met, the obstacle board will be displayed, and there will be an alarm sound.

注意 Notice

前、后、左、右最外侧的四个雷达传感器探测到障碍物后仅有障碍物显示，无报警音。

The front, rear, left, and right outermost four radar sensors detect obstacles, only the obstacle board is displayed, and there is no alarm sound.

转向视角 Steering perspective



当车辆转向时，2D 视角如上图。

When the vehicle turns, the 2D view is as shown above.

移动物体&行人探测预警 (MOD) 系统 Moving Object & Pedestrian Detection Warning (MOD) System



- 非P 档;
- Non-P gear;
- 车辆加速时车速低于15km/h或从高于15km/h 的车速减速到 10km/h 以下时;
- When the vehicle accelerates below 15km/h or decelerates from a speed above 15km/h to below 10km/h;
- 全景影像设置界面中行人报警开关已开启;
- The pedestrian alarm switch in the panoramic image setting interface has been turned on;
- EPB 开关释放;
- EPB switch release;
- 处于环视界面。
- In the look-around interface.

注意 Notice

- 摄像头类似于人眼，在黄昏、夜晚、黎明、雪、雨及雾等环境下，看见物体的能力有限。全景影像主要用于驾驶辅助，驾驶员始终负有与任何障碍物保持距离的责任。□
- The camera is similar to the human eye, and its ability to see objects is limited in environments such as dusk, night, dawn, snow, rain, and fog. Panoramic images are mainly used for driving assistance, and the driver is always responsible for keeping a distance from any obstacles.
- 摄像头会放大和扭曲图像，并有少许的延时，本车所有泊车辅助系统的功能（雷达、影像）不能替代驾驶员操作和判断，使用过程中请时刻注意车辆周边安全。□
- The camera will magnify and distort the image, and there will be a slight delay. All the functions of the parking assistance system (radar, image) of this car cannot replace the driver's operation and judgment. Please always pay attention to the safety of the surrounding of the vehicle during use.
- 全景影像视图仅对地面图像进行拼接，对于有一定高度的物体会存在空中盲区，停泊车辆时务必注意车辆周围的幼童、水泥柱等物体。□
- The panoramic image view only stitches the ground images. For objects with a certain height, there will be blind spots in the air. When parking the vehicle, be sure to pay attention to objects such as children and cement pillars around the vehicle.
- 辅助线、雷达波距离会与实际距离存在一定误差，停泊车辆时请注意观察车辆周边安全。□
- Auxiliary line and radar wave distance will have a certain error with the actual distance. Please pay attention to the safety of the surrounding of the vehicle when parking the vehicle.
- 摄像头脏污时会影响系统使用，请及时清理干净。□
- When the camera is dirty, it will affect the use of the system, please clean it up in time.
- 当气候恶劣、光照不足时，系统无法正常使用。□
- When the weather is bad and the light is insufficient, the system cannot be used normally.

自动泊车系统 * Automatic Parking System*

自动泊车系统是利用车辆周边的雷达传感器和高清全景摄像头来监测车辆周围的情况并辅助泊车。

The automatic parking system uses radar sensors and high-definition panoramic cameras around the vehicle to monitor the situation around the vehicle and assist in parking.

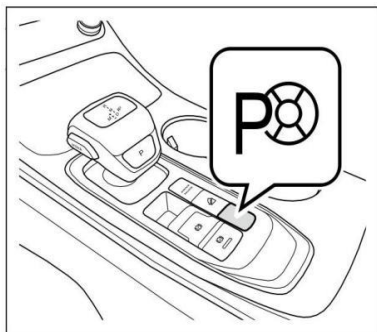
自动泊车系统为驾驶员泊车规划线路，找到车位后，驾驶员无需操作方向盘、刹车、换挡等，但需要时刻观察周边环境，并在必要时接管车辆。

The automatic parking system plans a route for the driver to park. After finding a parking space, the driver does not need to operate the steering wheel, brake, shift, etc., but needs to observe the surrounding environment at all times and take over the vehicle if necessary.

自动泊车系统可实现水平泊入，垂直泊入，水平泊出。

The automatic parking system can realize horizontal parking, vertical parking, and horizontal park-out.

打开和关闭自动泊车系统 Turn the automatic parking system on and off



车速在 30km/h 以下时，按下自动泊车开关，泊入车位功能开启。

When the vehicle speed is below 30km/h, press the automatic parking switch to turn on the parking function.

车速在 0km/h 时，按下自动泊车开关，点击显示屏上的【水平泊出】，泊出车位功能开启。

When the vehicle speed is 0km/h, press the automatic parking switch and

click [Horizontal Parking] on the display screen to enable the parking function.

自动泊车系统打开后，再次按下自动泊车开关，自动泊车系统关闭。

After the automatic parking system is turned on, press the automatic parking switch again to turn off the automatic parking system.

寻找车位过程中，如果车速大于30km/h，保持一段时间后，自动泊车系统将关闭。

During the process of searching for a parking space, if the vehicle speed is greater than 30km/h, the automatic parking system will be turned off after a period of time.

泊车入位流程 Parking process



- 1 车速小于 30km/h 时，按下自动泊车开关，显示屏弹出【使用说明】，点击【是】进入寻库界面，点击【否】退出自动泊车系统。

When the vehicle speed is less than 30km/h, press the automatic parking switch, the display will pop up [Instructions], click [Yes] to enter the library search interface, and click [No] to exit the automatic parking system.



- 2 进入寻库界面后缓慢行驶，成功搜索到车位后，显示车位图像，并提示驾驶员停车。

Drive slowly after entering the parking space search interface. After successfully searching for a parking space, the image of the parking space will be displayed and the driver will be prompted to stop.



- 3 车辆停止后，驾驶员需要查看找到的车位及周边环境是否适宜、安全。如果车

位适宜，根据提示保持刹车并短按自动泊车开关。

After the vehicle stops, the driver needs to check whether the found parking space and the surrounding environment are suitable and safe. If the parking space is suitable, keep the brakes and press the automatic parking switch briefly as prompted.

- 4 根据提示松开方向盘和刹车，车辆开始自动泊车入位。泊车过程中，驾驶员必须时刻观察车辆周围情况，确保自动泊车过程安全。Release the steering wheel and brake according to the prompts, and the vehicle will start to park automatically. During the parking process, the driver must always observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle to ensure the safety of the automatic parking process.



- 5 泊车完成后，显示屏显示【泊车完成】提示。After the parking is completed, the display shows the prompt [Parking Completed]



注意 Notice

在自动泊车过程中如果遇到下坡，车辆将无法移动，此时请勿使用自动泊车系统，否则有突然加速产生刮擦车辆的风险。If you encounter a downhill during the automatic parking process, the vehicle will not be able to move. Do not use the automatic parking system at this time, otherwise there is a risk of scratching the vehicle

泊车出位流程 Parking out process

使用泊出功能前，需满足以下条件：

Before using the park-out function, the following conditions must be met:

- 车辆处于静止状态、档位处于P档、拉起EPB开关；□
- The vehicle is in a stationary state, the gear is in the P gear, and the EPB switch is pulled up;

- 车辆前后空间之和大于 0.9 ± 0.1 米、车头前方 3 ± 0.1 米内有障碍物，且泊出方向 3 ± 0.1 米内无障碍物。□
- The sum of the front and rear spaces of the vehicle is greater than 0.9 ± 0.1 meters, there are obstacles within 3 ± 0.1 meters in front of the vehicle, and there are no obstacles within 3 ± 0.1 meters in the parking direction.

- 1 满足泊出条件后，驾驶员需查看周边环境是否适宜、安全；After meeting the park-out conditions, the driver needs to check whether the surrounding environment is suitable and safe;



- 2 按下自动泊车开关，点击【是】进入泊车界面，再点击【自动泊出】，通过拨动灯光控制手柄选择泊出方向，灯光控制手柄向下拨，泊出方向为左，灯光控制手柄向上拨，泊出方向为右；Press the automatic parking switch, click [Yes] to enter the parking interface, and then click [Automatic parking], select the park-out direction by toggling the light control handle, turn the light control handle downward, and the park-out direction is left. The light control handle is turned up, and the park-out direction is right;
- 3 按下EPB开关解除驻车，保持刹车并短按自动泊车开关，然后释放刹车踏板；Press the EPB switch to release the parking, hold the brake and briefly press the automatic parking switch, then release the brake pedal;
- 4 车辆开始泊车出位。泊车过程中，驾驶员必须时刻观察车辆周围情况，确保自动泊出过程安全。The vehicle starts to park out. During the parking process, the driver must always observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle to ensure the safety of the automatic park-out process.
- 5 泊车完成后，显示屏显示【泊车完

成】。

After the parking is completed, the display shows [Parking Completed].



注意 Notice

- 系统可识别垂直车位和水平车位，如果停车位没有车位线，则垂直车位的左侧或右侧（水平车位的前侧或后侧）需要有其他车辆或体积较大物体作为参照物。如果有清晰的车位线，车位两侧无需参照物也可检测。□
- The system can identify vertical parking spaces and horizontal parking spaces. If there is no parking space line in the parking space, the left or right side of the vertical parking space (front or rear side of the horizontal parking space) needs to have other vehicles or larger objects as reference objects. If there is a clear parking space line, the two sides of the parking space can be detected without reference objects.
- 寻找车位时车辆请尽量保持直行，不要打方向。□
- When looking for a parking space, please keep driving as straight as possible and do not give directions.
- 寻找车位过程中，请保持车辆与车位横向距离 0.5~1.8 米区间内。
- While finding a parking space, please keep the horizontal distance between the vehicle and the parking space within 0.5~1.8 meters.
- 系统搜索到第一个车位后会有提示音。之后，每隔 6 米才会有提示。
- After the system searches for the first parking space, there will be a prompt tone. After that, there will be prompts every 6 meters.
- 泊车过程中，如果踩下刹车踏板，自动泊车会暂停，释放刹车踏板将继续泊车。□
- During the parking process, if the brake pedal is depressed, the automatic parking will be suspended, and the parking will continue when the brake pedal is released.
- 寻找车位时按下自动泊车开关或点击显示屏上泊车界面的返回键，将退出自动泊车。
- When searching for a parking space, press the automatic parking switch or click the return button on the parking interface on the display screen to exit the automatic parking.



注意 Notice

- 泊车过程中，如果系统检测到障碍物、非主驾车门被打开或再次按下自动泊车开关，自动泊车系统会中断 30 秒，如果 30 秒内中断条件解除，再次按一下自动泊车开关将继续泊车。□
- During the parking process, if the system detects an obstacle, the non-main driving door is opened, or the automatic parking switch is pressed again, the automatic parking system will be interrupted for 30 seconds. If the interruption condition is lifted within 30 seconds, pressing the automatic parking button again will continue to park.
- 泊车过程中转动方向盘、换挡、踩下刹车踏板并拉起 EPB 开关、打开主驾侧车门、松开主驾座椅安全带或打开后备箱门，将退出自动泊车。
- During parking, turning the steering wheel, shifting gears, pressing the brake pedal and pulling up the EPB switch, opening the driver's side door, loosening the driver's seat belt or opening the rear door will exit automatic parking.
- 非踩下刹车导致泊车暂停超过 30 秒未恢复时，将退出自动泊车。□
- If the parking is suspended for more than 30 seconds without the brake being pressed, the automatic parking will be exited.

警告 Warning

- 由于系统本身的局限性，并非总能检测到停车位和泊车路径中的物体，自动泊车系统处于启用状态时，驾驶员始终有责任在必要时主动介入，可接管方向盘或踩下刹车踏板，使泊车中断或退出自动泊车。
- Due to the limitations of the system itself, it is not always possible to detect objects in the parking space and the parking path. When the automatic parking system is activated, it is always the driver's responsibility to actively intervene when necessary, taking over the steering wheel or pressing the brake pedal, to interrupt parking or to exit automatic parking.
- 泊车过程中，一般情况下请勿操作方向盘，如遇紧急情况，请及时主动接管方向盘或踩下制动踏板。如果不遵守此项规定，则可能会导致人身伤害。□
- During the parking process, do not operate the steering wheel under normal circumstances. In case of emergency, please take the initiative to take over the steering wheel or depress the brake pedal in time. Personal injury may result if this rule is not followed.
- 泊车过程中，如果在泊车轨迹里面突然出现车辆、行人或物体，为防止车辆发生碰撞危险，车辆会触发紧急制动并退出自动泊车。虽然系统具有避让障碍物并自动停车的功能，但由于传感器的局限性，驾驶员需要随时准备刹车避让车辆、行人和物体
- During the parking process, if a vehicle, pedestrian or object suddenly appears in the parking track, in order to prevent the vehicle from colliding, the vehicle will trigger the emergency brake and exit the automatic parking. Although the system can avoid obstacles and automatically stop, the driver needs to be ready to brake to avoid vehicles, pedestrians and objects due to sensor limitations.
- 请勿在车辆或行人频繁出现的地点使用自动泊车。□
- Do not use automatic parking in places where vehicles or pedestrians frequently appear.

警告 Warning

- 对于满足泊车条件但不适合泊车的场景，例如：有路沿的路口、有台阶的草坪等，系统可能会将其误认为是车位。泊车入位前，请驾驶员提前确认系统识别的车位及周边环境是否适合停车。□
- For scenarios that meet the parking conditions but are not suitable for parking, such as intersections with curbs, lawns with steps, etc., the system may mistake them as parking spaces. Before parking in the parking space, the driver should confirm in advance whether the parking space identified by the system and the surrounding environment are suitable for parking.
- 在狭小场地自动泊车，会影响传感器检测障碍物位置的准确性，导致车辆与周边物体刮蹭、碰撞概率上升。
- Automatic parking in a narrow area will affect the accuracy of the sensor's detection of the location of obstacles, resulting in increased collision probability between the vehicle and surrounding objects.
- 在狭小场地自动泊车，连续泊车次数不可大于 10 次，多次连续泊车将导致执行器温度急速上升，泊车控制精度下降，导致车辆与周边物体刮蹭、碰撞风险上升或系统异常退出泊车。□
- Automatic parking in a small area, the number of consecutive parking times should not exceed 10. Multiple consecutive parking will cause the temperature of the actuator to rise rapidly, and the parking control accuracy will decrease, resulting in the vehicle rubbing against surrounding objects, increasing the risk of collision or the system exiting abnormally Parking.
- 系统受周边环境影响，泊车完成后，车身可能出现倾斜、垂直车位偏前等情况，您可能需要进一步调整车辆位置，确保正确停车。□
- The system is affected by the surrounding environment. After the parking is completed, the body may be tilted, the vertical parking space may be shifted to the front, etc. You may need to further adjust the position of the vehicle to ensure correct parking.

**警告** Warning

- 泊车过程中，泊车轨迹中出现障碍物暂停，障碍物移除后，泊车轨迹可能被打乱，导致泊车失败概率上升。
- During the parking process, an obstacle in the parking trajectory is suspended. After the obstacle is removed, the parking trajectory may be disrupted, resulting in an increased probability of parking failure.
- 车位前方或后方有卡车或悬空障碍物时，泊车过程中可能出现碰撞现象，请驾驶员注意周边环境，必要时进行人工干预。□
- When there are trucks or suspended obstacles in front of or behind the parking space, collisions may occur during the parking process. Please pay attention to the surrounding environment and perform manual intervention if necessary.
- 寻找车位时建议车速保持在10km/h以下，否则系统将不能有效的分辨障碍物。□
- When looking for a parking space, it is recommended to keep the vehicle speed below 10km/h, otherwise the system will be unable to distinguish obstacles effectively.
- 天气条件恶劣时（如：大雨、雾、雪、酷热或极寒温度），会干扰传感器工作，影响系统使用，不适合使用自动泊车系统。□
- When the weather conditions are bad (such as: heavy rain, fog, snow, extreme heat or extremely cold temperature), it will interfere with the work of the sensor and affect the use of the system. It is unsuitable to use the automatic parking system.
- 泊车环境周边有棉质或有表面易吸收声波材料的障碍物时，传感器可能不易识别，请勿使用自动泊车系统。□
- When there are obstacles around the parking environment made of cotton or materials that can easily absorb sound waves, the sensor may be unable to identify them easily. Do not use the automatic parking system.
- 凹凸不平的路面不适合使用自动泊车系统。□
- The uneven road surface is unsuitable for using the automatic parking system.

**警告** Warning

- 当一个或多个超声波传感器损坏、环视摄像头脏污、损坏或处于不正常的位置时，请勿使用自动泊车系统。□
- Do not use the automatic parking system when one or more ultrasonic sensors are damaged, the surround view camera is dirty, damaged, or in an abnormal location.
- 当泊车地点周围有对传感器产生干扰的电气设备或装置影响系统使用时，请勿使用自动泊车系统□
- Do not use the automatic parking system when there are electrical devices or devices that interfere with the sensor around the parking place and affect the use of the system.
- 请保持传感器和摄像头外表面清洁，如发现设备表面被雪、冰、霜、泥浆、灰尘等物体覆盖时，请及时清除，以免影响自动泊车系统。
- Please keep the outer surface of the sensor and camera clean. If the surface of the device is found to be covered with snow, ice, frost, mud, dust, etc., please remove it in time to avoid affecting the automatic parking system.
- 请勿使用高压清洗机或蒸汽清洗机对传感器和摄像头进行清洗，以免对传感器和摄像头受损。清洗车辆时应使用较小的水流短时间冲洗传感器和摄像头表面，且至少保持 10 厘米以上距离。□
- Do not use a pressure washer or steam cleaner to clean the sensor and camera to avoid damage. When washing the vehicle, use a small stream of water to rinse the sensor and camera surfaces for a short period of time and keep a distance of at least 10 cm.
- 改装车辆或者未在东风风行特约服务站进行维修，可能会导致自动泊车系统受到影响，容易在执行自动泊车过程中发生刮蹭、碰撞。□
- Modification of the vehicle or failure to perform maintenance at Dongfeng Forthing Special Service Station may cause the automatic parking system to be affected, and it is prone to scratches and collisions during the automatic parking process.

警告

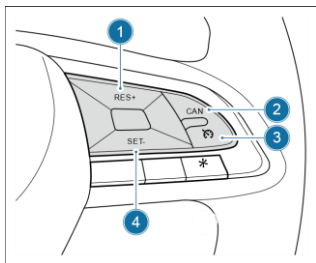
- 请勿在装有防滑链或应急备用轮胎时使用自动泊车系统。□
- Do not use the automatic parking system with snow chains or emergency spare tyres installed.
- 自动泊车系统不支持斜列式车位、线框干扰车位、残缺车位、弯道车位、有坡度车位、立体车位、I 型线车位、水平车位内配置止轮器车位等车位场景，请勿在上述场景使用自动泊车系统。
- The automatic parking system does not support parking spaces such as inclined parking spaces, wire-frame interference parking spaces, incomplete parking spaces, curved parking spaces, sloping parking spaces, three-dimensional parking spaces, I-line parking spaces, and parking spaces with wheel stoppers in horizontal parking spaces. The above scenario uses an automatic parking system.

定速巡航系统 Cruise control system

定速巡航系统让驾驶员不用踩下油门踏板，而仍然能够使车辆保持高于40km/h的预设速度行驶。在高速公路上行驶时，可启用此功能。不建议在市区、蜿蜒道路、湿滑路面、大雨天或其他恶劣气候条件下启用此功能。严禁在冰雪道路使用定速巡航系统。

The cruise control system allows the driver to maintain a preset speed above 40km/h without depressing the accelerator pedal. This function can be activated when driving on the highway. It is not recommended to enable this feature in urban areas, winding roads, slippery roads, heavy rain, or other severe weather conditions. It is strictly forbidden to use the cruise control system on ice and snow roads.

按键说明 Button description



按键介绍 Button introduction

1 巡航恢复/加速键 Cruise resume/accelerator button

恢复设定的巡航车速，并以该车速控制车辆。Restores the set cruise speed and takes control of the vehicle at that speed.

如已开启定速巡航功能：If cruise control function is enabled:

按下此键：巡航设定车速升高 1km/h。

Press this button: the cruise setting speed is increased by 1km/h.

长按此键：巡航设定车速以 10km/h的速度持续升高。Long press this button: the cruise setting speed will continue to increase at a speed of 10km/h.

2 巡航暂停键 Cruise pause button

按下此键可以暂停巡航功能。

Press this button to pause the cruise function.

3 定速巡航键 Cruise button

按下此键可以开启或关闭定速巡航。

Press this key to turn cruise control on or off.

4 车速设置/减速键 Speed setting/deceleration button

将当前的车速设置为巡航车速，并按该车速控制车辆。Set the current speed to cruise speed and control the vehicle at that speed.

如已激活定速巡航功能：If cruise control is activated:

按下此键：巡航设定车速降低 1km/h。

Press this button: the cruise setting speed is reduced by 1km/h.

长按此键：巡航设定车速以 10km/h的速度持续降低。Long press this button: the cruise setting speed will be continuously reduced at a speed of 10km/h.



注意

上下坡行驶时，巡航实际车速可能与设置的车速有所偏差。下坡车速加快时，可利用刹车踏板减速，这将暂停定速巡航功能。如需恢复原来设定的车速，按下巡航恢复/加速键即可。

When driving up and down hills, the actual cruising speed may deviate from the set speed. When driving downhill faster, use the brake pedal to slow down, which will suspend cruise control. To restore the original set speed, press the cruise resume/accelerate button.

定速巡航开启和暂停

Cruise control on and off

开启条件 Start-up condition

- 1 按下定速巡航键。Press the cruise control button.
- 2 车速在40~185km/h范围内。The vehicle speed is within the range of 40~185km/h.
- 3 按下车速设置/减速键。Press the vehicle speed setting/deceleration button.
- 4 刹车踏板未踩下。The brake pedal was not depressed.
- 5 档位挂入D档。The gear is put into D gear.
- 6 系统没有故障。The system is not faulty.

暂停条件 Suspend condition

以下任何一种方法均可暂停定速巡航功能：

The cruise control function can be suspended by any of the following methods:

- 1 轻踩刹车踏板。Lightly depress the brake pedal.
- 2 挂入P档、N档或R档。Engage in P, N or R gear.
- 3 按下巡航暂停键。Press the cruise pause button.
- 4 再次按下定速巡航键。Press the cruise control button again.
- 5 系统有故障。The system is faulty.

第1、2、3种方式只是暂停巡航模式，满足条件时可通过按下巡航恢复/加速键恢复巡航；第4、5种方式则完全关闭巡航。

The 1st, 2nd, and 3rd methods are just to suspend the cruise mode. When the conditions are met, the cruise can be resumed by pressing the cruise resume/accelerate button; the 4th and 5th methods are to completely turn off the cruise.

定速巡航功能恢复 The cruise control function is restored

当定速巡航功能暂停时，如需恢复定速巡航功能，可先加速到40km/h

以上，再按下巡航恢复/加速键重新进入巡航状态，车辆将恢复原来设定的巡航速度。

When the cruise control function is suspended, if you want to resume the cruise control function, you can first accelerate to more than 40km/h, and then press the cruise return/acceleration button to re-enter the cruise state, and the vehicle will return to the preset cruise speed.

按下定速巡航键取消巡航功能时，系统将完全关闭巡航，并取消关闭前设定的巡航速度。

When you press the cruise control button to cancel the cruise function, the system will completely turn off the cruise and cancel the cruise speed set before turning off.

改变设定的车速 Change the set speed

可以用以下任何一种方法改变定速巡航车速：

The cruise control speed can be changed in any of the following ways:

- 1 按下巡航恢复/加速键或车速设置/减速键，以提高/降低车速。Press the cruise resume/accelerate key or vehicle speed setting/deceleration button to increase/decrease the vehicle speed.
- 2 踩下油门踏板，当车速提高到所需状态时松开踏板，并按下车速设置/减速键。Depress the accelerator pedal, release the pedal when the speed increases to the desired state, and press the speed setting/slow down button.
- 3 踩下刹车踏板，当车速降低到所需状态时松开踏板，并按下车速设置/减速键。Depress the brake pedal, release the pedal when the vehicle speed drops to the desired state, and press the speed setting/slow down button.

自适应巡航（ACC）系统 *Adaptive Cruise (ACC) System*

利用ACC系统，可使车辆在车速0~130km/h的范围内设定任意车速行驶，也可以在系统允许的跟车距离范围内进行跟车巡航。根据前方是否有车辆，系统还可以在车速控制和车距控制之间自动切换。

Using ACC system, the vehicle can run at any speed within the range of 0-130km/h, and can also follow the vehicle within the range of

the following distance allowed by the system. The system can also automatically switch between speed control and distance control depending on whether there is a vehicle ahead.

警告 Warning

- ACC 系统不是一个安全系统也不是障碍物探测器或者碰撞警告系统，而是一个舒适性系统，因此，在 ACC 系统开启过程中，驾驶员始终都要注意观察路况、保持对车辆的监控并且对车辆负有全部责任。□
- The ACC system is neither a safety system nor an obstacle detector or a collision warning system, but a comfort system. Therefore, when the ACC system is turned on, the driver should always pay attention to observe the road, maintain control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.

警告 Warning

- ACC 系统适合在高速公路和路况良好的道路使用，不适合在城市道路或山路上使用。
- The ACC system is suitable for use on highways and roads with good road conditions, but not for use on urban roads or mountain roads.
- 为安全起见，在市区行驶、交通拥挤、弯曲道路情况下，请您谨慎使用 ACC 系统，密切关注周边环境，并随时准备接管车辆。□
- For the sake of safety, please use the ACC system carefully, pay close attention to the surrounding environment, and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time when driving in urban areas, in heavy traffic and on curvy roads.
- 在山坡道路、光滑道路（容易发生滑水现象）、路况恶劣的道路（例如：湿滑路面、积水路面、碎石路面、施工路面等）以及能见度低的恶劣天气（如：大雾、雨天或雪天等）、或雪、冰、雾、污渍、灰尘挡住传感器等情况下，不允许使用 ACC 系统，否则有事故发生的危险！
- On hillside roads, slippery roads (prone to hydroplaning), roads with bad road conditions (such as slippery roads, waterlogged roads, gravel roads, construction roads, etc.) and bad weather with low visibility (such as heavy fog, it is not allowed to use the ACC system when the sensor is blocked by snow, ice, fog, dirt, dust, etc., otherwise there is a danger of an accident!
- ACC 系统只能调节与前方行驶车辆之间的车距，通常不能探测到其他车道上的车辆、车辆其他侧面（除尾部以外）、儿童、行人、动物或其他物体并为其施加制动。□
- The ACC system can only adjust the distance from the vehicle in front, and usually cannot detect and apply the brakes to vehicles in other lanes, other sides of the vehicle (except the rear), children, pedestrians, animals or other objects.

警告 Warning

- 如果同一条车道上有迎面来车，ACC 系统不会做出反应。
- If there is an oncoming vehicle in the same lane, the ACC system will not respond.
- 在拐弯车道、高速公路出口或施工路段行驶时，要暂时关闭 ACC 系统。
- Temporarily turn off the ACC system when driving in turning lanes, highway exits or construction sections.
- ACC 系统可以辅助驾驶员，但不能代替驾驶员驾驶。即使 ACC 系统开启，驾驶员也必须谨慎驾驶，随时做好接管车辆的准备，并且需要遵守交通规则。□
- The ACC system can assist the driver, but cannot replace the driver. Even when the ACC system is on, the driver must drive carefully, be ready to take over the vehicle at all times, and need to obey the traffic rules.
- 请驾驶员根据当前道路、交通及天气状况合理设定自适应巡航车速和跟车距离，且设定车速不宜过高，以免发生事故。□
- Please set the adaptive cruise speed and following distance reasonably according to the current road, traffic and weather conditions, and the set speed should not be too high to avoid accidents.
- 在某些情况下（前方车辆相对速度过大、突然减速、停车、快速换道或安全距离过小等），ACC 系统可能没有时间减速，为了避免与前方车辆的碰撞，驾驶员始终都要注意观察路况，保持对车辆的监控并对车辆负有全部责任。□
- In some cases (too large relative speed of the vehicle ahead, sudden deceleration, parking, rapid lane change or too small safety distance, etc.), the ACC system may not have time to decelerate. In order to avoid collision with the vehicle ahead, the driver must always pay attention to the road conditions, keep monitoring the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.



警告 Warning

- ACC 系统无法探测到跟车目标车辆上装载的突出其车身侧面、后端或车顶的物品或安装的附件。如前方车辆装有上述特殊装载物或特殊设备，超越此类车辆时务必关闭 ACC 系统，驾驶员应视情况主动踩刹车。
- The ACC system cannot detect items or accessories mounted on the following target vehicle that protrude from the sides, rear end or roof of the vehicle. If the vehicle ahead is equipped with the above-mentioned special loads or special equipment, be sure to turn off the ACC system when overtaking such vehicle, and the driver should actively depress the brakes according to the situation.
- 牵引拖车行驶时请勿开启 ACC 系统。□
- Do not turn on the ACC system when towing a trailer.
- 驾驶员可以随时踩下油门踏板提高车速。松开油门踏板后，车速会逐渐恢复原设定的自适应巡航车速。但驾驶员需注意无意中长时间踩下油门踏板会使 ACC 系统不能自行开启，可能会与前车发生碰撞。
- The driver can increase the speed by depressing the accelerator pedal at any time. After releasing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed will gradually return to the original adaptive cruise speed. However, the driver should pay attention to inadvertently depressing the accelerator pedal for a long time, which will prevent the ACC system from turning on by itself, and may collide with the vehicle in front.
- ACC 系统使车辆停止时，务必做好踩下刹车踏板的准备。□
- Be prepared to depress the brake pedal when the ACC system stops the vehicle.
- ACC 系统使车辆停止时，驾驶员在离开车辆前务必将换挡杆置于 P 档并关闭启动开关
- When the ACC system stops the vehicle, the driver must put the shift lever in the P position and turn off the start switch before leaving the vehicle.



注意 Warning

- 为安全起见，车辆熄火后会删除已设定的车速。
- For safety reasons, the set speed will be deleted after the vehicle is turned off.
- 如果组合仪表提示【ACC 功能自动退出】且无法再次开启 ACC 系统，则表明车辆在此次发动机运行期间出现异常情况，需要重新启动车辆。□
- If the instrument pack prompts [ACC function automatically exits] and the ACC system cannot be turned on again, it means that the vehicle has abnormal conditions during this engine operation, and the vehicle needs to be restarted.
- 当 TCS 系统或 ESP 系统被触发时，如果 ACC 系统正在控制车辆，则 ACC 系统会自动关闭。□
- When the TCS system or ESP system is activated, if the ACC system is controlling the vehicle, the ACC system will automatically turn off.
- 如果 TCS 系统或 ESP 系统处于关闭状态，则 ACC 系统无法开启。□
- If the TCS system or ESP system is off, the ACC system cannot be turned on.
- 当路况允许安全使用 ACC 系统时，ACC 系统可以手动开启。□
- When the road conditions allow safe use of the ACC system, the ACC system can be turned on manually.
- 执行更换前视摄像头、前挡风玻璃、车辆四轮定位以及改装车身底盘等影响摄像头位置的一切操作后，系统需要重新标定，否则系统性能将会降低或无法正常工作。□
- After performing all operations that affect the position of the camera, such as replacing the front-view camera, front windshield, vehicle four-wheel alignment, and modifying the body chassis, the system needs to be re-calibrated, otherwise the system performance will be degraded or cannot work normally.

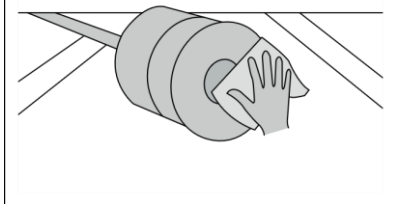


注意 Notice

- 为不影响摄像头性能，摄像头探测部位不得有异物（如标贴、加贴等）遮挡。
- In order not to affect the performance of the camera, the detection part of the camera must not be blocked by foreign objects (such as labels, attachments).
- 内后视镜前方挡风玻璃的摄像头传感器可能会被雪、冰、灰尘或泥挡住。需要清洁这些区域，保证 ACC 系统能够正常运行。
- The camera sensor on the front windshield of the in-rearview mirror can get blocked by snow, ice, dust or mud. These areas need to be cleaned to ensure the normal operation of the ACC system.
- 在下雪、大雨、大雾或道路喷水情况下，ACC 系统的运行可能会受到限制。□
- The operation of the ACC system may be limited in snow, heavy rain, fog or road spray.
- 结构性改装车辆可能恶化 ACC 系统。□
- Structurally modified vehicles may deteriorate the ACC system.

请清洁摄像头

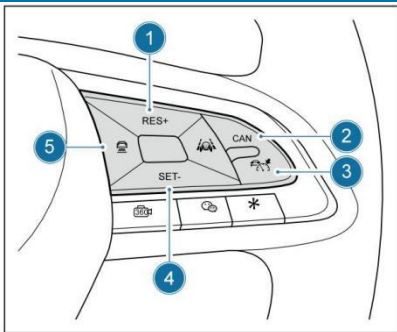
Please clean the camera



当前视摄像头需要清洁时，组合仪表会显示提示信息。此时请使用雨刮喷水功能对前挡风玻璃进行清洁或联系东风风行特约服务站。

When the front-view camera needs cleaning, the instrument pack will display a prompt message. At this time, please use the wiper spray function to clean the front windshield or contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

按键说明 Button description



按键介绍 Button introduction

1 自适应巡航车速恢复/加速键
Adaptive cruise speed recovery/accelerator button

恢复原设定的车速，并以该车速控制车辆。

Return to the preset speed and control the vehicle at that speed.

如已开启巡航功能：

If cruise function is enabled:

按下此键：巡航设定车速提高 1km/h。
长按此键：巡航设定车速以 10km/h 的速度持续升高。

Press this button: the cruise setting speed is increased by 1km/h. Long press this button: the cruise setting speed will continue to increase at a speed of 10km/h.

2 自适应巡航暂停键
Adaptive cruise pause button
按下此键可以暂停巡航功能。

Press this button to pause the cruise function.

3 自适应巡航键
Adaptive cruise button

按下此按键可以开启或关闭 ACC 系统。
Press this button to turn the ACC system on or off.

4 自适应巡航车速设置/减速键
Adaptive cruise speed setting/deceleration button

将当前的车速设置为巡航车速，并按该车速控制车辆。

Set the current speed to cruise speed and control the vehicle at that speed.

如已开启巡航功能：

If cruise function is enabled:

按下此键：巡航设定车速降低 1km/h。
长按此键：巡航设定车速以 10km/h 的持续降低。

Press this button : the cruise setting speed is reduced by 1km/h. Long press this button: the cruise setting speed is continuously reduced by 10km/h.

5 车距调节键

Distance adjustment button

设定与前方车辆之间的跟车距离。可设定近、中、远、超远四种模式。

Set the following distance to the vehicle ahead. Four modes of near, medium, far and ultra-far can be set.

自适应巡航开启和关闭 Adaptive cruise on and off

开启ACC系统时，组合仪表里的自适应巡航指示灯（白色）点亮，同时组合仪表显示设定的自适应巡航车速和ACC系统状态。

When the ACC system is turned on, the adaptive cruise indicator (white) in the instrument pack lights up, and the instrument pack displays the set adaptive cruise speed and ACC system status.

ACC系统启动条件 ACC System Start Condition

- 按下自适应巡航键。□
- Press the adaptive cruise button.
- 发动机处于运转状态。□
- The engine is running.
- 档位在中D档。□
- The gear is in D gear.
- 四车门、后背门和发动机舱盖均处于关闭状态。□
- The four doors, tail gate and bonnet are all closed.
- 刹车踏板未踩下。□
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- 车速不低于 30km/h。□
- The vehicle speed is not less than 30km/h.
- ESP 系统无故障。□
- The ESP system is not faulty.
- 驻车制动未启用。□
- The parking brake is not activated.
- 变速器无故障。□
- The transmission is fault-free.
- 发动机无故障。□
- The engine is not faulty.

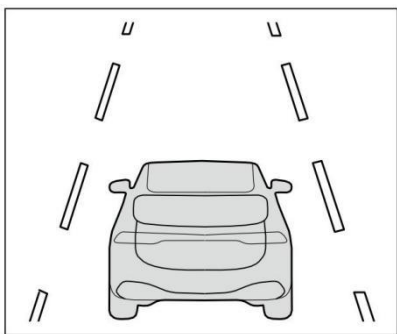
跟车显示 Car follow display

在拥堵的城市路段，ACC 系统能控制本车跟随前车减速至停止状态，如果

3 秒内前车重新驶动，ACC 系统会控制本车自动跟随。如果前车停车时间较长，可以通过按下巡航恢复/加速键或轻踩油门踏板重新开启ACC 系统。

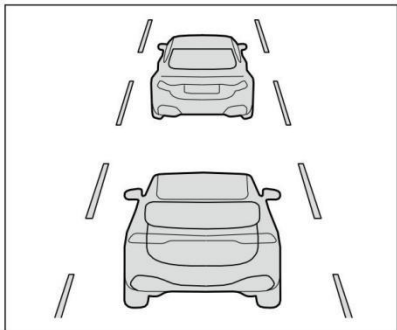
In a congested urban road section, the ACC system can control the vehicle to follow the vehicle in front to decelerate to a stop state. If the vehicle in front moves again within 3 seconds, the ACC system will control the vehicle to follow automatically. If the vehicle ahead stops for a long time, the ACC system can be reactivated by pressing the cruise resume/accelerator button or lightly depressing the accelerator pedal.

跟车示意图 Car following diagram



未检测到前车，组合仪表主界面不显示前车图标。

If the vehicle in front is not detected, the icon of the vehicle ahead will not be displayed on the main interface of the instrument pack.



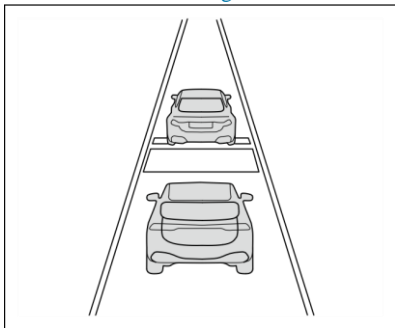
检测到有前车时，组合仪表主界面显示前车图标。

When a vehicle in front is detected, the icon of the vehicle ahead will be displayed on the main interface of the instrument pack.

警告 Warning

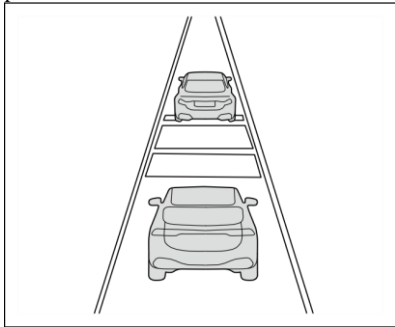
- 跟随车辆示意图仅在探测到同一车道上同方向行驶的车辆时显示。
- The following vehicle diagram is only displayed when a vehicle traveling in the same direction in the same lane is detected.
- 如果跟随车辆示意图没有显示，则 ACC 系统不会对前方车辆做出反应或施加制动。
- If the following vehicle diagram is not shown, the ACC system will not react or apply the brakes to the vehicle ahead

跟车距离 Car-following distance



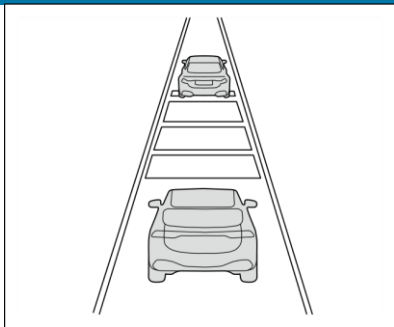
跟车距离设定为近时，组合仪表显示如上图。

When the following distance is set to close, the instrument pack is as shown in the picture above.



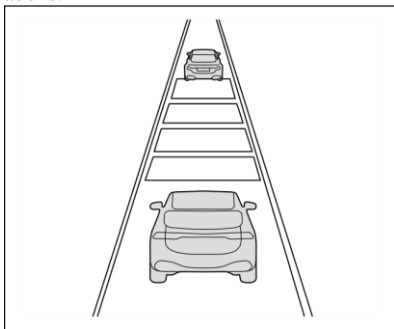
跟车距离设定为中时，组合仪表显示如上图。

When the following distance is set to medium, the instrument pack is as shown in the picture above.



跟车距离设定为远时，组合仪表显示如上图。

When the following distance is set to far, the instrument pack is as shown in the figure above.



跟车距离设定为超远时，组合仪表显示如上图。

When the following distance is set to ultra far, the instrument pack is as shown in the figure above.



自适应巡航状态及速度显示

Adaptive cruise status and speed display

指示灯图标 Indicator icon	说明 Instructions
	指示灯白色常亮：ACC 系统打开但未激活。 Steady white indicator light: ACC system is on but not activated.
	指示灯绿色常亮：ACC 系统打开且处于工作状态。 Steady green indicator light: The ACC system is on and working.
	指示灯绿色闪烁：部件故障导致 ACC 系统退出，但仍执行完当前动作。 Green flashing indicator: A component failure has caused the ACC system to exit, but the current action is still performed.

在某些工况下，组合仪表会出现上述提示之外的文字信息和符号，需要高度注意。

Under certain conditions, the instrument pack will display text information and symbols other than the above prompts, which requires great attention.

显示界面 Display interface	说明 Instructions
	<p>指示灯白色常亮：ACC系统打开但工作条件不满足。 Steady white indicator light is: the ACC system is on but the working conditions are</p>
	<p>前车起步，提醒驾驶员恢复ACC系统。提示文字：请轻踩油门或按RES+键。 The vehicle in front starts to remind the driver to restore the ACC system. Prompt text: Please lightly step on the accelerator or press the RES+ button.</p>

警告

如果组合仪表显示界面与驾驶员实际观察到的情况不符，请驾驶员接管控制车辆，并按照实际情况驾驶车辆。

If the display interface of the instrument pack does not match the actual situation observed by the driver, ask the driver to take over control of the vehicle and drive the vehicle according to the actual situation.

- 在下列情况下，ACC系统可能自动解除且驾驶员需要施加制动以降低车速：
- The ACC system may automatically disengage and the driver needs to apply the brakes to reduce the vehicle speed in the following situations:
- 系统传感器被挡住。
- System sensors are blocked.
- TCS系统或ESP系统激活或关闭。
- The TCS system or ESP system is activated or closed.
- 系统没有检测到跟车目标。
- The system did not detect a following target.
- 系统中存在故障。
- There is a fault in the system.

需驾驶员接管车辆的情况 Circumstances that require the

driver to take over the vehicle



由于ACC系统无法提供车辆的最大制动力，在特定行驶情形下，ACC系统的减速度不足以使本车与前行物体保持足够车距。在这些紧急情况中，ACC系统会要求驾驶员及时接管车辆。

Since the ACC system cannot provide the maximum braking force of the vehicle, in certain driving situations, the deceleration ability of the ACC system is insufficient to keep the vehicle and the preceding object at a sufficient distance. In these emergency situations, the ACC system asks the driver to take over the vehicle in time.



ACC系统会向驾驶员发出视觉和听觉的指示，组合仪表显示屏上会出现一个红色方向盘标记，上方出现文字【请接管车辆】，同时伴随一声蜂鸣音，此时，需驾驶员接管车辆。

The ACC system will send visual and audible instructions to the driver, a red steering wheel mark will appear on the display of the instrument pack, the text [Please take over the vehicle] will appear above, and a beep will sound, at this time, the driver needs to take over the vehicle.



注意 Notice

- ACC 系统要求驾驶员接管车辆后，如果车辆继续移动，则驾驶员必须踩下刹车踏板对车辆施加制动。□
- After the ACC system requires the driver to take over the vehicle, if the vehicle continues to move, the driver must depress the brake pedal to apply the brakes to the vehicle.
- 如果踩下油门踏板使车辆车速超过了设置的车速，驾驶员将不会收到接管请求。□
- If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal, the driver will not receive a takeover request.

系统功能可能受限的情况

Circumstances where system functionality may be limited

ACC 系统在行驶中受物理规律和系统本身的制约。此外，在一定的条件下，ACC 系统的反应可能与驾驶员的想法有差别。因此，驾驶员始终都要予以关注，必要时自行干预。

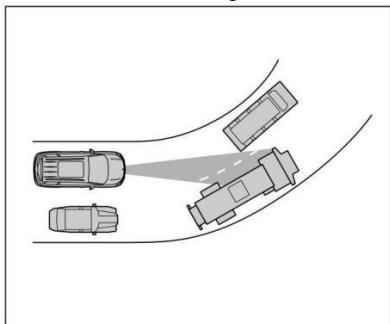
The ACC system is restricted by physical laws and the system itself during driving. Furthermore, under certain conditions, the ACC system may react differently from the driver's thoughts. The driver therefore always has to pay attention and intervene himself if necessary.



警告 Warning

摄像头的能见度可能会由于光照强烈、环境过暗、下雨、下雪以及油污、灰尘挡住传感器等情况而降低，由此导致不能及时识别或者根本就无法识别出前方行驶的跟车目标，必要时请自行干预。
The visibility of the camera may be reduced due to strong light, too dark environment, rain, snow, dirt, dust blocking the sensor, etc., resulting in failure to recognize the following target in time or not at all. Please intervene yourself.

1 弯道行驶。Driving on a curve.

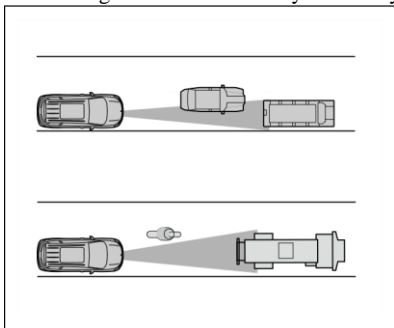


在驶入、经过或驶出弯道时，ACC 系统可能会丢失或更换目标车辆，从而导致车辆突然加速、制动或失去控制，请高度关注并随时准备接管。

When entering, passing or exiting a curve, the ACC system may lose or replace the target vehicle, resulting in sudden acceleration, braking or loss of control of the vehicle, please be attentive and ready to take over.

2 不在同一直线或不易识别的车辆

Vehicles that are not in the same straight line or are not easy to identify.



对于不在同一条直线上行驶的车辆（相邻车道的车辆变道驶入），如果未进入摄像头传感器识别范围，传感器可能探测不到这些车辆。

Vehicles that do not travel in the same straight line (vehicles in adjacent lanes change lanes) may not be detected by the sensors if they are not within the recognition range of the camera sensor.

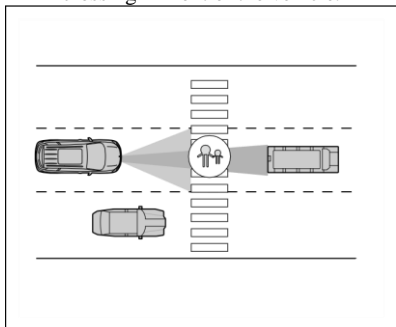
ACC 系统无法保证能识别出行驶路径上所有类型的车辆，尤其不易识别电动车、自行车、摩托车等狭窄车辆，或底盘很高、装载物超过车身的车辆。开启 ACC 系统时如遇到以上情况，驾驶员需密切关注车辆周围环境，必要时应主动接管车辆。

The ACC system cannot guarantee that it can recognize all types of vehicles on the driving path, especially narrow vehicles such as electric vehicles, bicycles, motorcycles, or vehicles with high chassis and loads exceeding the body. If the above situations are encountered when the ACC system is turned on, the driver should pay close attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle and take the initiative to take over the vehicle if necessary.

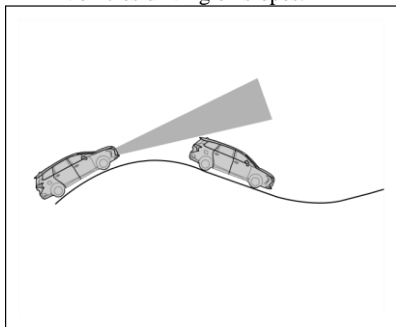
3 ACC系统无法探测行人，驾驶员一旦

发现车辆行驶方向前方有行人穿行，必须主动接管车辆。

The ACC system cannot detect pedestrians. The driver must take the initiative to take over the vehicle once he finds that there is a pedestrian crossing in front of the vehicle.



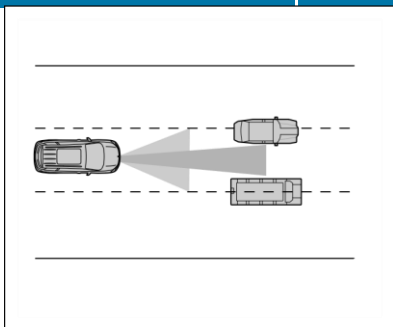
4 坡路行驶的车辆。
Vehicles driving on slopes.



在陡峭的坡道上请不要使用ACC系统。在陡峭的坡道上，ACC系统不能探测到同一车道上的车辆，且当驾驶员频繁踩刹车时，ACC系统将自动关闭。

Do not use the ACC system on steep slopes. On steep slopes, the ACC system cannot detect vehicles in the same lane, and when the driver frequently depresses the brakes, the ACC system will automatically turn off.

5 狭窄车道行驶的车辆。
Vehicles driving in narrow lanes.

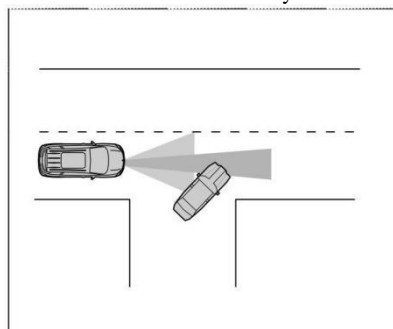


ACC系统无法精确判断前方车道宽度，当感觉无法正常通过时，请立即通过踩下刹车踏板关闭ACC系统，并接管车辆。

The ACC system cannot accurately judge the width of the lane ahead. When you feel that you cannot pass normally, please immediately depress the brake pedal to turn off the ACC system and take over the vehicle.

6 前方横向插入的车辆。

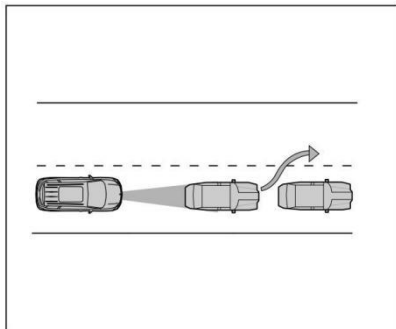
Vehicles inserted laterally in front.



当车辆行驶方向前方突然横向插入其他车辆时，ACC系统可能无法快速控制车辆或紧急制动，此时需要驾驶员留意本车行驶方向前方的交通状况。

When other vehicles are suddenly inserted laterally in front of the vehicle's driving direction, the ACC system may not be able to quickly control the vehicle or make emergency braking. At this time, the driver needs to pay attention to the traffic conditions ahead of the vehicle's driving direction.

7 静止车辆。 Stationary vehicles.



如果前方的车辆在一辆停止的车辆后面忽然变换到另一车道，系统可能没有足够的时间进行制动，必要时需要驾驶员自行接管车辆。

If the vehicle ahead suddenly changes to another lane behind a stopped vehicle, the system may not have enough time to brake and the driver will need to take over the vehicle if necessary.

车道保持辅助系统 (LKA) * Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)*

LKA系统可以在车速为 70~130km/h 的范围内保持车辆沿车道线直线行驶。在车道线曲率较小的弯道，系统自动辅助驾驶员打方向盘，从而通过弯道。

The LKA system can keep the vehicle running straight along the lane line within the range of 70~130km/h. In curves with less curvature of the lane line, the system automatically assists the driver to turn the steering wheel to pass the curve.

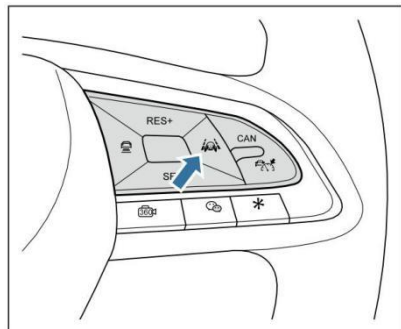
LKA系统也存在某些技术局限性，因此，在某些条件下驾驶员必须主动干预转向。必要时，系统会通过声光报警提示驾驶员主动操控方向盘转向。

The LKA system also has certain technical limitations, so that the driver must actively intervene in the steering under certain conditions. When necessary, the system will prompt the driver to actively control the steering wheel steering through sound and light alarms.

警告 Warning

- LKA 系统是一个舒适性系统，不具备处理复杂交通状况或环境突变等特殊工况的能力。驾驶员必须一直保持对车辆方向盘的控制并且对车辆负有全部责任。□
- The LKA system is a comfort system and does not have the ability to deal with special working conditions such as complex traffic conditions or sudden changes in the environment. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle's steering wheel at all times and be solely responsible for the vehicle.
- LKA 系统适合在高速公路和路况良好的道路上使用，不适合在城市道路或者山路上使用。
- LKA system is suitable for use on highways and roads with good road conditions, unsuitable for use on urban roads or mountain roads.
- LKA 系统可以辅助驾驶员，但是不能代替驾驶员进行驾驶。即使 LKA 系统处在激活状态，驾驶员也必须谨慎驾驶。□
- The LKA system can assist the driver, but cannot replace the driver to drive. Even when the LKA system is active, the driver must drive with caution.
- LKA 系统允许驾驶员短时间内不对方向盘进行操作，但时间过长 LKA 系统会自动退出。驾驶员须时刻准备接管方向盘。□
- The LKA system allows the driver not to operate the steering wheel for a short time, but the LKA system will automatically exit if the time is too long. The driver must always be ready to take over the steering wheel.
- 道路环境较为恶劣或者路况较复杂时不建议使用 LKA 系□
- It is not recommended to use the LKA system when the road environment is harsh or the road conditions are complex.

按键说明 Button description



按下车道保持键开启或关闭系统。

Press the lane keep button to turn the system on or off.

车道保持辅助开启和关闭

Lane keeping assist on and off

按下车道保持键，组合仪表上车道保持工作指示灯（白色）点亮，表示 LKA 系统处于开启状态。

Press the lane keeping button, the lane keeping indicator (white) on the instrument pack lights up, indicating that the LKA system is on.

功能开启后，如果系统检测到车道线，且车速大于 70km/h，其它功能条件也满足要求，系统会自动进入激活状态，激活条件主要如下：

After the function is enabled, if the system detects lane lines and the speed is greater than 70km/h, and other functional conditions meet the requirements, the system will automatically enter the activation state, and the activation conditions are mainly as follows:

- 所有车门必须关闭。□
- All car doors must be closed.
- EPS 系统无故障。□
- The EPS system is fault-free.
- ESP 系统无故障。
- The EPS system is fault-free.
- ESP 系统未激活。□
- The ESP system is not activated.
- 变速器无故障。□
- The transmission is fault-free.
- 发动机无故障。□
- The engine is not faulty.
- 档位处于 D 档。□
- The gear is in D gear.

如果任意一侧车道线不清晰，或者车速低于 65km/h，或满足其他退出条件，系统会退出激活状态。

If the lane lines on either side are unclear, or if the vehicle speed is lower than 65km/h, or if other exit conditions are met, the system will be deactivated.

如果 LKA 系统处于激活状态，驾驶员主动操控方向盘变向或打转向灯准备变道，LKA 系统会暂时退出。当驾驶员撤销主动操控方向盘变向或打转向灯操作且车辆位于车道中线附近时，LKA 系统重新启动。

If the LKA system is active and the driver actively controls the steering wheel to change direction or turns on the turn signal to prepare for a lane change, the LKA system will temporarily exit. The LKA system reactivates when the driver cancels active steering wheel change or turns on the turn signal and the vehicle is near the lane center line.

系统工作状态显示

System working status display

组合仪表上显示车道偏离报警系统信息：

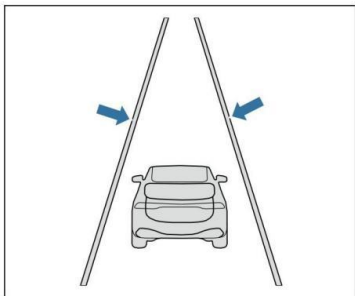
Lane departure warning system information is displayed on the instrument pack:

- LKA系统关闭，组合仪表车道保持系统开启指示灯熄灭。□
- The LKA system is turned off, and the lane keeping system on indicator light of the instrument pack is turned off.
- LKA 系统开启但不满足工作条件，组合仪表车道保持系统开启指示灯（白色）常亮。□
- The LKA system is turned on but does not meet the working conditions, and the indicator light (white) of the lane keeping system on the instrument pack is always on.
- LKA系统激活，组合仪表车道保持系统开启指示灯（绿色）常亮。The LKA system is activated, and the lane keeping system on indicator (green) on the instrument cluster is always on.
- 外部故障会导致LKA 系统退出，但仍将执行完当前动作，组合仪表车道保持系统开启指示灯（绿色）闪烁，同时发出接管请求。□

- External failure will cause the LKA system to exit, but the current action will still be performed, the instrument pack lane keeping system on indicator (green) flashes, and a takeover request is issued at the same time.

组合仪表上显示车道线检测状态图标

The lane line detection status icon is displayed on the instrument pack



- 未检测到车道线，主界面无车道线显示。□
- No lane lines are detected, and no lane lines are displayed on the main interface.
- 检测到两侧车道线，主界面两侧车道线是白色。□
- The lane lines on both sides are detected, and the lane lines on both sides of the main interface are white.
- 检测到两侧车道线，并且 LKA 系统激活时，两侧车道线是蓝色。□
- When the lane lines on both sides are detected and the LKA system is activated, the lane lines on both sides are blue.

需驾驶员接管车辆的情况

Circumstances that require the driver to take over the vehicle



组合仪表持续显示【请接管车辆】文字提醒，同时发出报警声，此时需要驾驶员接管方向盘。

The instrument pack continuously displays the text reminder "Please take over the vehicle", and at the same time an alarm sounds, the driver needs to take over the steering wheel at this time.



注意 Notice

- 如果 LKA 系统在转弯时达到系统转向能力上限，超过一定时间，系统会发出接管提示，此时驾驶员需要主动接管方向盘；□
- If the LKA system reaches the upper limit of the steering capability of the system when turning, and exceeds a certain time, the system will issue a takeover prompt, and the driver needs to take the initiative to take over the steering wheel;
- 如果 LKA 系统判断前方弯道超出系统的通过能力，LKA 系统会发出接管提示，此时驾驶员需要主动接管方向盘；□
- If the LKA system judges that the curve ahead exceeds the ability of the system to pass, the LKA system will issue a takeover prompt, and the driver needs to take the initiative to take over the steering wheel;
- 如果 LKA 系统检测到方向盘有异常抖动，LKA 系统会发出接管提示，此时驾驶员需要主动接管方向盘；□
- If the LKA system detects that the steering wheel is shaking abnormally, the LKA system will issue a takeover prompt, and the driver needs to take the initiative to take over the steering wheel;
- 如果 LKA 系统检测到驾驶员一段时间内没有手扶方向盘，LKA 系统会发出驾驶员脱手警示，此时驾驶员需要主动接管方向盘；□
- If the LKA system detects that the driver has not held the steering wheel for a period of time, the LKA system will issue a warning that the driver has let go, and the driver needs to take the initiative to take over the steering wheel;
- LKA 系统要求驾驶员接管车辆后，如车辆方向盘仍在自动操控，则驾驶员必须主动操控方向盘控制车辆方向。□
- LKA system requires the driver to take over the vehicle, if the steering wheel of the vehicle is still under automatic control, the driver must actively control the steering wheel to control the direction of the vehicle.

系统功能可能受限的情况

Circumstances where system functionality may be limited

LKA 系统的转向能力有限，并不能保证在有效车速范围内能通过任何曲率大小的弯道。过弯道时驾驶员必须集中注意力并时刻准备接管方向盘。

The steering capability of the LKA system is limited and cannot guarantee the ability to negotiate curves of any degree of curvature within the effective vehicle speed range. The driver must concentrate and be ready to take over the steering wheel when cornering.

LKA 系统只能识别具有一定对比度的车道线、路缘，对于模糊，污损车道线可能会识别不准或无法识别，对于路面一些色差对比度大的车痕、水印或阴影，可能会识别错误。车道线检测不准可能会导致功能退出或转向异常。

The LKA system can only recognize lane lines and curbs with a certain contrast. For blurred and contaminated lane lines, it may be inaccurate or impossible to recognize. For some car marks, watermarks or shadows with large color difference and contrast on the road, it may be recognized incorrectly. Inaccurate lane line detection may cause the function to exit or turn abnormally.

以下情况下LKA系统可能无法正常工作：

The LKA system may not work properly under the following conditions:

- 在前挡风玻璃上有冰雪或灰尘污渍挡住摄像头传感器时。□
- When there are ice, snow or dust stains on the front windshield blocking the camera sensor.
- 大雾、大雨或大雪等能见度较低的天气时。□
- When the visibility is low such as heavy fog, heavy rain or heavy snow.
- 车道线被其它障碍物遮挡时。□
- When the lane line is blocked by other obstacles.
- 车道线宽度过窄或弯道曲率过大时。
- When the width of the lane line is too narrow or the curvature of the curve is too large.
- 与前车距离过近导致摄像头视线被

遮挡时。

- When the distance to the vehicle in front is too close to block the view of the camera.
- 迎向强光行驶时。□
- When driving towards strong light.
- 在道线分叉，交汇，人行道或施工区域等复杂情况下行驶时。
- When driving in complex situations such as road bifurcations, intersections, sidewalks or construction areas.
- 路面有栏杆，树木或其它物体形成的阴影时。
- When the road is shadowed by railings, trees or other objects.
- 车道线模糊或者夜晚光线较弱时。
- When the lane lines are blurred or the light is weak at night.
- 在有雨雪覆盖的路面行驶时。□
- When driving on a road covered with rain and snow.
- 路面强烈颠簸或坑洼不平时。
- The road surface is strongly bumpy or uneven.

车辆操控稳定性与系统状态说明

Description of vehicle control stability and system status

- 当TCS 系统或ESP 系统激活时，如果LKA 系统正在控制车辆，则LKA 系统会退出。□
- If the LKA system is controlling the vehicle when the TCS system or the ESP system is activated, the LKA system will exit.
- 当路况允许安全使用LKA 系统时，LKA 系统可以恢复打开。□
- When road conditions allow safe use of the LKA system, the LKA system can be turned on again.

影响标定的因素说明

Description of factors affecting calibration

- 拆装内后视镜。□
- Removing and assembling the interior rearview mirror.
- 更换前挡风玻璃。□
- Replace the front windshield.

当执行更换前视摄像头、前挡风玻璃、车辆四轮定位以及改装车身底盘等影响摄像头位置的一切操作后，系统需要重新标定，否则系统性能将会降低或无法正常工作。

After performing all operations that affect the position of the camera, such as replacing the front-view camera, front windshield, vehicle four-wheel alignment, and modifying the body chassis, the system needs to be re-calibrated, otherwise the system performance will be degraded or it will not work properly.

功能限制

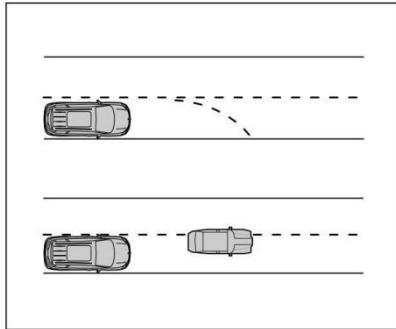
Functional limitations

在某些交通道路条件下，LKA 系统可能无法很好的做出反应，从而导致事故发生。为此，驾驶员需特别注意：

Under certain traffic road conditions, the LKA system may not respond well, resulting in an accident. For this reason, drivers need to pay special attention to:

1 路面有道路干扰线或前车遮挡车道线。

There is a road interference line on the road or the lane line is blocked by the preceding vehicle.



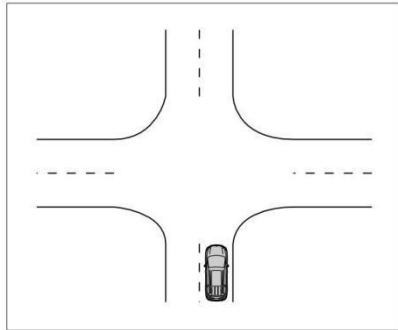
当车辆行驶前方道路存在较明显的道路干扰线或前车遮挡车道线时，LKA 系统可能自动退出或发生异常转向的现象。

When there are obvious road interference lines on the road ahead of the vehicle or the vehicle ahead blocks the lane line, the LKA system may automatically exit or abnormal steering may occur.

2

行驶至路口道线消失。

Drive until the road line disappears at the intersection.

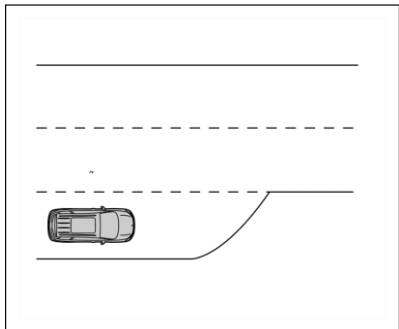


当车辆行驶至路口时，LKA 系统可能由于前方道线消失而自动退出，也可能由于路口人行横道和其他道路标志线的影响导致识别异常而发生异常转向。

When the vehicle reaches the intersection, the LKA system may automatically exit due to the disappearance of the road line ahead, or it may cause abnormal recognition and abnormal steering due to the influence of crosswalks and other road markings at the intersection.

3 道线交汇。

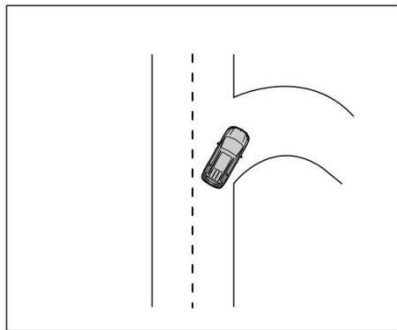
Road line intersection.



当车辆行驶至前方道线交汇处，LKA 系统可能由于识别前方道路线交汇无法通过而自动退出。

When the vehicle reaches the intersection of the road and line ahead, the LKA system may automatically exit because it recognizes that the intersection of the road and line ahead cannot be passed.

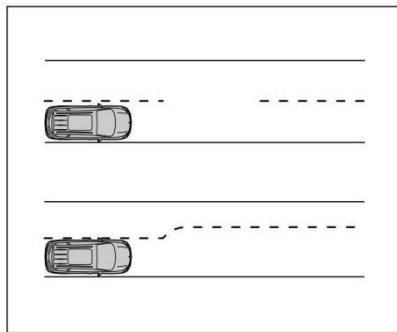
- 4 高速公路匝道。
Freeway ramps.



当车辆行驶至高速公路匝道时，LKA系统可能由于进入匝道时降速导致车速低于生效车速或识别到匝道曲率过大或进入匝道时车道线不清晰而自动退出。

When the vehicle is on a highway ramp, the LKA system may automatically exit due to the speed reduction when entering the ramp, resulting in the vehicle speed being lower than the effective speed, or recognizing that the ramp curvature is too large or the lane line is unclear when entering the ramp.

- 5 车道线模糊不清或车道过弯/过窄。
Blurred lane lines or curved/narrow lanes

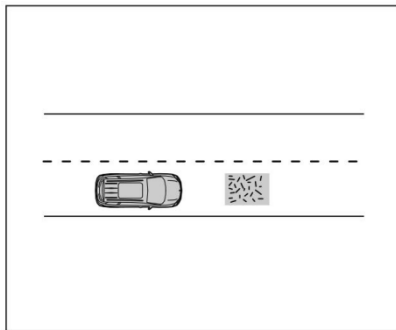


当车辆行驶前方道路路线模糊不清或前方车道过弯/过窄，LKA系统可能由于未识别到清晰道线或判断前方车道宽度不满足功能条件而退出。

When the road line in front of the vehicle is blurred or the lane ahead is curved/too narrow, the LKA system may

exit due to not recognizing the clear line or judging that the width of the front lane does not meet the functional conditions.

- 6 路面强烈颠簸或坑洼不平。
The road surface is strongly bumpy or uneven.



当车辆行驶至前方路面强烈颠簸或坑洼不平道路时，LKA系统可能由于方向盘异常波动，或由于车辆强烈颠簸导致道线识别异常而自动退出。

When the vehicle is driven to the road ahead with strong bumps or potholes, the LKA system may automatically exit due to abnormal steering wheel fluctuations, or abnormal road line recognition due to strong vehicle bumps.

交通拥堵辅助（TJA）系统* Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) system*

TJA系统可使车辆在车速0~130km/h的范围内设定任意需要的车速行驶，也可以在系统允许的跟车距离范围内进行跟车巡航。根据前方是否有车辆，系统还可以在车速控制和车距控制之间自动切换，并同时开启LKA系统。

The TJA system allows the vehicle to set any desired speed within the range of 0~130km/h, and can also follow the vehicle within the range of the following distance allowed by the system. Depending on whether there is a vehicle ahead, the system can also automatically switch between speed control and distance control, and activate the LKA system at the same time.



警告 Warning

- TJA 系统不是一个安全系统也不是障碍物探测器或者碰撞警告系统，而是一个舒适性系统，因此，在 TJA 系统开启过程中，驾驶员始终都要注意观察路况、保持对车辆的监控并且对车辆负有全部责任。□
- The TJA system is neither a safety system nor an obstacle detector or a collision warning system, but a comfort system. Therefore, when the TJA system is turned on, the driver should always pay attention to observe the road, maintain control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle..
- TJA 系统适合在高速公路和路况良好的道路使用，不适合在城市道路或山路上使用。□
- TJA system is suitable for use on highways and roads with good road conditions, unsuitable for use on urban roads or mountain roads.
- 为安全起见，在市区行驶、交通拥挤、弯曲道路情况下，请您谨慎使用 TJA 系统，密切关注周边环境，并随时准备接管车辆。□
- For the sake of safety, please use the TJA system with caution, pay close attention to the surrounding environment, and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time when driving in urban areas, in heavy traffic and on curvy roads.



警告 Warning

- 在山坡道路、光滑道路（容易发生潜水现象）、路况恶劣的道路（例如：湿滑路面、积水路面、碎石路面、施工路面等）以及能见度低的恶劣天气（如：大雾、雨天或雪天等），或雪、冰、雾、污浊、灰尘挡住传感器等情况下，请勿使用 TJA 系统，否则有事故发生的危险！
- On hillside roads, slippery roads (prone to hydroplaning), roads with bad road conditions (such as slippery roads, waterlogged roads, gravel roads, construction roads, etc.) and bad weather with low visibility (such as heavy fog, Do not use the TJA system when the sensor is blocked by snow, ice, fog, dirt, dust, etc., or there is a risk of accident!
- TJA 系统只能调节与前方行驶车辆之间的车距，通常不能探测到其他车道上的车辆、车辆其他侧面（除尾部以外）的儿童、行人、动物或其他物体并为其施加制动。□
- The TJA system can only adjust the distance from the vehicle in front, and usually cannot detect and apply brakes to vehicles in other lanes, children on other sides of the vehicle (except the rear), pedestrians, animals or other objects.
- 如果同一条车道上有迎面来车，TJA 系统不会做出反应。□
- The TJA system will not respond if there is an oncoming vehicle in the same lane.
- TJA 系统可以辅助驾驶员，但不能代替驾驶员驾驶。即使 TJA 系统处在激活状态，驾驶员也必须谨慎驾驶，随时做好接管车辆的准备，并且需要遵守交通规则。□
- The TJA system can assist the driver, but cannot replace the driver. Even with the TJA system active, the driver must drive cautiously, be ready to take over the vehicle at all times, and obey traffic rules.

警告 Warning

- 在拐弯车道、高速公路出口或施工路段行驶时，请暂时关闭 TJA 系统。□
- Please temporarily turn off the TJA system when driving in turning lanes, highway exits or construction sections.
- 请驾驶员根据当前道路、交通及天气状况合理设定巡航车速和跟车距离，且设定车速不宜过高，以免发生事故□
- Please set the cruising speed and following distance reasonably according to the current road, traffic and weather conditions, and the set speed should not be too high to avoid accidents.
- 在某些情况下（前方车辆相对速度过大、突然减速、停车、快速换道或安全距离过小等），TJA 系统可能没有时间降低车速以避免与前方车辆的碰撞。驾驶员始终都要注意观察路况，保持对车辆的监控并对车辆负有全部责任。□
- In some cases (too large relative speed of the vehicle ahead, sudden deceleration, parking, rapid lane change or too small safety distance, etc.), the TJA system may not have time to reduce the vehicle speed to avoid a collision with the vehicle ahead. The driver must always observe the road conditions, maintain monitoring of the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.
- TJA 系统无法探测到跟车目标车辆上装载的突出其车身侧面、后端或车顶的物品或安装的附件。如前方车辆装有上述特殊装载物或特殊设备，超越此类车辆时务必关闭 TJA 系统，驾驶员应视情况主动踩刹车踏板。□
- The TJA system cannot detect items or attached accessories mounted on the following target vehicle that protrude from the sides, rear end or roof of the vehicle. If the vehicle ahead is equipped with the above-mentioned special loads or special equipment, the TJA system must be turned off when overtaking such vehicles, and the driver should actively depress the brake pedal according to the situation.

警告 Warning

- 牵引拖车行驶时请勿开启 TJA 系统。□
- Do not turn on the TJA system when towing the trailer.
- 驾驶员可以随时踩下油门踏板提高车速。松开油门踏板后，车速会逐渐恢复原设定的自适应巡航车速。但驾驶员需注意无意中长时间踩下油门踏板会使 TJA 系统不能自行开启，可能会与前车发生碰撞。□
- The driver can increase the speed by depressing the accelerator pedal at any time. After releasing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed will gradually return to the original adaptive cruise speed. However, the driver should pay attention to inadvertently depressing the accelerator pedal for a long time, which will prevent the TJA system from turning on by itself, and may collide with the vehicle in front.
- 如果 TJA 系统已经使车辆停止，且 TJA 被解除、关闭或取消，则车辆将不再保持停止，可能会移动。TJA 系统使车辆停止时，务必做好踩下刹车踏板的准备。□
- If the TJA system has stopped the vehicle and the TJA is released, turned off or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer remain stopped and may move. Always be prepared to depress the brake pedal when the TJA system stops the vehicle.
- TJA 系统使车辆停止时，驾驶员在离开车辆前务必将车辆置于 P 档并关闭启动开关。□
- When the TJA system stops the vehicle, the driver must put the vehicle in the P position and turn off the start switch before leaving the vehicle.

🚗 注意 Notice

- 下雪、大雨、大雾或道路喷水情况下，TJA 系统的运行可能也会受到限制。
- The operation of the TJA system may also be limited in snow, heavy rain, fog or road spray conditions.
- 结构性改装车辆会恶化 TJA 系统。
- Structurally modified vehicles can degrade the TJA system.
- 为安全起见，车辆熄火后会删除已设定的车速。
- For safety reasons, the set speed is deleted when the vehicle is switched off
- 如果组合仪表提示【TJA 功能自动退出】且无法再次开启 TJA 系统，则表明车辆在此次发动机运行期间出现异常情况，需要重新启动车辆。
- If the combination meter prompts [TJA function automatically exits] and the TJA system cannot be turned on again, it means that the vehicle has abnormal conditions during this engine operation, and the vehicle needs to be restarted.
- 当路况允许安全使用 TJA 系统时，TJA 系统可以手动开启。□
- When the road conditions allow safe use of the TJA system, the TJA system can be turned on manually.
- 当更换前视摄像头、前挡风玻璃、车辆四轮定位以及改装车身底盘等影响摄像头位置的一切操作后，系统需要重新标定，否则系统性能将会降低或无法正常工作。□
- After replacing the front-view camera, front windshield, vehicle four-wheel alignment, and modifying the chassis and other operations that affect the position of the camera, the system needs to be re-calibrated, otherwise the system performance will be reduced or it will not work properly.
- 为不影响摄像头性能，摄像头探测部位不得有异物（如标贴、加装件等）遮挡。□
- In order not to affect the performance of the camera, the detection part of the camera must not be blocked by foreign objects (such as labels, attachments, etc.).

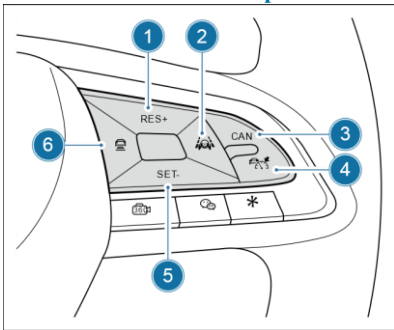
🚗 注意 Notice

- 内后视镜前方挡风玻璃的摄像头传感器可能会被雪、冰、灰尘或泥挡住。需要清洁这些区域，保证 TJA 系统正常运行。□
- The camera sensor of the windshield in front of the interior rear-view mirror may be blocked by snow, ice, dust or mud. These areas need to be cleaned for proper operation of the TJA system.

当前视摄像头需要清洁时，组合仪表会显示提示信息。此时请使用雨刮喷水功能对前挡风玻璃进行清洁或联系东风风行特约服务站。

When the front-view camera needs cleaning, the instrument pack will display a prompt message. At this time, please use the wiper spray function to clean the front windshield or contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

按键说明 Button description



- 1 自适应巡航车速恢复/加速键
Adaptive cruise speed resume/accelerator button
- 2 车道保持键
Lane keeping button
- 3 自适应巡航暂停键
Adaptive cruise pause button
- 4 自适应巡航键
Adaptive cruise button
- 5 自适应巡航车速设置/减速键
Adaptive cruise speed setting/deceleration button
- 6 车距调节键
Distance adjustment button

交通拥堵辅助开启和关闭

Traffic jam assist on and off

开启 TJA 系统时，组合仪表的智能领航指示灯点亮，同时组合仪表显示设定的巡航车速和TJA系统状态。

When the TJA system is turned on, the intelligent pilot indicator light of the instrument pack lights up, and the instrument pack displays the set cruising speed and the TJA system status at the same time.

交通拥堵辅助开启和关闭 Traffic jam assistant on and off

开启TJA系统时，组合仪表的智能领航指示灯点亮，同时组合仪表显示设定的巡航车速和TJA系统状态。

When the TJA system is enabled, the smart pilot indicator of the instrument pack is lit, and the instrument pack displays the set cruise speed and the status of the TJA system.

未开启ACC系统时，按下车道保持键，LKA系统开启；开启ACC系统时，按下车道保持键，TJA系统开启。车辆在保持ACC系统开启的基础上，增加LKA系统功能，再次按下此键可切换回ACC系统。

When ACC system is off, press the lane keeping button to start LKA system; when ACC system is turned on, press the lane keeping button to start TJA system. Add functions of LKA system on the basis of maintain ACC system, and press the button again to switch to ACC system.

未开启LKA系统时，按下自适应巡航键，ACC系统开启；开启LKA系统后，按下该键，TJA系统开启，车辆在保持LKA系统的基础上，增加ACC系统功能，再次按下此键可切换回LKA系统。

When LKA system is off, press the adaptative cruise button to turn on ACC system; when LKA system is turned on, press such button to enable TJA system. Add functions of ACC system on the basis of maintaining LKA system, and press the button again to switch to LKA system.

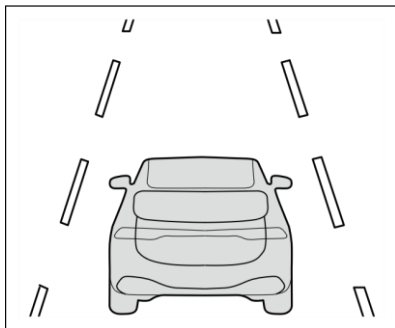
TJA 系统启动条件

Conditions of starting TJA system

- 发动机处于运转状态。
- The engine is working.
- 档位 in D 档。
- The gear is at D.
- 整车车门关闭状态。
- All car doors are closed.
- 刹车踏板未踩下。
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- 车速不低于 30km/h。
- Speed is not less than 30km/m.
- ESP 系统无故障。
- ESP is normal.
- EPB 开关拉起。
- The switch of EPB is pulled up.
- 变速器无故障。
- Transmission is normal.
- 发动机无故障。
- Engine is fault-free.

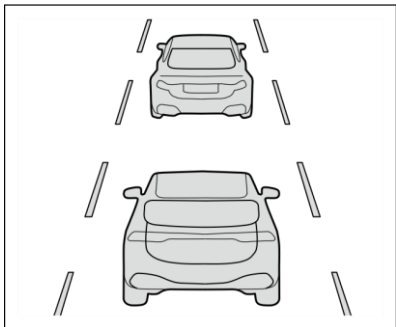
跟车显示

Car-following



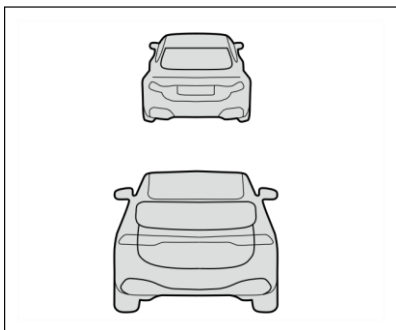
未检测到前车，组合仪表主界面不显示前车图标。

If there is no car in front of the vehicle, the main interface of the instrument pack does not display the icon.




检测到前车在有车道线的情况下进行跟车并保持在车道内行驶。

If there is a car in front of the vehicle, follow the car and drive within the lane.

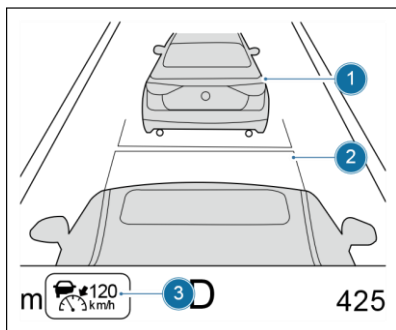


检测到前车，在无车道线的情况下进行跟车，并根据前车轨迹行驶。

If there is a car in front of the vehicle, follow the car and drive along its trace when there is no lane.

 警告 Warning

- 跟随车辆示意图仅在探测到同一车道上同方向行驶的车辆时显示。
- Icon appears only when a vehicle which drives in the same direction at the same lane is detected.
- 如果跟随车辆示意图没有显示，则 TJA 系统不会对前方车辆做出反应或施加制动。
- If icon does not display, TJA system will never respond to the front vehicle or apply a brake.



1. 跟随汽车示意图
Diagram of following the front car
2. 跟车距离
Following distance
3. TJA 状态及巡航车速
The state of TJA and cruise speed

功能说明

Function description

TJA 系统的巡航速度调整、设定跟车距离以及系统可能受限的情况等请参考自适应巡航（ACC）系统章节。

Please refer to the chapter of Adaptive Cruise (ACC) system for the adjustment of cruising speed, the setting of following distance and the possible limitations of TJA system.

车道偏离预警（LDW）系统*

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) System

车辆以高于 70km/h 的车速在有可识别车道线的道路上行驶, LDW 系统激活, 当车辆无意识地偏离车道时, LDW 系统发出声光报警, 提醒驾驶员安全驾驶。

When the vehicle drives at the lane with identifiable lines at the speed of more than 70km/h, LDW will be activated. When the vehicle unconsciously deviates from the lane, the LDW will give an audible and visual alarm to remind the driver to drive safely,



注意 Notice

- LDW 系统可能会因前视摄像头被冰雪、灰尘挡住而无法正常运行, 需保持前视摄像头的清洁。
- LDW may not work properly because the front view camera is blocked by ice, snow and dust, therefore the front view camera needs to be kept clean.
- 在下雪、大雨或道路有积水情况下, LDW 系统的运行可能会受到限制。
- In the event of snow, heavy rain or water on the road, the operation of LDW System may be limited.

车道偏离预警开启和关闭

Opening and closing of LDW

点击显示屏的【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【车道偏离预警】对 LDW 系统功能进行开启或关闭, 同时也可以选择 LDW 系统灵敏度。

Click 【Set】- 【Vehicle】- 【Driving support】- 【LDW】 on the screen to start or close the function of LDW, and

sensitivity of LDW System can be chosen.

- 功能开启后, 如果 LDW 系统检测到车道线, 且车速大于等于 70km/h, 其它功能条件也满足要求, LDW 系统会自动进入激活状态。
- If LDW System detects lane lines, the speed is more than or equal to 70 km/h and other requirements are met after the function is turned on, LDW System will enter the active state automatically.
- 如果两侧车道线消失, 或者车速低于 70km/h 时, LDW 系统会退出激活状态。
- If lane lines disappear or the speed is less than 70km/h, LDW System will exit the active state.
- 打开转向灯 (或危险警告灯) 时, LDW 系统预警功能会被抑制, 关闭转向灯 (或危险警告灯), LDW 系统预警功能恢复正常。
- When the turn signal lamp (or hazard warning lamp) is turned on, forewarning function of LDW System is suppressed, and when the turn signal lamp (or hazard warning lamp) is off, the forewarning function returns to normal.
- LDW 系统在 (125 米 < 车道曲率 < 250 米) 的弯道上, 进入弯道切入模式, 预警会延迟发出。
- When the vehicle drives on a

road($125\text{m} < \text{curvature} < 250\text{m}$), LDW System will enter the curve mode and the alert will be delayed.

- LDW 系统在(2.5 米<车道宽度<3.0 米)的窄道下,进入窄道适应模式,预警会延迟发出。
- When the vehicle drives on a road($2.5\text{m} < \text{width of road} < 3.0\text{m}$), LDW System will enter the narrow road mode and the alert will be delayed.

预警灵敏度

Sensitivity of alert

LDW 系统支持灵敏度调节,分正常、提前、延时三个等级。LDW 系统开关、灵敏度具有记忆功能,车辆启动时默认恢复至上一次设置的状态。

LDW System can adjust sensitivity, which is divided into three levels: normal, advanced and delayed. Switch and sensitivity of the LDW System have a memory function, and the default when the vehicle is started is restored to the previous state.

影响系统灵敏度的因素有以下两点:

There are two factors that affect sensitivity:

- 拆装内后视镜。
- Remove the rear-view mirror.
- 更换前挡风玻璃。
- Replace front windshield.

当执行更换前视摄像头,前挡风玻

璃或车辆四轮定位以及改装车身底盘后,系统需要重新标定,否则无法正常工作。

When the front camera and front windshield are replaced, or alignment is performed, and the chassis is modified, the system needs to be re-calibrated or it will not work properly.

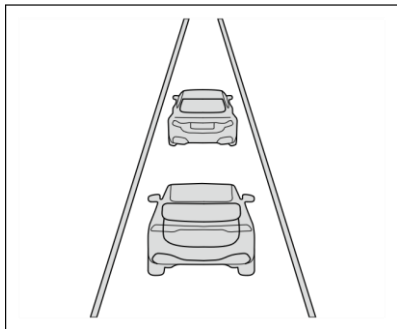
系统工作状态显示

Display of working state

组合仪表的驾驶辅助页面可显示 LDW 系统信息,LDW 系统关闭,车道偏离指示灯熄灭;

The driver assistance page of the instrument pack can display the information of LDW System. The lane departure indicator is closed when LDW System is turned off.

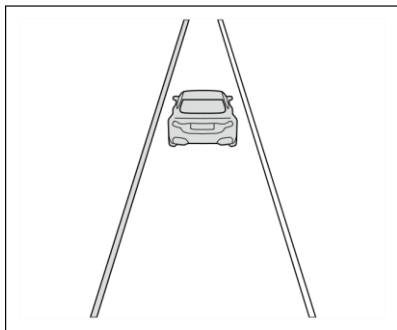
- LDW 系统开启但未激活时,车道偏离指示灯(白色)常亮;
- When LDW System is turned on but not activated, lane departure indicator (white) is always on.
- LDW 系统激活,车道偏离指示灯(绿色)常亮。
- When LDW System is activated, lane departure indicator (green) is always on.



- 检测到车道线，组合仪表主界面进行显示。
- Lane lines will be displayed on the main interface of the instrument pack when they are detected.
- 未检测到车道线则不显示。
- There is no display on the main interface of the instrument pack when lane lines are not detected.

车道偏离报警

Lane departure warning



左侧车道线偏离报警，主界面偏离车道线变红，蜂鸣器会发出报警音提示。

When the vehicle deviates from the left lane line, the main interface will become red and the buzzer will alert the

driver.

注意 Notice

- 车道线检测状态不能用来判断车辆是否处于车道内，驾驶员需自行控制车辆行驶方向。
- The detection state of lane lines cannot be used to determine whether the vehicle is in the lane, and the driver needs to control the direction of the vehicle.
- LDW 系统只是辅助提醒系统，任何时候驾驶员都需要注意周边驾驶环境，自行判断是否需要变换车道。
- LDW System is only an auxiliary system, and at any time the driver needs to pay attention to surrounding environment and judge whether he needs to change lanes.
- LDW 系统只能在车道偏离时提供报警，并不能主动修正车辆行驶方向，驾驶员需要自行负责对车辆的控制。
- LDW System only provides an alarm when the vehicle deviates from the lane and cannot actively correct the direction of the vehicle, and the driver needs to control vehicle.

LDW 系统可能受限的情况 Situations where the LDW System may be constrained

LDW 系统在如下条件可能会受到限制：

The LDW System may be constrained in any of the following cases:

- 前挡风玻璃上有冰雪或灰尘污渍挡住前视摄像头时。
- There is snow on windshield or dust that blocks front view camera.
- 大雾或雨雪等能见度较低的天气时。
- Weather with low visibility such as heavy fog or rain and snow.
- 车道线被其它障碍物遮挡时。
- Lane lines are blocked by other

obstacles.

- 车道线宽度过窄或弯道曲率过大时。
- Width of lane lines is narrow or curvature is large.
- 与前车距离过近导致前视摄像头视线被遮挡时。
- View of front camera is blocked because of close distance with front car.
- 迎向强光行驶时。
- Drive towards bright light.
- 车道线分叉、交汇、人行道或施工区域等复杂道线情况下行驶时。
- Drive on complex roads such as forked road, convergent road, sidewalk or construction area.
- 路面有栏杆、树木或其它物体形成的阴影时可能会造成误识别。
- Shadows formed by railings, trees or other objects on the road may cause misidentification.
- 车道线模糊或者夜晚光线较弱时。
- Lane lines are blurry or light at night is dim.
- 在有雨雪覆盖的路面行驶时。
- Drive on roads with rain and snow.

变道辅助 (LCA) 系统*

LCA System

LCA 系统包含盲区监测系统和车道变换预警，可检测到从侧后方接近本车的车辆并提供预警信息，避免发生碰撞。

LCA System contains blind area monitoring system and lane change warning which can detect cars approaching the vehicle from the rear of the side and provide early warning information to avoid collisions.

变道辅助开启和关闭

Start and closing of LCA

变道辅助开关状态默认为上一次操作状态。点击显示屏【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【变道辅助】开关开启或关闭 LCA 系统。

State of LCA defaults to previous working state. Click 【Set】-【Vehicle】-【driver assist】-【LCA】 on the display screen to turn on or off LCA System.

警告 Warning

- 急转弯情况下，LCA 系统不起作用。
- In the case of sharp turns, LCA System does not work.
- LCA 系统在倒车时不工作。
- LCA System does not work when reversing.
- LCA 系统是辅助驾驶功能，并非在所有情况下都工作。
- LCA System offers the function of assisting driving and does not work at any cases.
- LCA 系统不能取代安全驾驶以及后视镜的使用。
- LCA System does not replace the use of safe driving and rear mirror.

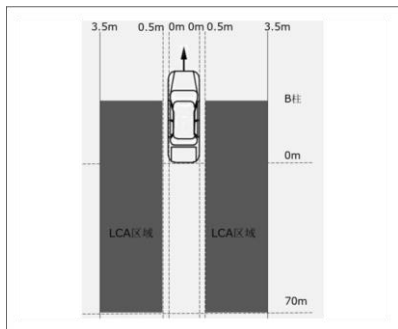
使用 LCA 系统绝不代表驾驶员可以无所作为并松懈，以安全方式变更车道始终是驾驶员的职责。

The use of LCA System does not mean that the driver can do nothing and slacken off, and it is always the driver's

responsibility to change lanes in a safe way.

变道辅助范围

Range of LCA



LCA 系统的报警区域为车辆左右两侧横向从 0.5 米到 3.5 米、纵向从车辆 B 柱位置到车尾后方 70 米，如图所示。阴影区域为预警区域，左右对称。

The alarm area of LCA System is 0.5 meters to 3.5 meters on the left and right sides of the vehicle, and longitudinal area is from the position of the B-pillar of the vehicle to 70 meters of the rear, as shown in the figure. The shadow area is the alarm area, which is symmetrical left and right.

警告 Warning

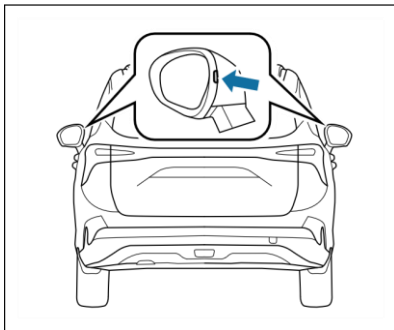
- LCA 系统不能代替驾驶员对周围环境的观察。
- LCA System does not replace inspection of the driver of surrounding environment.
- 由于 LCA 系统存在工作盲区，请勿以此作为变道安全的凭据。
- Because there is dead zone in the LCA System, do not use this as a basis for lane change.

注意 Notice

- 下列因素也会造成 LCA 系统无法检测或检测不良：
- The following factors can also cause LCA System to be undetectable or detect poorly.
- 噪声值过大和路面过于湿滑。
- The noise is too loud and the road is too slippery.
- 车辆与相邻车道车辆的相对速度较大。如车辆急加减速。
- The relative speed of the vehicle to the vehicle in the adjacent lane is large such as the rapid acceleration and deceleration of vehicle.
- 气流流经车身棱角处或传感器漏斗形支架时产生噪音，当传感器表面气压增大时其性能会降低。
- Noise is generated when airflow flows through corners of the body or funnel bracket of the sensor, and the performance gets worse when the air pressure on the sensor surface increases.
- 积水路面。Road with water.
- 恶劣路面情况，沙石尘土路面，草丛路面。
- Bad road, sand road and grass road.
- 摩托车。Motorcycles
- 其他超声波噪音源干扰(例如其他开启超声波系统的车辆)。
- Interference from other ultrasonic noises

车道辅助预警

Lane Change Assist Alert



变道辅助指示灯安装在左右外后视镜上，如果在盲区内探测到车辆，指示灯会常亮。

The indicator of lane change assist is mounted on the left and right side mirrors and is always on if the vehicle is detected in the blind zone.

一级报警

First-class alarm

当有目标接近车辆时，变道辅助指示灯常亮。

When a car approaches the vehicle, the indicator of lane change assist is always on.

二级报警

Second-class alarm

当有目标接近车辆时，车辆对应侧转向灯开启，变道辅助指示灯闪烁，同时伴有声音提示。

When a car approaches the vehicle, corresponding side turn signal of the vehicle is turned on and indicator of the lane change assist flashes accompanied by an audible prompt.

系统可能不工作的情况

Conditions that the system does not work

多种原因都可能导致LCA系统发生不必要、不准时、无效的警告或遗漏警告，比如：

Unnecessary, unpunctual, invalid or missing warnings can occur in the LCA System for a variety of reasons, such as:

- 雷达受限。
- Radar is constrained.
- 盲区中存在体积较大运动的金属

物体。

- There are mobile metal objects with large volumes in the blind zones.

上述警告和限制并未表述出所有可能干扰盲区监测系统的情况。有多种因素可导致LCA系统的失灵，为避免碰撞，驾驶车辆时驾驶员需时刻保持警惕，时刻关注道路情况，以便在安全的情况下变换车道。

The warnings and limitations described above do not describe all the conditions that could interfere with the blind spot monitoring. There are a variety of factors that can cause the LCA System to fail. In order to avoid collisions, the driver needs to be vigilant and pay attention to the road conditions at all times when driving the vehicle, so as to change lanes under safe conditions.

开门预警（DOW）系统*

Door Open Warning (DOW) System

车辆静止时，DOW系统可检测从后方接近本车的车辆、骑行者或行人等。当检测到有目标接近时，驾驶员或乘客打开车门，DOW系统会发出预警信息，避免发生碰撞危险。

When the vehicle is stationary, DOW System can detect vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians approaching the vehicle from behind. If a car is detected approaching, DOW System generates an early warning to

avoid collision when the driver or passenger opens the door.

开门预警开启和关闭

Start and closing of DOW

开门预警开关状态默认为上一次操作状态。点击显示屏【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【开门预警】开关可开启或关闭。

State of DOW defaults to previous working state. Click 【Set】 - 【Vehicle】 - 【driver assist】 - 【DOW】 on the display screen to open or close DOW.

注意 Notice

以下情况时，DOW 系统才能正常工作：
DOW System can work normally under the following conditions:

- 启动开关处于“ON”档时。
- Open the switch to “ON”
- 将启动开关由“ON”档切换至“OFF”档后的 3 分钟内。
- Three minutes after the switch is turned from “ON”to “OFF”.

警告 Warning

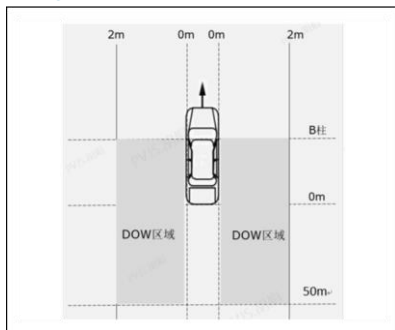
- 即使车辆静止时，DOW 系统也无法在所有情况下都工作，不能取代驾驶员和乘客的目视观察，也不能代替内外后视镜的作用，请勿过度依赖 DOW 系统。
- Even when the vehicle is stationary, DOW System cannot work in all cases, cannot replace the visual observation of the driver and passengers and cannot replace the function of rear-view mirror and side mirror. Do not rely too much on DOW.

警告 Warning

- DOW 系统仅在车辆静止时才是有效的，车辆移动后，该系统不工作。
- DOW System works only when the vehicle is stationary, and the system fails to work when the vehicle moves.
- DOW 系统旨在提醒驾驶员和乘客打开车门时注意开门的环境安全，受限于传感器的性能和交通环境的复杂程度，有可能发出不必要的报警或不报警，下车前主动观察开门环境是驾驶员和乘客保证人身安全最有效的措施和责任。
- DOW System is designed to remind driver and passengers to pay attention to the environment of opening the door. Limited by the performance of sensor and the complexity of the traffic environment, it is possible to give unnecessary alarms or no alarms, and actively observing the environment before getting off the car is the most effective measure and responsibility to ensure personal safety.

开门预警范围

Range of DOW



DOW 系统的报警区域为车辆左右两侧横向从 0 米到 2 米、纵向从车辆 B 柱的位置到车尾后方 50 米，如图所示。阴影区域为预警区域，左右对称。

The alarm area of DOW System is 0 meter to 2 meters on the left and right sides of the vehicle, and longitudinal area is from the position of the B-pillar of the vehicle to 50 meters of the rear, as shown in the figure.

The shadow area is the alarm area, which is symmetrical left and right.

功能预警

Early warning of functions

一级报警

First-class alarm

当有目标接近静止的车辆时，报警灯常亮。

When there is a car approaching a stationary vehicle, the alarm light is always on.

二级报警

Second-class alarm

当有目标接近静止的车辆时，如果驾驶员或乘客打开车门，则报警灯闪烁，组合仪表弹框提醒，同时伴有声音提示，对应侧车门氛围灯亮起。

When a car approaches a stationary vehicle, if the driver or passenger opens the door, the alarm light flashes, the instrument pack pops up the frame accompanied by an audible prompt and corresponding side door atmosphere lamp lights up.

系统可能不工作的情况

Conditions that the system does not work

DOW 系统并非总能在各种情况下工作，多种原因都可能导致发生不必要、不准时、无效的警告或遗漏警告，比如：

DOW System does not work at any condition. Unnecessary, unpunctual, invalid or missing warnings can occur in

the system for a variety of reasons, such as:

- 雷达受限。
- Radar is constrained.
- 较小的目标或静止的目标。
- Small or stationary objects.
- 目标速度太快，或有转向行为。例如：目标车辆换道至本车正后方、其它车辆在本车正后方突然变道出现在检测区域中。
- The target vehicle is too fast, or there is steering. For example, the target vehicle changes lanes to the rear of the vehicle and other vehicles behind the vehicle suddenly change lanes directly and appears in the detection area.
- 本车正后方的其它车辆、骑行者。
- Other vehicles and cyclists directly behind the car.
- 本车在转弯处或墙体旁等位置停留。
- The car stops at a corner or next to a wall.

上述警告和限制并未表述出所有可能干扰开门预警的情况。有多种因素可导致开门预警的失灵，为避免在开门时发生刮碰危险，请谨记观察开门环境是否安全、适合。

The warnings and restrictions described above do not describe all conditions that could interfere with the early warning of opening the door. There

are a variety of factors that can lead to the failure of the door open warning. In order to avoid the risk of scratching when opening the door, please remember to observe whether the environment is safe and suitable.

后方横穿预警 (RCTA) 系统* Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System

RCTA 系统可检测横穿本车后方的车辆、骑行者或行人等。当车辆倒车时，系统检测到有目标接近，车辆存在碰撞风险，RCTA 系统将发出预警信息，避免发生碰撞危险。

RCTA System can detect vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians that cross the rear of the vehicle. When the vehicle reverses, the system detects that there is an approaching target vehicle and collision may occur, RCTA System will give an early warning to avoid the risk of collision.

后方横穿预警开启和关闭 Start and closing of RCTA

后方横穿预警开关状态默认为上一次操作状态。点击显示屏【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【后方横穿预警】开关可开启或关闭。

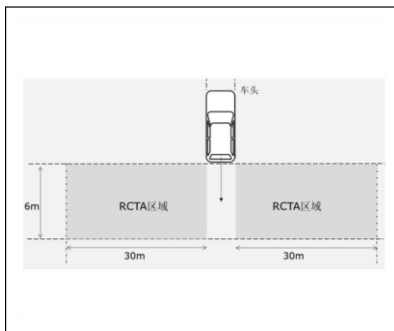
State of RCTA defaults to previous working state. Click 【Set】-【Vehicle】-【driver assist】-【RCTA】 on the display screen to turn on or off RCTA System.

警告 Warning

- RCTA 系统是一项辅助驾驶功能，并非在所有情况下都工作。
- RCTA System plays the role of driving assist and cannot work at any cases.
- RCTA 系统不能取代安全驾驶以及内外后视镜的使用。
- RCTA System cannot replace the function of safe driving and rear-view mirror and side mirror.
- 使用 RCTA 系统绝不代表驾驶员可以无所作为并松懈。以安全方式倒车始终是驾驶员的职责。
- The use of RCTA System does not mean that the driver can do nothing and slacken down. It is always the responsibility of the driver to reverse in a safe way.

后方横穿预警范围

Range of RCTA



RCTA 系统报警区域为车辆左右两侧横向从 0 米到 30 米、后向从车尾到后方 6 米，如图所示。阴影区域为预警区域，左右对称。

The alarm area of RCTA System is 0 meter to 30 meters on the left and right sides of the vehicle, and longitudinal area is from the rear of the vehicle to 6 meters of the rear, as shown in the figure. The shadow area is the alarm area, which is symmetrical left and right.

RCTA 系统可能不工作的情况 Conditions that RCTA does not work

- 多种原因都可能导致 RCTA 系统发生不必要、不准时或无效的警告和遗漏警告，比如：

Unnecessary, unpunctual, invalid or missing warnings can occur in the system for a variety of reasons, such as:

- 雷达受限。
- Radar is constrained.
- 盲区中存在体积较大的、运动的金属物体。
- There are mobile metal objects with large volumes in the blind zones.
- 探测对象速度过快。
- Speed of inspected target is too fast.

上述警告和限制并未表述出所有可能干扰 RCTA 系统的情况。有多种因素可导致 RCTA 系统的失灵，为避免碰撞，驾驶车辆时驾驶员需保持警惕，时刻关注道路情况，以便在安全的情况下倒车。

The warnings and limitations described above do not describe all the possible conditions that may interfere with RCTA System. There are a variety of factors that can lead to failure of RCTA System. In order to avoid collisions, the driver needs to be vigilant when driving a vehicle and keep an eye on the road conditions to reverse in a safe situation.

自动紧急制动（AEB）系统*

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System

AEB 系统的工作范围为 8~75km/h，该系统通过前视摄像头检测车辆与前方车辆或行人的距离及相对速度，当判断即将发生不可避免的碰撞时，自动进行紧急制动，以避免碰撞或减轻碰撞造成的伤害。AEB 系统可以降低车辆追尾和碰撞行人的概率，尽可能在碰撞发生之前自动进行紧急制动来减轻事故的严重程度。

The working scope of AEB System is 8-75km/h. The system detects the distance and relative speed of the vehicle from the vehicle or pedestrian in front of it through the front view camera and automatically performs emergency braking when it determines that an inevitable collision is about to occur to avoid the collision or reduce the damage caused thereby. The system can reduce the probability of rear-end collisions and collisions with pedestrians, and automatically perform emergency braking before the collision occurs as much as possible to reduce the severity of the accident.

警告 Warning

- 驾驶员需要对如何驾驶以及如何避免危险情况发生负责。
- The driver needs to be responsible for how to drive and avoid dangers.
- AEB 系统是一个主动安全辅助系统，但不能完全避免与前方车辆或行人的碰撞，请时刻注意行车安全。
- AEB is a system of active safety assist, but it cannot completely avoid collision with front vehicles or pedestrians. Therefore, please always pay attention to driving safety.
- 确保车辆以适当的车速安全行驶，与前车及行人保持合适的车距。
- Ensure that the vehicle is driving at the appropriate speed and maintain suitable distance from front vehicles and pedestrians.
- 在紧急情况发生时，驾驶员应尽可能及时地进行制动。
- In the event of an emergency, the driver should brake as promptly as possible.

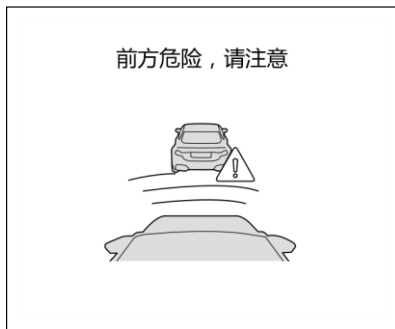
the indicator (yellow) is always on.

AEB 系统在每次车辆启动时默认开启，且不建议用户关闭 AEB 系统。

AEB System is turned on by default each time the vehicle is started, and the user is not recommended to turn off the AEB System.

系统报警方式说明

Description of the alarm mode



AEB 系统在触发自动紧急制动时，组合仪表会弹框显示警告图像，同时发出急促的声音报警信号。

When AEB System triggers automatic emergency braking, the instrument pack will pop up a warning image and emit an urgent audible alarm signal.

系统功能可能受限的情况

Conditions that functions of AEB may be constrained.

- AEB 系统的响应及制动能力有限，可能没有足够的时间和制动力降低车速，来避免与前方车辆或行人的碰撞。当前方车辆以极端工况强行进入行驶车道或行人突然进入

自动紧急制动开启与关闭

Start and closing of AEB

点击显示屏上的【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【自动紧急制动】开关可开启或关闭。

Click **【Set】-【Vehicle】-【driver assist】-【AEB】** on the display screen to turn on or off AEB System.

当与前车距离过近时，AEB 系统工作，自动紧急制动指示灯（红色）常亮；当关闭自动紧急制动时，自动紧急制动指示灯（黄色）常亮。

When there is close distance from the front car, AEB System works and the indicator of AEB (red) is always on; when the automatic emergency brake is turned off,

行驶车道时，可能出现无法避免的碰撞。

- There may not be enough time and braking force to reduce the speed of the vehicle to avoid collision with front vehicle or pedestrian because of the limited response and braking capabilities. There may be unavoidable collisions when the front vehicle forcibly enters the driving lane under extreme working conditions or pedestrians suddenly enter the driving lane.
- 驾驶车辆时始终需要集中全部注意力，时刻准备应对突发状况。
- When driving a vehicle, the driver always needs to concentrate full attention and be ready for unexpected situations.
- AEB 系统通常处在后台工作状态，不会被驾驶员察觉，因此检测到目标车辆或行人也不会显示。
- AEB System is usually in the state of background and is not noticed by the driver, so it will not be displayed if a target vehicle or pedestrian is detected.
- AEB 系统可以识别到安装了牌照，合法上路行驶的正规车辆。
- AEB System can identify regular vehicles with license plates and driving legally on the road.
- AEB 系统通过识别车辆尾部来获取车辆信息，所以该系统不会对逆向来车和前方横向穿越车辆做出报警提示。
- AEB System obtains information by identifying the rear of the vehicle, so the system does not alert the driver of reverse vehicles and front vehicles crossing laterally.
- AEB 系统是一个驾驶辅助系统，但无法在所有情况下检测到车辆，例如：车辆尾部被严重遮挡、车辆形状奇怪（比如超载的运输树木的车辆）、车辆尾部严重损毁等情况的车辆。
- AEB System is a driver assist system, but it cannot detect vehicles in all cases such as vehicles with severely obscured tail and strange shape (such as overloaded vehicles that transport trees), and vehicles with seriously damaged tail.
- AEB 系统可以识别未被遮挡的身高在 1.5~2.3 米的成人，以及身高超过 0.8 米的儿童。
- AEB System can identify unobstructed adults with a height of 1.5 to 2.3 meters, and children with a height of more than 0.8 meters.
- 要发挥 AEB 系统的最佳探测性能，

摄像头需尽可能接收到关于身体外形明确无误的信息。

- To perform the best detection performance of AEB System, the camera needs to receive as much correct information as possible about the shape of the body.
- AEB 系统识别功能需要行人与环境之间有足够的对比度，过亮或过暗的光照对系统都有消极影响。
- Recognition function of the AEB System requires sufficient contrast between pedestrians and the environment, and bright or dim light both have a negative impact on the system.
- AEB 系统是一个安全辅助系统，但无法在所有情况下检测到行人。例如：部分被遮挡、所穿衣物不能辨认身形、身高过低、携带较大物体、对比度差等情况的行人。
- AEB System is a safety assist system, but pedestrians cannot be detected in all cases. For example, some pedestrians who are obscured, whose clothes are not recognizable, whose height is too low, who carry large objects and whose contrast with the environment is poor.

交通环境对系统安全性的制约
Restrictions of traffic environment
on system safety

- 在弯曲道路、坡道，或冰雪、灰尘挡住传感器时，系统可能无法探测到前方车辆。请保持车辆前部挡风玻璃清洁。
- When the vehicle is on curved roads and ramps, or when the sensor is blocked by ice and snow and dust, the system may be unable to detect the vehicle in front. Keep the front windshield of the vehicle clean.
- 能见度低，如在大雾或雨雪天气情况下，AEB 系统的性能将受到限制。
- Performance of the AEB System will be limited because of low visibility such as in foggy or rainy and snowy weather.
- 在光滑道路上，可能导致制动效果降低，制动距离增长。
- Smooth roads may lead to a decrease in braking effect and an increase in braking distance.
- 在复杂交通情况下，可能导致 AEB 系统对车辆的识别不及时，造成紧急制动的滞后。
- Complex traffic situations may lead to the AEB System's untimely identification of the vehicle, resulting in the delay of emergency braking

车辆操作稳定性与系统状态说明

Description of operational stability and system state

电子稳定性控制系统处于关闭或故障状态时，AEB 系统的制动功能不会被激活。

When the electronic stability control is off or faulty, the braking function of AEB System is not activated.

系统自动解除提示说明

Prompt that the system is off

在下列情况下，AEB 系统可能会自动解除：

AEB System may be turned off automatically in the following cases:

- 传感器被挡住。
- Sensor is blocked.
- 恶劣天气。
- Bad weathers.
- 电子稳定性控制系统工作状态异常或关闭。
- Electronic Stability Program (ESC) works abnormally or is turned off.
- 系统存在故障。
- The system is faulty.

系统抑制条件说明

Description of conditions that restrict the system

AEB 系统在以下任一抑制条件满足时，将不会被触发：

AEB System will never be activated once any of the following conditions is met:

- 驾驶员主动转向，方向盘转速过快

或者转角过大。

- The driver steers actively, the steering wheel is spinning too fast or the corner is too large.
- 驾驶员接管车辆控制，踩油门踏板过于用力。
- The driver controls the vehicle and the pedal is depressed with strong force.

系统打断条件说明

Description of conditions that the system is interrupted

- 驾驶员主动转向，方向盘转速过快或者转角过大。
- The driver steers actively, the steering wheel is spinning too fast or the corner is too large.
- 驾驶员接管车辆控制，踩油门踏板过于用力。
- The driver controls the vehicle and the pedal is depressed with strong force.
- 速度降低超过阈值 40km/h，AEB 停止自动制动。
- AEB stops automatically braking when the speed is less than the limit of 40km/h.

前碰撞预警（FCW）系统* Forward Collision Warning (FCW) System

FCW 系统通过前视摄像头检测车辆与前方车辆、行人的距离和相对速度，

当判断有碰撞风险时提示驾驶员采取相应措施。FCW 系统的工作范围为 8~200km/h, 可降低车辆追尾和碰撞行人的发生率, 并在碰撞发生之前提醒驾驶员做出反应, 减轻事故损害。

FCW System detects the distance and relative speed of the vehicle from the front vehicle and the pedestrian through the front camera, and prompts the driver to take corresponding measures when judging that there is a risk of collision. The working range of the system is 8 to 200km/h, which can reduce the incidence of rear-end collisions and collisions with pedestrians and remind the driver to react before the collision occurs, thus reducing the damage.

警告 Warning

- FCW 系统不会对车辆进行控制, 驾驶员必须一直保持对车辆的控制, 并对车辆负有责任。
- FCW System does not control the vehicle, so the driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times and be responsible for the vehicle.
- 在紧急情况发生时, 驾驶员应根据自身判断, 不要过于依赖报警提示, 及时地进行制动。
- In the event of an emergency, the driver should brake in time based on his own judgment and does not rely too much on the alarm prompt.

系统控制能力局限性说明 Description of limitations of control

FCW 系统的响应能力有限, 可能不会及时发出报警信号。例如当前方车辆以极端工况强行进入行驶车道或行人突

然进入行驶车道时, 可能无法及时报警。

Responsiveness of FCW System is limited and may not give an alarm in time. For example, when a front vehicle forcibly enters the driving lane under extreme working conditions or a pedestrian suddenly enters the driving lane, it may not be possible to give an alarm in time.

前碰撞预警开启与关闭 Start and closing of FCW

点击显示屏上的【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【前碰撞预警】开关可开启或关闭, 同时也可以选择功能灵敏度。

Click **【Set】-【Vehicle】-【driver assist】-【FCW】** on the display screen to open or close AEB and select sensibility.

当与前车距离过近, FCW 系统工作时, 前碰撞预警系统警告灯(红色)闪烁; 当关闭 FCW 系统时, 前碰撞预警系统关闭指示灯(黄色)点亮。

When there is a close distance from the front car, if the system works, warning light (red) of FCW flashes; if the FCW System is turned off, the shutdown indicator (yellow) is lit.

FCW 系统在车辆启动时自动开启, 且不建议用户关闭该系统。

FCW System automatically turns on when the vehicle starts, and the user is not recommended to turn off the system.

FCW 系统支持灵敏度调节, 分提前、正常、延时三个等级。

FCW System can adjust the sensibility which is divided into advanced, normal and delayed.

FCW 系统出厂默认开启，灵敏度出厂默认正常，有灵敏度记忆功能。

FCW System is turned on by default from the factory, the sensitivity is normal by default and there is a function of sensitivity memory.

系统预警方式说明

Description of warning



FCW 系统在报警触发时，组合仪表弹框显示警告图像，同时发出声音报警信号。

When FCW System triggers an alarm, the instrument pack pops up a warning image and gives an audible alarm signal.

系统功能可能受限的情况

Conditions that the functions are restricted

- FCW 系统通常处在后台工作状态，不会被驾驶员察觉，因此相关目标车辆或行人被检测到也不会显示。
- FCW System is usually in the state of

background and is not detected by the driver, so the detected target vehicle or pedestrian will not be displayed.

- FCW 系统只能识别取得牌照、合法上路行驶的正规车辆。
- FCW System can only identify regular vehicles that have obtained a license plate and are driving legally on the road.
- FCW 系统通过识别车辆尾部来获取车辆信息，所以该系统不会对逆向来车和前方横向穿越车辆做出报警提示。
- FCW System obtains the information by identifying the rear of the vehicle, so the system does not give an alarm of reverse vehicles and front vehicles crossing laterally.
- FCW 系统是一个报警系统，但无法保证在所有情况下检测到车辆。例如车辆尾部被严重遮挡、车辆形状奇怪（比如超载的运输树木的车辆）、车辆尾部严重损毁等情况的车辆。
- FCW System is a alarm system, but it cannot detect vehicles in all cases such as vehicles with severely obscured tail and strange shape (such as overloaded vehicles that transport trees), and vehicles with seriously damaged tail.
- FCW 系统可以识别未被遮挡的身

高在 1.5~2.3 米的成人，以及身高超过 0.8 米的儿童。

- FCW System can identify unobstructed adults with a height of 1.5 to 2.3 meters, and children with a height of more than 0.8 meters.
- 发挥 FCW 系统的最佳探测性能，要求摄像头能尽可能接收到关于身体外形明确无误的信息。这意味着可以与标准的人类运动方式相结合，对头部、躯干、手臂、腿部等进行识别。
- To perform the best detection performance of FCW System, the camera needs to receive as much correct information as possible about the shape of the body. This means that it can be combined with standard movement methods to identify the head, torso, arms and legs.
- FCW 系统识别功能需要行人与环境背景之间有足够的对比度，过亮或过暗的光照对系统都有消极影响。由于行人姿态或环境影响造成行人被探测的时间延迟或根本无法探测到，意味着碰撞报警会推迟或无法激发。
- Recognition function of the FCW system requires sufficient contrast between pedestrians and the environment, and bright or dim light both have a negative impact

on the system. The time that pedestrians are detected is delayed or pedestrians are not detected because of posture of pedestrians or the environment, which means that collision alarms are delayed or cannot be activated.

- FCW 系统是一个报警系统，但无法在所有情况下检测到行人。例如部分被遮挡、所穿衣物不能辨认身形、身高过低、携带较大物体、对比度差等情况的行人。
- FCW is an alarm system, but pedestrians cannot be detected in all cases. For example, some pedestrians who are obscured, whose clothes are not recognizable, whose height is too low, who carry large objects and whose contrast with the environment is poor.

交通环境对系统安全性的制约

Restrictions of traffic environment of safety

- 弯曲道路或山坡道路上、冰雪或灰尘挡住传感器时，系统可能无法探测到前方车辆。请清洁车辆前挡风玻璃。
- When the vehicle drives on a curved road or hillside, and ice, snow or dust blocks the sensor, the system may be unable to detect the vehicle in front. Please clean the front windshield of

the vehicle.

- 能见度低，如在大雾、雨天或雪天情况下，FCW 系统的性能将受到限制。
- Performance of the system will be limited because of low visibility such as in foggy or rainy and snowy weather.
- 在复杂交通情况下，可能导致 FCW 系统对车辆的识别不及时，造成报警滞后。
- Complex traffic situations may lead to delayed identification of the vehicle, resulting in delayed alarm.

系统自动解除提示说明

Prompt that the system is closed

在下列情况下，FCW 系统可能会自动解除：

FCW System may be closed in the following cases:

- 传感器被挡住。
- Sensor is blocked.
- 恶劣天气。
- Bad weather.
- 系统中存在故障。
- The system is faulty.

系统抑制条件说明

Description of conditions that the system is restricted

FCW 系统在任一抑制条件满足时，将不会被触发：

FCW System will never be activated

once any of the following conditions is met:

- 驾驶员实施主动转向，方向盘转速过快或者转角过大。
- The driver steers actively, the steering wheel is spinning too fast or the corner is too large.
- 驾驶员实施接管车辆控制，踩油门踏板过于用力。
- The driver controls the vehicle and the pedal is depressed with strong force.
- 驾驶员踩下刹车踏板。

交通标志识别 (TSR) 系统*

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System

车辆在行驶路过交通限速标志牌时，TSR 系统通过前视摄像头识别限速牌并自动在组合仪表上显示限速标志，提示驾驶员小心行驶。

When the vehicle passes by the speed limit sign, TSR System recognizes the speed limit sign through the front view camera and automatically displays the speed limit sign on the instrument pack to remind the driver to drive carefully.

警告 Warning

- 保持前挡风玻璃表面清洁，没有冰雪、雾气和污垢附着。
- Keep the front windshield clean and free of ice, snow, mist and dirt.
- 不要在前挡风玻璃上粘贴任何物质，这可能降低 TSR 系统有效性，或导致系统停止工作。
- Do not paste anything on the front windshield, which may reduce the effectiveness of the system or cause the system to stop working.
- 交通标志识别是一项驾驶辅助功能，旨在提升车辆的驾驶便捷性与安全性，无法应对所有的交通、天气状况。
- Recognition of traffic sign serves as driving assist designed to improve the convenience and safety of vehicles, and it cannot cope with all traffic and weather conditions.

警告 Warning

- TSR 系统不能替代驾驶员的注意力与判断，驾驶员始终负责确保车辆以适当车速安全行驶，并且符合现行的交通法律和法规。
- TSR System is not a substitute for the attention and judgment of the driver, and the driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle drives safely at the right speed and complies with current traffic laws and regulations.

交通标志识别开启与关闭

Start and closing of TSR

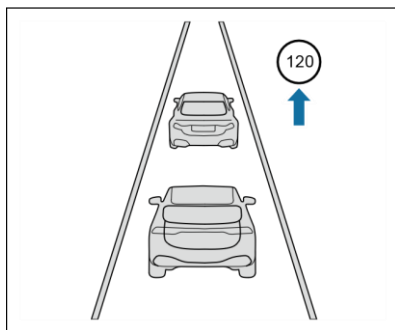
点击显示屏上的【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【交通标志识别】开关可开启或关闭。

Click **【Set】-【Vehicle】-【driver assist】-【TSR】** on the display screen to open or close TSR

组合仪表显示界面说明

Description of display screen of instrument

pack



将组合仪表主界面切换至驾驶辅助页面：

Switch the main interface of instrument pack to the interface of driving assist:

- 车辆经过限速标志牌时，限速标志将会在组合仪表上显示时速圈。
- When the vehicle passes by the speed limit sign, the speed limit sign will display the speed on the instrument pack.
- 车辆当前车速超过限速标志牌限速时，组合仪表上的时速圈将闪烁提示。
- When current speed of the vehicle exceeds the speed limit on the speed limit sign, the speed ring on the instrument pack will flash for prompt.
- 速度限制警报将在 10 秒后或者车辆减速至速度限制以下后消失。
- Speed limit alarm will disappear after 10 seconds or after the vehicle slows down below the speed limit.

TSR 系统功能可能受限的情况 Conditions that the functions of TSR are restricted

- TSR 系统能够检测车辆前方 5~120 米范围内，标准标识牌或 LED 限速标志、解除限速标志。
- TSR System can detect standard signs or LED speed limit signs and signs of lifting speed limit within 5 to 120 meters in front of the vehicle.
- TSR 系统对于嵌入式的交通标志以及带有辅助标志的交通标志无法准确识别。
- TSR System cannot accurately identify embedded traffic signs and traffic signs with auxiliary signs.

交通环境对 TSR 系统安全性的制约

Restriction of traffic conditions of safety

- 在弯曲道路或山坡道路上，或雪、冰、灰尘挡住传感器时，TSR 系统可能无法识别到交通标志。
- When the vehicle drives on a curved road or hillside, or ice, snow and dust blocks the sensor, TSR System cannot identify the traffic signs.
- 能见度低，如在大雾、雨天或雪天情况时，识别性能会受到限制。
- Performance of the system will be limited because of low visibility such as in foggy or rainy and snowy weather.
- 强光（迎面而来的前照灯灯光或者

直射的阳光）妨碍前视摄像头的视野时，TSR 系统可能无法识别到交通标志。

- When strong light (oncoming light from headlamps or direct sunlight) obstructs the view of the front view camera, TSR System may not recognize traffic signs.
- 限速标志被物体遮挡时，TSR 系统可能无法识别到。
- When the speed limit sign is obscured by an object, TSR System may be unable to recognize it.
- 交通标志不符合标准的认可格式时，TSR 系统可能无法识别到。
- When a traffic sign does not conform to the standard approved format, TSR System may not recognize it.

系统清除当前限速条件说明

Description of conditions that the system removes the speed limit

- 当车辆行驶过一段距离后，速度限制报警将会被清除。
- When the vehicle has traveled a certain distance, the speed limit alarm will disappear.
- 当车辆检测到限速终止标志后，不论是多少车速的限速终止标志，均会清除当前速度限制。
- When the vehicle detects a sign that lifts speed limit, the current speed limit is cleared regardless of the

number of speed limit termination signs

- 当车辆打转向灯进行转向时, TSR 系统将会清除速度限制。
- When the vehicle turns with the turn signal, TSR System will clear the speed limit.
- 当车辆低速进行掉头时, TSR 系统会清除速度限制。
- When the vehicle turns round at a low speed, TSR System will clear the speed limit.

影响标定的因素说明

Description of factors that influence the calibration

- 拆装内后视镜。
- Remove rear-view mirror
- 更换前挡风玻璃。
- Replace the front windshield



注意 Notice

当更换前视摄像头, 前挡风玻璃或车辆四轮定位以及改装车身底盘后, 系统需要重新标定, 否则无法正常工作。

When the front view camera, front windshield is replaced, four-wheel positioning is carried out or the chassis is modified, the system needs to be recalibrated or it will not work properly.

传感器清洁操作说明

Description of cleaning the sensor

- 前视摄像头会被雪、冰、灰尘或泥挡住。需要清洁这些区域以使 TSR 系统正常运行。
- The front view camera will be

blocked by snow, ice, dust or mud.

These areas need to be cleaned for TSR System to function properly.

- 在下雪、大雨或道路喷水情况下, TSR 系统的运行可能会受到限制。
- In the event of snow, heavy rain or water spray, the operation of TSR System may be limited.



警告 Warning

某些交通道路条件下, TSR 系统可能无法很好的做出反应, 从而导致标志的误识别或漏识别, 为此驾驶员需特别注意。

In some traffic conditions, TSR System may be unable to react well, thus resulting in misidentification or missing identification of signs, for which drivers need to pay special attention.

远光灯自动控制 (IHC) 系统* IHC System

IHC 系统通过前视摄像头探测对向行驶车辆的大灯或本车前方车辆的尾灯光束, 然后将远光灯转换为近光灯; 当前视摄像头看不到迎面而来的车辆或本车前方车辆时, 远光灯重新启用。IHC 系统还将路灯等环境光因素考虑在内。

IHC System detects beams from the headlights of the oncoming vehicle or the taillight of the front vehicle through the front view camera, and then converts the high beam to a low beam; the high beam is reactivated when the front view camera cannot see the oncoming vehicle or the front vehicle. IHC also considers ambient

light such as street lights.

警告 Warning

- 保持前视摄像头前方挡风玻璃表面清洁，没有冰雪、雾气和污垢附着。
- Keep the front windshield of the front view camera clean, free of ice, snow, fog and dirt.
- 不要在前挡风玻璃上粘贴任何物品，这可能降低 IHC 系统有效性，或导致系统停止工作。
- Do not paste anything on the front windshield, which may reduce the effectiveness of IHC System or cause the system to stop working.

远光灯自动控制开启与关闭

Start and closing of IHC

点击显示屏上的【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【远光灯自动控制】开关可开启或关闭。

Click **【Set】-【Vehicle】-【driver assist】-【IHC】** on the display screen to open or close IHC

系统激活需以下条件同时满足

All the following requirements need to be met to activate the system

- 车辆所在环境昏暗，无其他车辆或路灯。
- The environment where the vehicle is located is dim, and there are no other vehicles or street lights.
- 灯光控制手柄调节环处于 AUTO 档。
- Adjustment ring of lighting control handle is at AUTO.
- 车速达到 45km/h 以上。

- Speed exceeds 45km/h.

IHC 系统功能可能受限的情况

Conditions that functions of IHC System are restricted

IHC 系统控制能力局限性说明

Description of limitations about control of IHC System

4. IHC 系统可检测以下目标：

4. IHC System can detect the following objects:

- 具有完整前大灯（开启状态）的对向来车。
 - Oncoming vehicles with complete headlights (open).
 - 具有完整尾灯（开启状态）的同向前车。
 - Vehicles with same direction and complete tail lights (open).
 - 具有发光装置的同向前方自行车。
 - Forward bikes with same direction and luminous device
 - 路灯等环境光源。
 - Ambient light such as street lights
5. 当被检测车辆的车灯装置异常（如单只前大灯、单只尾灯等），会降低 IHC 系统性能，或导致不能正常识别。
5. When the lighting device of the detected vehicle is abnormal (such as single head light and single tail light), the performance of IHC System will get worse or it cannot

recognize normally.

6. 可能会将红色或橙色信号灯识别为车辆尾灯。
6. Red or orange signal lamps may be recognized as tail light.

交通环境对系统安全性的制约

Restriction of traffic conditions on safety

- 雨、冰雪、浓雾、污浊可能会导致 IHC 系统性能下降。
- Rain, snow and ice, fog and dirt can reduce the performance of IHC System.
- 路况恶劣路段（例如湿滑路面、斜坡上或凹坑中、急转弯等）行驶时，可能会由于车身不稳定导致 IHC 系统不能正常工作。
- When the vehicle drives on roads with poor conditions (such as slippery roads, slopes or pits, sharp turns), IHC System may not work properly due to instability.
- 道路附近有高反光物体时（例如交通标志），可能会导致 IHC 系统不能正常工作。
- When there are reflective objects near the road (such as traffic signs), IHC System may work abnormally.
- 前方来车的灯光被挡住时（例如防撞栏），可能会导致 IHC 系统不能正常工作。
- When the lights of an oncoming car in front of you are blocked (such as

crash barrier), IHC System may work abnormally.

系统自动解除条件

Conditions that the system is closed automatically

车速降到 25km/h 以下。

Speed is less than 25km/h

系统手动解除条件

Conditions that the system is closed manually

- 灯光控制手柄调节环未处于 AUTO 档。
- Adjustment ring of lighting control handle is at AUTO
- IHC 系统关闭。
- IHC System is closed.
- 灯光控制手柄拨动至超车灯档。
- Lighting control handle is at gear of passing light

影响标定的因素

Factors that influence calibration

- 拆装内后视镜。
 - Remove the rear-view mirror
 - 更换前挡风玻璃。
 - Replace the front windshield
- 当执行更换前视摄像头、前挡风玻璃、车辆四轮定位以及改装车身底盘等影响摄像头位置的一切操作后，IHC 系统需要重新标定，否则 IHC 系统性能将会降低或无法正常工作。

When all the actions that affect the position of the camera such as replacing the

front view camera and front windshield, four-wheel positioning and modifying the chassis, IHC System needs to be recalibrated, otherwise the performance will be degraded or it will not work properly.

传感器清洁操作说明

Operation of cleaning sensor

前视摄像头会被冰雪、灰尘挡住。需要清洁这些区域以使远光灯自动控制功能正常工作。

The front view camera will be blocked by ice, snow and dust. These areas need to be cleaned for IHC to work properly.

后排乘客检测 (ROD) 系统* Rear-seat Occupant Detection (ROD) System

车辆熄火锁车后, ROD 系统会对后排乘客进行检测。如果检测到有乘客或宠物等, ROD 系统将发出报警信息提醒驾驶员, 保障乘客或宠物安全。

After the vehicle is turned off and locked, ROD System will detect the rear passengers. If a passenger or pet is detected, the ROD System will give an alarm to alert the driver to ensure the safety of the passenger or pet.

后排乘客检测开启与关闭 Start and closing of ROD

后排乘客检测开关状态默认为上一次操作状态。点击显示屏【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【后排乘员检测】开

关可开启或关闭。

The switch state of ROD defaults to the last state. Click **【Set】-【Vehicle】-【driver assist】-【ROD】** on the display screen to open or close ROD

警告 Warning

- ROD 系统属于辅助性提醒工具, 不对车内遗留乘客或宠物造成的伤亡情况负责, 请确认好车内情况后再离开。
- ROD System is an auxiliary reminder tool, and is not responsible for casualties caused by left passengers or pets, so please confirm the situation in the car before leaving.
- 请注意车辆周围网络环境, 网络受限 (如车辆停放在地下停车场等) 可能会导致报警信息无法发送或延迟发送、远程指令无法顺利执行。
- Please pay attention to the network environment around the vehicle. Limited network (for instance, the vehicle parks in the underground parking lot) may cause the alarm not to be sent or delayed and the remote command not executed smoothly

警告 Warning

- 遮挡物或运动的物体会干扰传感器的正常工作, 可能会影响系统检测的及时性和准确性。
- Occlusion or moving objects can interfere with the normal operation of the sensor and may affect the timeliness and accuracy of detection.
- 此功能可能无法准确检测到体积过小的生命体。
- The function may not accurately detect life that is too small.

后排乘客检测范围

Detection range of ROD

检测范围: 车辆中间排、后排座椅区域。

Detection range: middle and rear rows.

功能预警提示信息

Prompt of warning

功能预警提示信息详见第五章“影音娱乐系统”中“后排乘员检测”章节。

The prompt of warning is detailed in the chapter of Rear-seat Occupant Detection in the Chapter 5 Video Entertainment System.

一级报警

First-class alarm

当 ROD 系统检测到车内有乘客遗留，会通过手机提醒驾驶员。

When ROD System detects that there are passengers left in the car, it will alert the driver through the mobile phone.

二级报警

Second-class alarm

当 ROD 系统检测到车内有乘客遗留，手机提醒驾驶员后仍无操作，车辆会进行鸣笛和闪灯报警。

When the ROD System detects that there are passengers left in the car, there is still no operation after the mobile phone reminds the driver, the vehicle will honk and flash the lights to alarm.

关闭报警 Close the alarm

通过解锁车门或操作手机 APP，可关闭当前报警。

The alarm can be closed by unlocking the door and using APP on the phone.

定期保养 199

Regular maintenance.....199

日常检查项目 199

Regular inspection items.....199

清洁和养护 199

Cleaning and maintenance.....199

外部保养..... 199

External maintenance.....199

前舱流水槽 201

Front launder.....201

内部保养..... 202

Internal maintenance.....202

自行维护 204

Self maintenance.....204

发动机舱..... 204

Compartment of engine.....204

机舱布置 205

Arrangement of compartment.....205

发动机机油 206

Engine oil.....206

发动机冷却液..... 208

Coolant of engine.....208

制动液..... 208

Brake fluid.....208

玻璃洗涤剂检查 209

Inspection of glass washing

liquid.....209

空气滤清器 210

Air filter.....210

燃油滤清器 210

Fuel filter.....210

蓄电池 210

Battery.....213

空调滤清器211

Cabin filter.....211

轮胎 212

Tyres.....212

保养与维护 Maintenance

定期保养 Regular maintenance

定期保养详见第十一章“质量三包”中“定期维护保养项目表”的内容。

For details of regular maintenance, please refer to the content of the item table of regular maintenance in Chapter 11 Three Guarantees of Quality.

日常检查项目

Regular inspection items

项目 Items	检查内容 Inspection contents
发动机机油液位 Oil level of engine	应在每次加油时检查发动机机油液位。 Check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
发动机冷却液液位 Coolant of engine	应在每次加油时检查冷却液液位。 Check the level of coolant every time you refuel
刹车踏板 Brake pedal	每次开车前检查刹车踏板是否操作自如。 Check whether the brake pedal is operating smoothly before each drive.
喇叭 Horns	每次开车前检查喇叭是否正常。 Check whether horns are normal before each drive.
车门 Doors	检查后背门及其他所有的车门（包括后排车门）是否开闭自如、上锁牢固。 Check whether the back door and all other doors (including the rear doors) are open and close freely and lock securely.
空调系统 Air-conditioning system	每周都应检查空调装置的运转情况。 Check operation of air-conditioning each week
洗涤液 Cleaning	应每月检查一次洗涤液的存量。

项目 Items	检查内容 Inspection contents
雨刮器 Windscreen wiper	每月检查一次雨刮器状况。 Check condition of windscreen wiper each month
制动器和离合器 Brake and clutch	每月检查一次制动液液位。 Check level of brake fluid each month
轮胎 Tyres	每月检查一次轮胎胎压。检查胎面的磨损状况及是否嵌有异物。 Check the tyre pressure once a month. Check the wear and tear of the tread and foreign objects embedded in it.
蓄电池 Battery	每月检查一次蓄电池的状况以及端子的腐蚀状况。 Check the condition of the battery and the corrosion of the terminals once a month
挡风玻璃除霜装置 Defroster of windshield	每月都应在使用暖风装置和空调时，检查除霜装置出风口。 Check the outlet of the defroster when using the heating unit and air conditioner once a month.
车灯 Lamps	每月检查一次前大灯、小灯、尾灯、高位制动灯及牌照灯的状况。 Check the condition of headlights, small lights, tail lights, high braking lights and license plate lights once a month.

清洁和养护 Cleaning and maintenance

外部保养 External Maintenance

定期专业的养护可使车辆保持较好的状态。下文将介绍如何保持车辆外观的清洁，其中包括：洗车、油漆、抛光与车轮等，以及有关防腐的措施。

Regular professional maintenance can keep the vehicle in good conditions. The following section will describe how to keep the appearance of the vehicle clean, including car washing, paint, polishing and wheels, as well as anti-corrosion measures.

洗车 Car washing

经常洗车，有助于保护车辆的外观。灰尘和砂砾会划伤漆面，树叶和鸟粪会永久性损坏车身表面的光洁度。建议在阴凉处清洗车身。

Frequent car washing can help protect the appearance of the vehicle. Dust and gravel can scratch the paint, and leaves and bird droppings can permanently damage the fineness of the body surface. It is recommended to wash the body in a cool place.

只能使用《使用及三包手册》中所推荐的溶剂和清洁剂。在擦干车身的同时，要检查车身有无掉漆或划痕。如果有发现，则要用修补漆将其修补完好。

Solvents and cleaners that are recommended in Manual of Use and Three Guarantees are used. While drying the body, check the body for paint losses or scratches. If anything is found, it should be repaired with repairing coating.



注意 Notice

- 清洗车辆时使用化学溶剂和强力清洁剂会损坏车身的油漆、金属和塑料零部件。建议使用凉水彻底冲洗车辆，以清除浮尘。
- Chemical solvents and strong cleaners for cleaning vehicles can damage paint, metal and plastic parts of the vehicle. It is recommended to thoroughly rinse the vehicle with cool water to remove floating dust.
- 检查车身有无沥青、树叶等污物，用沥青清除剂或松节油清除此类污物，然后立即用清水冲洗，以免损坏车身表面的光洁度。
- Check the body for dirt such as asphalt and leaves, and remove such dirt with asphalt remover or turpentine, and then rinse immediately with clean water to avoid damaging the fineness of the body surface.
- 清洗完整个车身后外表后，应用软毛巾将其擦干。在空气中自然晾干会导致车身后外表失去光泽或形成水渍。
- After cleaning the entire body, use a soft towel to dry it. Natural drying in the air can cause the surface of the body to lose luster or form water spots.

打蜡 Waxing

车辆打蜡有利于防止粘附灰尘和道路上的化学物质。在清洗和擦干车辆后，才可以进行打蜡作业，至少每三个月打一次蜡，这样有助于保护车身。应使用优质液体蜡或糊状蜡。使用时，应参照包装上的说明进行操作。

Waxing helps prevent adhesion to dust and chemicals on the road. After cleaning and drying the vehicle, waxing can only be carried out and it should be conducted at least every three months, which helps to protect the body. High-quality liquid or paste waxes should be used. When waxes are used, it should be done according to the instructions on the manual.

一般有以下两类产品：

There are generally two products:

1. 车身蜡 Body wax

车身蜡是一种敷在漆面上用以保护其免受阳光照晒、空气污染等损坏的蜡。建议新车使用半年左右再打车身蜡。

Body wax is a wax that is applied to the paint to protect the body from damage such as sun exposure and air pollution. It is recommended that the new car be used for about half a year before applying body wax.

2. 抛光蜡 Polishing wax

抛光蜡可以修复已经被氧化或者失去光泽的漆面，使其重放光彩。此类蜡一般含有柔和的研磨料和溶剂，可以除去被氧化的漆面表层。如果打了车身蜡后漆面未能恢复原来的光泽，应该涂上抛光蜡。

Polishing wax repairs paint that has been oxidized or tarnished, allowing the body to regain its luster. The wax generally contains soft abrasives and solvents that remove the oxidized surface of the paint. If the surface of the paint does not return to its original luster after applying body wax, the surface should be coated with polishing wax.



注意 Notice

用清洗剂清除沥青、昆虫等污物时，会造成脱蜡。因此，需要在脱蜡位置补蜡。When cleaning agents are used to remove dirt such as asphalt and insects, it will cause dewaxing. Therefore, it is necessary to replenish the wax at the dewaxing position.

漆面的修补 Mending of paint

油漆涂层上出现小的裂纹和划痕时，应立即使用专用修补涂膜或修补漆进行修补，以防止腐蚀。

When small cracks and scratches appear on the coating of paint, it should be repaired immediately with special repairing coating film or repairing coating to prevent corrosion.

铝合金车轮 Alloy wheel

在清洗车身外部时，应同时清洗车辆的铝合金车轮。清洗完成后，再用水彻底冲洗铝合金车轮。

When cleaning the exterior of the body, the alloy wheels of the vehicle should be cleaned at the same time. After cleaning, rinse the wheels thoroughly with water.

前舱流水槽 Front launder

前舱流水槽位于前挡风玻璃前方，雨刮盖板下方。是车辆前部非常重要的水路通流结构。

The front launder is located in front of the front windshield and under the wiper cover. It is a very important structure of waterway flow in the front of the vehicle.

应每5000公里检查一次前舱流水槽的排水状况，尽量保证雨刮盖板的干净

整洁，避免流水槽内部排水孔堵塞或积水导致相关用电设备损坏。如果发现有堵塞和积水的现象，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

The drainage status of the front launder should be checked every 5,000 kilometers, and the wiper cover should be as clean and tidy as possible to avoid blockage of the drainage hole inside the flow tank or the damage of the relevant electrical equipment caused by the accumulation of water. If you find that there is a phenomenon of blockage and water accumulation, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station in time.

内部保养 Internal maintenance

地毯 Carpet

应经常用吸尘器吸去地毯上的灰尘。积尘过多会加快地毯的损坏。定期用洗涤剂洗刷，可使地毯保洁如新。

Dust on the carpet should always be sucked off with a vacuum cleaner. Too much dust can speed up damage of carpet. Regular scrubbing with detergent can make the carpet as clean as new.

编织物 Braided fabric

应经常用吸尘器吸去编织物上的灰尘及污物。可使用低温的中性肥皂水清洗，然后在空气中晾干。

Vacuum cleaners should always be used to remove dust and dirt from the

braided fabric. It can be washed with low-temperature, neutral soapy water and then left to dry in the air.

维尼龙

Vinylon

用吸尘器除去灰尘和污物。用浸有中性肥皂水的软布擦洗维尼龙，除去难以清除的污渍。也可以使用喷雾型或泡沫型维尼龙清洁剂。

Remove dust and dirt with a vacuum cleaner. Scrub the vinylon with a soft cloth soaked in neutral soapy water to remove stains that are difficult to remove. Spray or foamed vinylon cleaners can also be used.

皮革 Leather

要经常用吸尘器吸去皮革上的灰尘及污物，尤其是皱折和接缝处。可以用柔软的布沾上清水来清洁皮革，然后再用另一柔软的干布将其擦干。如果需要进一步清洗，可以使用清洗皮革专用的肥皂。

A vacuum cleaner is always used to remove dust and dirt from the leather, especially that at creases and seams. The leather can be cleaned with a soft cloth soaked in water and then dried with another soft dry cloth. If further cleaning is required, a soap specially used for washing leather can be used.

车窗 Windows

用玻璃洗涤剂清洗车窗内外侧。用软布或纸巾擦干所有的玻璃和塑料表面。

Wash the inside and outside of the windows with glass detergent. Dry all glass and plastic surfaces with a soft cloth or paper towel.

座椅安全带 Seat belts

如果座椅安全带变脏，可用软刷蘸中性温肥皂水擦洗。不要使用漂白粉、染料或清洁溶剂，此类物品会降低座椅安全带的耐用性。安全带未干之前，不得使用。

If the seat belt becomes dirty, scrub with a soft brush dipped in neutral warm soapy water. Do not use bleach, dyes or cleaning solvents, as such items can reduce the durability of seat belts. Do not use the seat belt until it has dried.

座椅安全带出口处搭环积尘太多会导致座椅安全带收缩迟缓。用干净软布蘸中性温肥皂水或异丙基酒精擦洗搭环内侧。不建议对座椅安全带进行拆解清洗，如必须通过拆解才能清洗，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

Too much dust at the loop of the seat belt can cause the seat belt to shrink slowly. Scrub the inside of the loop with a clean soft cloth dampened in neutral, warm soapy water or isopropyl alcohol. It is not recommended to disassemble the seat belt for cleaning, but if it must be dismantled to clean, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

空气清新剂 Air freshener

如需在车内使用空气清新剂或除臭剂，建议选用固体型，有些液体空气清新剂中含有的化学成份，会引起车内饰物和编织物的纤维断裂或褪色。

If you need to use air fresheners or deodorants in the car, it is recommended to use a solid type, because some liquid air fresheners contain chemical components that will cause the fibers of the interior and braids fabric to break or fade.

如果使用液体空气清新剂，应确保将其固定妥当，以免行车时溅出。

If liquid air fresheners are used, make sure to secure them properly to avoid spillage while driving

防腐蚀 Anti-corrosion

车辆底部容易积聚盐、污物和湿气。车辆油漆被刮除或被石头、沙砾磨损等会导致金属失去保护，暴露在外从而导致车辆生锈。预防生锈通常的措施有：

The bottom of the vehicle is prone to have salt, dirt and moisture. The fact that paint is scraped off or worn by stone and gravel can cause the metal to lose protection and exposed, thus causing the vehicle to rust. Common measures to prevent rust includes:

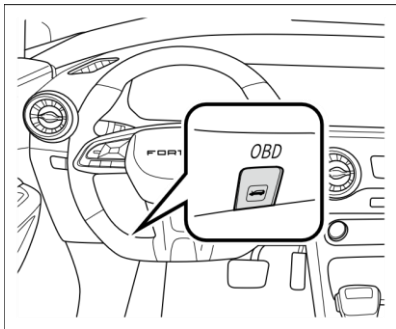
- 保持车辆清洁。
- Keep the vehicle clean.
- 保持车库干燥。
- Keep the garage dry.
- 保持漆面和装饰物处于良好状态。

- Keep the paint and ornaments in good condition.
- 定期做车内保养等。
- Make routine maintenance for the interior of the vehicle.

自行维护 Self maintenance

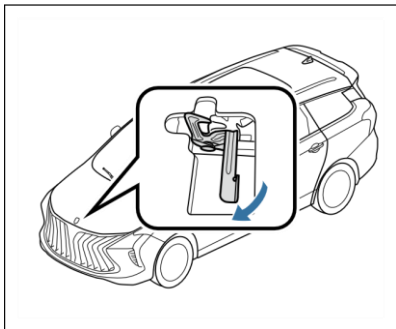
发动机舱 Compartment of engine

打开发动机舱盖 Open the engine hood



1. 拉动位于仪表台左侧下方的发动机舱盖开启手柄，发动机舱盖会稍微弹起。

Pull the opening handle of hood located under the left side of the dashboard and the cover will bounce slightly.

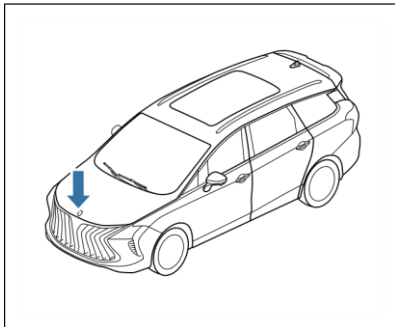


2. 向左拨动保险锁杆并抬起发动机

舱盖。

Flick the bumper lever to the left and lift the hood.

关闭发动机舱盖 Close the hood of engine



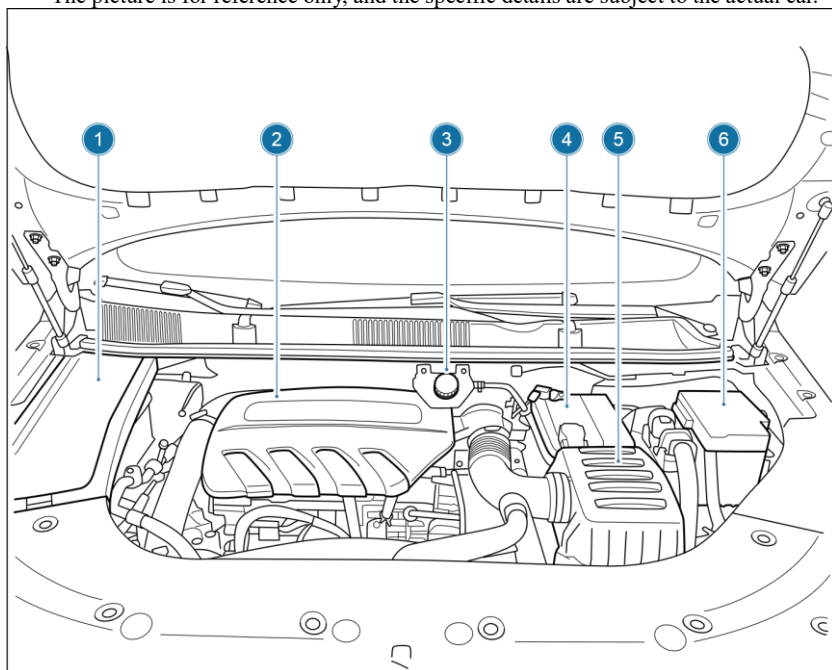
未配备发动机舱盖气撑杆的车型，将发动机舱盖抬升至距离关闭位置30厘米左右的高度，然后释放，使其自由下落即可关闭。配置发动机舱盖气撑杆的车型，将发动机舱盖下拉至距离关闭位置30厘米左右的高度，然后下推至关闭即可，并确认锁止到位。如果未锁止到位，请用力按压发动机舱盖前端中部直至其完全合上。

For models without air brace of hood, raise the cover to a height of about 30 cm from the closing position and release it so that it can fall freely and close. For models with air brace of hood, pull the hood down to a height of about 30 cm from the closing position, then push it down to close and confirm that the lock is in place. If it is not locked in place, press firmly on the middle of the front of the hood until it is fully closed.

机舱布置 Arrangement of compartment

图片仅供参考，具体以实车为准。

The picture is for reference only, and the specific details are subject to the actual car.



- | | | | |
|----|--|----|-----------------------------------|
| 1. | 机舱内检修口盖
Cover of internal access port | 5. | Battery
发动机空气滤清器
Air filter |
| 2. | 发动机装饰罩
Decorative cover of engine | 6. | 发动机舱保险丝盒
Fuse box |
| 3. | 制动液储液罐
Storage tank of brake fluid | | |
| 4. | 蓄电池
Battery | | |

发动机机油 Engine oil

机油选择 Choice of fuel

请选择适合您车辆的发动机机油

Please choose proper oil for your vehicle

适用条件 Application conditions	机型 Model	机油牌号 Oil	加注量 Volume of charging
四季通用 All year	4A95 TD	SP5W-30 (LA)	3.5L

本车无需任何机油添加剂。添加剂不能改善发动机及自动变速器的性能。

The car does not require any oil additives. Additives do not improve the performance of engine and automatic transmission.



注意 Notice

因使用添加剂而对发动机造成的不良后果，东风柳州汽车有限公司将不承担任何责任。
Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd. will not take any responsibility for the adverse consequences caused by the use of additives.

装配 GPF（汽油颗粒捕集器）的国六车辆对于润滑油的技术要求

Technical requirements of lubricant for China VI vehicles with Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF)

GPF 的主要作用就是过滤尾气中的颗粒物，减少尾气中颗粒物的浓度和数量。

The main role of GPF is to filter the particulates in the exhaust gas and reduce the concentration and amount of particulates in the exhaust gas.

随着使用时间增加，GPF 收集的颗粒物会越来越多，累积到一定程度就会堵塞 GPF 颗粒捕集器，导致排气不畅，影响发动机动力。

As the use time increases, GPF collects more and more particulates, and GPF will be blocked when accumulation reaches a certain extent, resulting in poor exhaust and affecting engine power

润滑油在参与发动机润滑的过程中，会有部分进入燃烧室被燃烧，并随发动机排气进入三元催化和 GPF 颗粒捕集器等排放处理装置，由于润滑油燃烧后形

成的灰分为金属盐物质，无法通过再生清除，逐渐累积在 GPF 中，进而造成 GPF 堵塞。

In the process of participating in lubrication of engine, the lubricating oil will partially enter the combustion chamber and be burned, and enter the emission treatment device such as three-way catalysis and GPF with the engine exhaust. Because the ash formed after the combustion of the lubricating oil is metal salts which cannot be removed by regeneration and gradually accumulates in the GPF, blockage of GPF is caused.

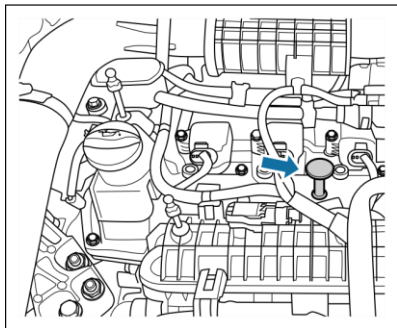
灰分的形成和润滑油添加剂物质有很大关系，为了减少灰分，要使用低灰分和高级别的机油，东风风行专用的“统一石化低灰分 SP5W-30 (LA)”机油，灰分低，能够有效减少 GPF 阻塞，保障发动机正常有效工作，进而降低养护成本。

Formation of ash is closely connected with additives of the lubricating oil, so low-ash and high-grade oil should be used to reduce ash. SP5W-30 (LA) used by Dongfeng FORTHING is low-ash, which can reduce the blockage of GPF, guarantee the normal and effective operation of the engine and cut the cost of maintenance.

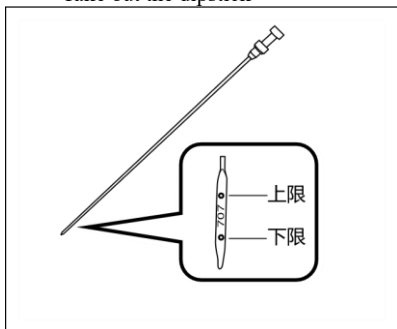
发动机机油液位检查 Engine oil level check

发动机机油是保证发动机正常运转的消耗品，应定期检查其液位。例如，每次长途旅行前，应将车辆停放水平路面上并预热发动机几分钟后关闭发动机，等待约 5 分钟后，再检查发动机机油液位。检查前需要先将发动机装饰罩拆除。

Engine oil is a consumable product to ensure the normal operation of the engine, and should be checked regularly. For example, before each long trip, the vehicle should be parked on a horizontal road and preheated for a few minutes, and then turn off the engine. Check the level of engine oil after waiting about 5 minutes. The engine trim cover needs to be removed before inspection.



1. 取出机油尺。
Take out the dipstick

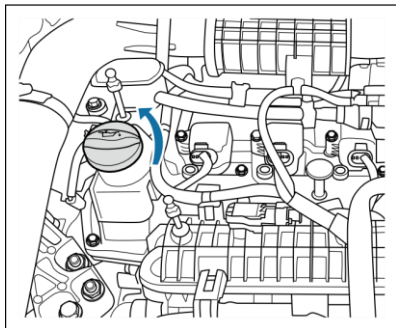


2. 用干净的布或纸巾擦净机油尺。
Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. 将机油尺全部插回管套。
Insert the dipstick back into the tube sleeve.
4. 再次取出机油尺，检查发动机机油液位。液位必须处于上下限的标记之间。如果低于下限标记，应该及时补充发动机机油，使油位处于正常范围内。
Take out the dipstick again to check the level of engine oil. The level must be between the upper and lower limits. If it is below the lower limit, the engine oil should be replenished in time to keep the oil level within the normal range.

 **警告** Warning

需定期检查发动机机油液位。如果因发动机机油不足而对发动机造成的损坏不属于保修范围。
Engine oil level needs to be checked regularly. Damage to the engine due to insufficient engine oil is not covered by the warranty.

发动机机油补充 Replenishment of engine oil



1. 拧开发动机机油加注口盖，补充发动机机油。
Remove the filler cap of engine oil to replenish oil.
2. 扣上发动机机油加注口盖并拧紧。预热发动机几分钟后关闭发动机，大约 5 分钟后，再次查看机油尺上的发动机机油液位。
Fasten the engine oil filler cap and tighten it. Turn off the engine after a few minutes of preheating, and check the level of engine oil with the dipstick again after about 5 minutes.

任何情况下，发动机机油液面不得超过机油尺的上限位置，否则发动机机油会经曲轴箱通风口吸入进气系统，参与燃烧后通过排气系统排入大气中。发动机机油可能在三元催化净化器中燃烧并损坏三元催化净化器。还可能会造成发动机缸内火花塞积碳。

In any case, the level of engine oil shall not exceed the upper limit of the dipstick, otherwise, the engine oil will be sucked into the intake system through the crankcase vent and be discharged into the atmosphere through the exhaust system after participating in combustion. Engine oil may combust in the three-way catalytic converter and damage the three-way

catalytic converter. It may also cause carbon deposition in the spark plug in the engine cylinder.

警告 Warning

应缓慢倒入发动机机油，以免溢出。如果溢出应立即清理，以免损坏发动机。

Engine oil should be poured slowly to avoid spillage. If there is an overflow, it should be cleaned up immediately so as not to damage the engine.

机油更换 Replacement of oil

发动机机油对发动机的运转和使用寿命起重要作用，必须按照质量三包中规定的保养时间间隔进行更换。更换发动机机油请联系东风风行特约服务站。

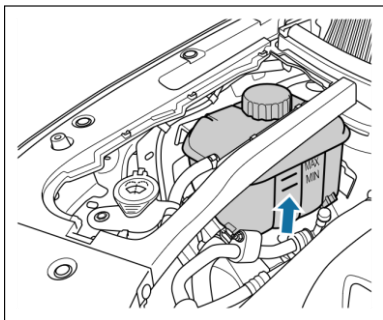
Engine oil plays an important role in the operation and service life of the engine and must be replaced according to the maintenance intervals specified in the Three Guarantees of Quality. For the replacement of engine oil, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

警告 Warning

- 如果皮肤不小心接触到了发动机机油，必须彻底清洗干净。
- If the skin accidentally comes into contact with engine oil, it must be thoroughly washed.
- 请遵照相关环境保护法处理使用过的发动机机油。
- Dispose of used engine oils in accordance with the relevant environmental protection laws.

发动机冷却液 Coolant of engine

冷却液液位检查 Inspection of coolant level



查看冷却液液位是否处于上限（MAX）与下限（MIN）刻度线之间，如果低于下限刻度线，往冷却液膨胀罐中添加冷却液至上限位置附近。

Check if the coolant level is between the upper and lower tick marks, and if it is below the lower tick mark, add coolant to the coolant expansion tank near the upper limit.

冷却液补充

Replenishment of coolant

打开冷却液膨胀罐盖即可添加冷却液，添加结束后将盖子盖紧。不同品牌的冷却液不能混用，否则容易发生化学反应，影响发动机的使用寿命，请使用东风风行指定的四季防冻冷却液。请勿用防冻液与水代替四季防冻冷却液。

Coolant can be added by opening the cover of coolant expansion tank and the cover should be tightened after the addition is complete. Different brands of coolant can not be mixed, otherwise it is easy to generate chemical reactions, affecting the service life of the engine. Please use the four-season antifreeze specified by Dongfeng FORTHING. Do not replace the four-season antifreeze with antifreeze and water.

警告 Warning

在发动机未完全冷却时，打开冷却液膨胀罐盖，可能会导致冷却液喷出，造成严重烫伤。在打开冷却液膨胀罐盖之前，必须确认发动机及散热器均已冷却。

Opening the cover of coolant expansion tank when the engine is not completely cooled may cause the coolant to spew out, thus causing severe burns. Before opening the cover of coolant expansion tank, it must be confirmed that both the engine and radiators have cooled.

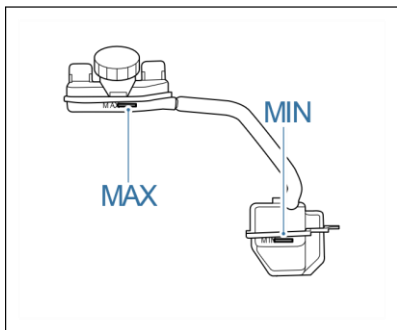
冷却液更换 Replacement of coolant

正常情况下，每2年或2万公里需要更换一次冷却液，先到先换。

Under normal circumstances, the coolant needs to be changed every 2 years or 20,000 kilometers, and the one that comes first should be changed first.

制动液 Brake fluid

制动液检查 Inspection of brake fluid




1. 应每月检查一次储液罐内的液位。
The level of storage tank should be checked once a month.
2. 液位应处于储液罐罐壁上的下限 (MIN)与上限(MAX)刻度线之间。如果液位处于或者低于下限 (MIN) 刻度线, 请及时联系东风风行特约服务站进行检查。
The level should be between the lower and upper limit tick marks on the tank wall. If the level is at or below the lower limit tick mark, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station in time for inspection.

制动液更换

Replacement of brake fluid

制动液会吸收空气中的水分, 过高的含水量会引起制动系统的受腐蚀而损伤, 制动液的沸点也会明显下降, 应按照定期保养表的要求及时更换制动液。更换制动液请联系东风风行特约服务站。

Brake fluid will absorb water in the air, and excessive water content will cause corrosion and damage to the brake system and the boiling point of the brake fluid will also drop significantly. Therefore, replacement of brake fluid should be done timely in accordance with the requirements of the regular maintenance table. For replacement of the brake fluid, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

 警告 Warning

- 务必使用东风风行指定的制动液或东风风行认可的密闭容器所封装的 DOT4 同等级产品, 不同制动液不可以混用。
- It is necessary to use the brake fluid specified by Dongfeng FORTHING or the same grade products of DOT4 encapsulated in the closed container approved by Dongfeng FORTHING, and different brake fluids cannot be mixed.
- 请勿将制动液与含矿物油的液体 (发动机机油、汽油等) 混合, 矿物油会损坏制动装置的密封件和密封塞。
- Do not mix brake fluid with liquids containing mineral oil (engine oil and gasoline), which can damage the sealing and plugs of the braking device.
- 制动液是有毒的, 应放在儿童够不到的地方, 一旦误食, 应立即到医院检查。
- Brake fluid is toxic and should be placed out of reach of children, and once ingested, it should be immediately go to the hospital for examination.
- 制动液有腐蚀性, 不允许与油漆接触, 一旦溢出到油漆上, 需用大量的水清洗。
- Brake fluid is corrosive and not allowed to contact with the paint, and once it is spilled onto the paint, it needs to be cleaned with a lot of water.
- 制动液会损伤皮肤, 如果不小心溅到皮肤或眼睛, 需要大量清水清洗, 如感觉到不适, 应立即到医院检查。
- Brake fluid will damage the skin, and if it is accidentally splashed on the skin or eyes, you need a lot of water to wash. If you feel uncomfortable, you should immediately go to the hospital for examination.

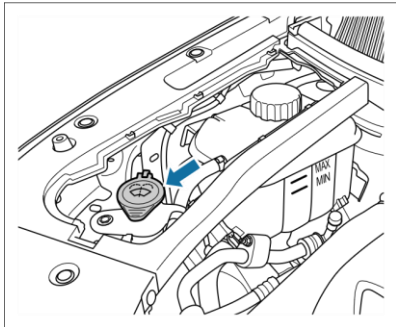
制动液保养及技术要求

Maintenance and technical requirements of brake fluid

1. 制动液保养周期为每 2 年或 4 万公里更换, 年限或公里数以先到者为准。The maintenance period of brake fluid is replaced every 2 years or 40,000 kilometers, and the number of years or kilometers is determined by the first to come.
2. 制动液技术要求应符合 GB12981 相关规定。
Technical requirements of brake fluid should be in accordance with requirements of GB12981.

玻璃洗涤液检查

Inspection of glass washing liquid



查看洗涤液储液罐中是否有足量的洗涤液。

Check if there is a sufficient amount of washing liquid in the tank.

使用雨刮喷水功能发现未喷水时，说明玻璃洗涤液不足，可以适当添加洗涤液。

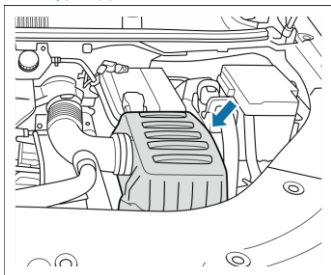
When the wiper does not spray water, it indicates that the glass washing liquid is insufficient, and the washing liquid can be added appropriately.



注意 Notice

- 优质玻璃洗涤液可提高除污能力，并能防止在寒冷天气中冻结。
- High-quality glass washing liquid can improve the ability to remove dirt and prevent freezing in cold weather.
- 建议使用东风风行指定的玻璃洗涤液。防冻剂会损坏车辆的表面喷漆，醋水溶剂会损坏前风窗玻璃洗涤器水泵。
- It is recommended to use the glass washing liquid specified by Dongfeng FORTHING. Antifreeze may damage the surface painting of the vehicle, and vinegar water solvent may damage the water pump of front windshield glass scrubber.

空气滤清器 Air filter



应依照定期保养表规定的时间与里

程数更换空气滤清器。如果空气滤清器安装不当，容易使空气粉尘进入发动机，造成缸体的异常磨损。如需更换空气滤清器，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

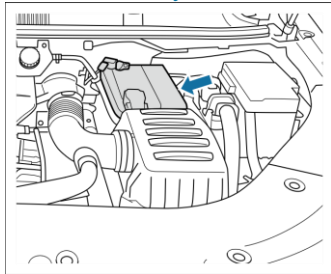
The air filter should be replaced according to the time and mileage specified in the regular maintenance table. If the air filter is not properly installed, it is easy to let air dust enter the engine, causing abnormal wear and tear on the cylinder block. If the air filter needs to be replaced, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

燃油滤清器 Fuel filter

应依照定期保养表中规定的时间与里程数更换燃油滤清器。建议每3年或6万公里，或者发现燃油受污染时，更换燃油滤清器。在多尘地区行驶，会更容易堵塞滤清器，请适当缩短更换周期。如需更换燃油滤清器，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

The fuel filter should be replaced according to the time and mileage specified in the regular maintenance table. It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 3 years or 60,000 kilometers or when the fuel is found to be contaminated. Driving in dusty areas will make it easier to clog the filter, so please shorten the replacement cycle appropriately. If the air filter needs to be replaced, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

蓄电池 Battery



本车配有免维护型蓄电池，蓄电池位于发动机舱右侧，主要是为发动机启动提供电能。如蓄电池严重亏电，则会造

成发动机无法启动。

The car is equipped with a maintenance-free battery, which is located on the right side of the engine compartment and mainly provides power for engine start-up. If the battery is seriously lack of electricity, it will cause the engine to fail to start.

蓄电池的使用和注意事项

Precaution on the use of battery

- 不要在发动机停止工作的时候长时间打开车灯、音响、雨刮器等电器。
- Do not turn on the headlights, sound, wiper and other electrical appliances for a long time when the engine stops working.
- 如需停车超过五天以上，建议将蓄电池负极端子拔下，防止车上电器消耗蓄电池电量。
- If you need to park the vehicle for more than five days, it is recommended to unplug the negative terminal of the battery to prevent the electrical appliances on the car from consuming the power.
- 停车后，要注意灯光、音响、空调等电器是否已关闭。
- After parking, check whether the lights, sounds, air conditioners and other electrical appliances have been turned off.
- 应每月检查一次蓄电池状况。检查端子是否被腐蚀（白色或淡黄色的粉末）。如有腐蚀，请联系东风风行特约服务站。
- Battery condition should be checked once a month. Check the terminals for corrosion (white or light yellow powder). If there is corrosion, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

接触电解液的应急处理

Emergency treatment of contacting electrolyte

蓄电池电解液有强腐蚀性和剧毒，如不慎接触，请按以下方式处理：

Battery electrolyte is highly corrosive

and toxic, and if you accidentally contact it, please treat it in the following way:

- 眼睛接触：用杯子或其它容器盛水冲洗至少 15 分钟，并立即就医。
- Eye contact: Rinse with water in a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes and seek immediate medical attention.
- 皮肤接触：脱掉被污染的衣物，用大量清水冲洗皮肤，并立即就医。
- Skin contact: Take off contaminated clothing, rinse the skin with plenty of water and seek immediate medical attention.
- 误饮电解液：喝水或牛奶，并立即就医。
- Accidental drinking of electrolyte: Drink water or milk and seek medical attention immediately.



警告 Warning

- 如果需要将蓄电池连接到其它充电器上，应将正负极电缆都断开，以免损坏车上的电器设备。应先断开负极电缆，重新装接时，需要最后连接负极电缆。
- If you need to connect the battery to other chargers, the positive and negative cables should be disconnected so as not to damage the electrical equipment on the car. The negative cable should be disconnected first and connected last during re-connection.
- 正常运转时，蓄电池会产生可燃性氢气。火星或明火会引起蓄电池爆炸，其爆炸能量足以造成严重伤害。
- During normal operation, the battery will produce explosive hydrogen. Sparks or an open flame can cause a battery to explode, and its explosive energy is enough to cause serious damage.

空调滤清器 Cabin filter

空调滤清器能除去空调系统从外界带入的花粉和灰尘。

Cabin filter can remove pollen and dust by air conditioning system from the outside.

空调滤清器在每隔两万公里的定期保养时必须更换。请参见三包手册中“定期维护保养项目表”的内容。

Cabin filters must be replaced every 20,000 kilometers during regular maintenance. See the regular maintenance table in the Three Guarantees Manual.

更换空调滤清器

Replacement of cabin filter

空调滤清器位于手套箱内。

Cabin filter is in the glove box.

1. 打开手套箱。
Open the glove box
2. 挤压空调滤清器上下两侧，使之脱离两侧的凸舌，拆出滤清器。
Squeeze the upper and lower sides of the cabin filter to make it leave the tabs on both sides and remove the filter.
3. 插入新的空调滤清器。
Place the new cabin filter.
4. 关闭手套箱。
Close the glove box.

长期不使用空调时

When the air conditioning is not used for a long time

即使在天气寒冷的月份也应至少每两周开启一次空调，每次至少 5 分钟。这是为了防止压缩机内部的零件润滑恶化，以使空调保持最佳的运转状态。

Even in cold months, the air conditioner should be turned on at least once every two weeks for at least 5 minutes each time. This is to prevent the lubrication of parts inside the compressor from deteriorating, so that the air conditioner can be kept in optimal operating condition.

轮胎 Tyres

为安全驾驶车辆，轮胎的型号和尺寸必须适合，并具有状态良好的胎纹和适当胎压。

In order to drive the vehicle safely, the model and size of the tyres must be suitable and have a good tread and proper tyre pressure.



注意 Notice

- 使用过度磨损或胎压不足的轮胎将会引发事故，造成人身伤害。
- Using tyres that are overly worn or have insufficient tyre pressure will cause accidents and personal injury.
- 必须遵守本《使用及三包手册》中关于轮胎充气及保养的所有说明。
- All requirements about tyre charging and maintenance in Manual of Use and Three Guarantees should be complied.

胎压标签 Label of tyre pressure

Tyre pressure 轮胎气压	
215/55R18	
Front wheel 前轮	230kPa (2.3kgf/cm ²)
Front wheel 后轮	230kPa (2.3kgf/cm ²)
T125/80R17	
420kPa (2.3kgf/cm ²)	
Caution is strictly requested to inflate as the above requirement	
警告：必须严格按照上表要求对轮胎进行充气	

本车贴有胎压标签。该标签位于主驾车门框下方，标明了车辆前后轮气压和备胎气压。

This car has the label of tyre pressure. The label, located below the door frame of the driver, indicates the pressure of front and rear tyres and spare tyre.

对于胎压，需注意以下几点：

There are several items that need attention for tyre pressure:

- 每次开车前，建议目视检查一下轮胎。
- It is recommended to check tyres before each driving.
- 如有必要，应给轮胎充气或放气，使胎压达到标签上所推荐的冷态胎压。
- If necessary, the tyre should be inflated or deflated so that the tyre pressure reaches the cold tyre pressure recommended on the label.

如果在轮胎处于热态时（行驶数公里后）检查胎压，压力读数将比冷态时的读数高 30 至 40kPa，此类现象是正常的，不要为了达到规定的冷态胎压读数而放气，这将导致轮胎胎压不足。

If the tyre pressure is checked when the tyre is in a hot state (after several kilometers of travel), the pressure reading will be 30 to 40 kPa higher than the reading in the cold state. Such a phenomenon is normal, and do not deflate in order to achieve the specified cold tyre pressure reading, which will cause the tyre pressure to be insufficient.

胎压监测系统

Tyre pressure monitoring system

胎压监测系统用于动态监测轮胎的压力及温度，当轮胎压力等出现异常时，组合仪表会出现相应的报警信息（详见第三章“组合仪表”中的“警告灯”部分）。

Tyre pressure monitoring system is used to dynamically monitor the pressure and temperature of the tyre, and when the tyre pressure is abnormal, the instrument pack will appear corresponding alarm information (details are shown in "warning lights" of Chapter 3 Instrument Pack)



注意 Notice

- 请保持胎压在标准压力值附近，当胎压显示“-”且指定轮胎点亮时，表明胎压监测系统丢失信号，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。
- Please keep the tire pressure near the standard pressure value. When the pressure indicates "-" and corresponding tire icon lights up, it indicates tire pressure monitoring system lose signal and please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.
- 无需因安装、拆卸轮胎而重新匹配胎压传感器。但如果轮胎位置调换，胎压传感器的位置产生变化，则需要重新进行胎压匹配。请联系东风风行特约服务站。
- There is no need to re-match the tire pressure sensor due to the installation and removal of the tire. However, if the tire position and the position of the tire pressure sensor change, the tire pressure needs to be re-matched. Please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.
- 在静止情况下显示的胎压信息为车辆最后运行时的信息。因此轮胎在进行放气或充气操作后，如需更新胎压数据，需将车辆以30km/h 以上的速度行驶1分钟，胎压信息界面才会更新数据。
- The tyre pressure information displayed when the vehicle is stationary is the information of the last operation of the vehicle. Therefore, if the tyre pressure data needs to be updated after deflation or inflation, the vehicle needs to drive at a speed of more than 30km/h for 1 minute, so that the interface of tyre pressure information will update the data.

轮胎充气 Tyre inflation

保持适当的胎压，可使车辆操纵性、胎面寿命和驾乘舒适性三者达到最佳状态。

Maintaining proper tyre pressure maximizes controllability, tread life and comfort.

充气不足的轮胎磨损不均匀，会影响操纵性和增加油耗。

Under-inflated tyres will cause uneven wear, which can affect controllability and increase fuel consumption.

充气过度的轮胎会降低乘坐舒适性，也更容易因路面不平而受损，并且导致轮胎磨损不均匀。

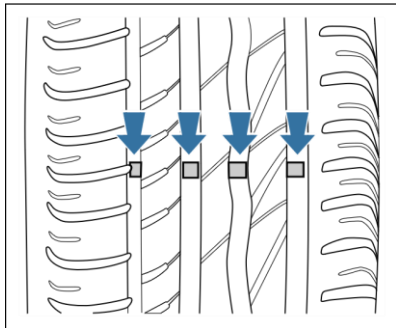
Over-inflated tyres can reduce ride comfort and are more likely to be damaged by uneven road and lead to uneven wear on the tyres.

轮胎检查 Inspection of tyres

在每次检查轮胎充气状态时，还应该同时检查轮胎有无外伤、有无异物刺入及磨损情况。具体检查如下：

Each time the tyre inflation is checked, damage, penetration of foreign materials and wear should also be checked. The specific checks are as follows:

- 轮胎侧面刮伤、裂缝或断裂。如能看到轮胎布或帘线，则应更换轮胎。
- Scratch, crack and fracture of the side of the tyre. If you can see the tyre cloth or cord thread, the tyre should be replaced.
- 过度的胎面磨损。
- Excessive tread wear.



必须使轮胎保持良好的状况，轮胎

表面花纹应有足够深度。可以用轮胎行驶带里面的凸起点来测量轮胎磨损程度。若胎纹厚度小于1.6毫米,就必须更换轮胎,这样的轮胎在湿滑路面上行驶时缺乏附着力。

The tyre must be kept in good condition and the surface pattern of the tyre should be deep enough. The degree of tyre wear can be measured using the bump inside the tyre belt. If the tread thickness is less than 1.6 mm, the tyre must be replaced, because such tyre lacks adhesion when the vehicle drives on slippery roads.

轮胎保养

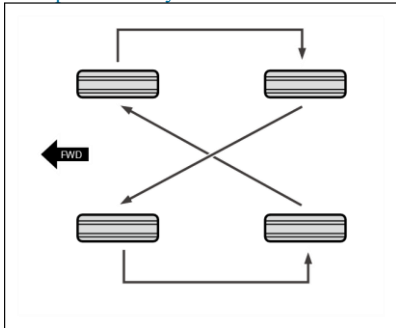
Maintenance of tyres

除适当充气外,正确的车轮定位也有助于减少胎面磨损。如果发现轮胎磨损不均或在驾驶时感觉到某种连续震动,请联系东风风行特约服务站。

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel positioning can also help reduce tread wear. If you find that the tyres are worn unevenly or if some kind of continuous vibration is felt while driving, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

轮胎换位

Transposition of tyres



为延长轮胎使用寿命并使轮胎磨损均匀,应每行驶1万公里调换一次轮胎位置。每次换位时,都应按上图所示方法进行。

In order to extend the life of the tyre and make the tyre wear evenly, the tyre position should be changed every 10,000

kilometers. You should follow the method shown in the figure above during transposition.

车轮与轮胎规格

Wheel and tyre specifications

轮胎规格: 18×6.5J、18×7J

Specification of tyre rim: 18×6.5J、18×7J

轮胎规格: 215/55 R18

Tyre specifications: 215/55 R18

关于适合本车使用的轮胎尺寸,以贴在主驾车门框下方的轮胎标牌为准,或者联系东风风行特约服务站。

- Regarding the tyre size suitable for the car, the tyre sign affixed to the bottom of door frame of the driver shall prevail or contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

更换轮胎与车轮

Replacement of tyres and wheels

应选用尺寸、负荷范围、额定转速以及最大冷胎压(标记在轮胎的侧面)相同的子午线轮胎进行更换。混合使用子午线轮胎和斜纹轮胎,会降低车辆的制动能力、驱动力(地面附着力)以及转向精确度。使用不同尺寸或结构的轮胎会导致ABS系统无法正常工作。

Radial tyres of the same size, load range, rated speed and maximum cold tyre pressure (marked on the side of the tyre) should be used for replacement. Mixing use of radial and twill tyres will reduce the braking power, drive force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy. Using tyres of different sizes or structures can cause the ABS system to fail to work.

ABS系统是通过比较车轮的转速而工作的,所以更换轮胎时,必须使用与车辆原装轮胎尺寸一致的轮胎,否则会影响车轮转速,并可能导致系统动作不协调。只更换一个轮胎会严重影响车辆的操纵性。如需更换轮胎,建议将两个前胎或后胎成对更换,如有必要,可将四个轮胎同时更换。

The ABS system works by comparing the speed of the wheels, so when changing the tyres, it is necessary to use tyres that are the same size as the original tyres of the

vehicle, otherwise the wheel speed will be affected and may cause the system to move in an uncoordinated way. Changing only one tyre can seriously affect the controllability of the vehicle. If a tyre is to be replaced, it is recommended to replace two front or rear tyres in pairs, and if necessary, all four can be replaced at the same time.

如需更换车轮，应确保新车轮的规格与原装车轮的规格一致。在更换车轮之前，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

If wheel replacement is required, the specifications of the new wheels must be the same as that of the original wheels. Before replacing the wheels, please contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

冬季轮胎

Winter tyres

由于夏季轮胎在冬季使用时其适用性有限，建议在冰雪路面上使用冬季轮胎。安装冬季轮胎，应四个车轮同时安装，以确保安全驾驶。只可使用同品牌，同外形的轮胎。购买时，应注意轮胎的尺寸、载重能力和速度等级。遵照登记卡上的标记安装冬季轮胎。

Due to the limited suitability of summer tyre when it is used in winter, it is recommended to use winter tyres on snowy roads. Winter tyres should be installed at the same time with all four wheels to ensure safe driving. Only tyres of the same brand and shape can be used. When purchasing, you should pay attention to the size, load capacity and speed rating of tyres. Install winter tyres according to the markings on the registration card.

如果您选用额定速度较低的冬季轮胎，行驶时，请勿超过轮胎的最大额定速度。

If you choose a winter tyre with a low rated speed, do not exceed the maximum rated speed of the tyre when the vehicle is driving.

防滑链

Antiskid chain

雪地防滑链只能在紧急情况或者在

驾车驶经法律上有明文规定的特定地区时使用。雪地防滑链应安装在驱动轮上，最好四个轮均安装。

Snow chains should only be used in emergency situations or when the vehicle drives through specific areas that are clearly defined by law. Snow chains should be mounted on the drive wheels, preferably on all four wheels.

应选用和车辆轮胎匹配的防滑链，安装防滑链后车辆的操纵性能较差，应低速行驶，避免满载。请仔细阅读部件组装图以及防滑链厂家的其它说明。

Antiskid chains that match the tyres of the vehicle should be selected and the controllability of the vehicle after installing the chains is poor, and it should be driven at a low speed and avoid full loads. Please read the assembly diagram of the parts and other instructions from the manufacturer carefully.

危险警告装置 HAZARD WARNING DEVICE 217

- 危险警告灯 217
- Hazard warning lights.....217
- 三角警告牌 217
- Warning triangles.....217

随车工具及反光背心 TOOLS AND REFLECTIVE VEST 217

更换备胎*REPLACEMENT OF SPARE TYRE* 218

- 更换轮胎前的准备工作 218
- Preparations of replacing spare
tyre.....218
- 取出备胎 218
- Take out the spare tyre.....218
- 顶升车辆 219
- Lift the vehicle.....219
- 更换备胎 219
- Replace the spare tyre.....219
- 固定漏气轮胎 220
- Fix flat tyre.....220

发动机舱保险丝盒布置 ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX ARRANGEMENT 228

室内保险丝盒布置 INTERIOR FUSE BOX ARRANGEMENT 228

车辆牵引 VEHICLE TRACTION 228

- 前部牵引点 Front traction point... 228
- 后部牵引点 Rear traction point. ... 228
- 牵引方法 Traction method..... 228
- 牵引注意事项 Precautions 228

跨接启动 JUMP START 229

发动机过热 ENGINE OVERHEATING 230

- 应对措施 Countermeasures 230

长期停放车辆 LONG-TERM PARKING OF THE VEHICLE 231

应急自助处理

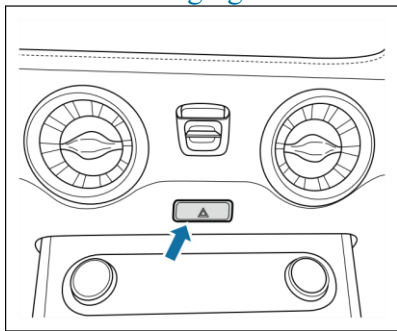
Emergency self-service treatment

危险警告装置

Hazard warning device

危险警告灯

Hazard warning lights

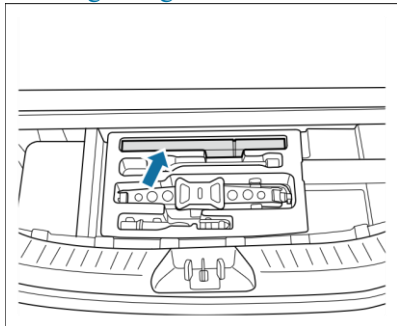


按下空调控制面板上方的危险警告开关，转向灯及组合仪表上的转向和危险信号指示灯开始闪烁，提醒行人和过往车辆注意避让本车。

Press the hazard warning switch above the air conditioning control panel, then the turn light and turn and danger signal indicators on the instrument pack begin to flash to remind pedestrians and passing vehicles to avoid the vehicle.

三角警告牌

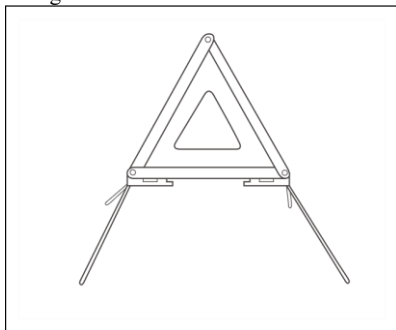
Warning triangles



三角警告牌放置在行李箱盖板下方，

提起盖板即可看见。

The warning triangle is placed under the lid of the suitcase and you can see it by lifting the lid.

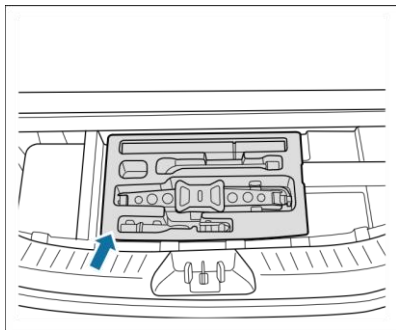


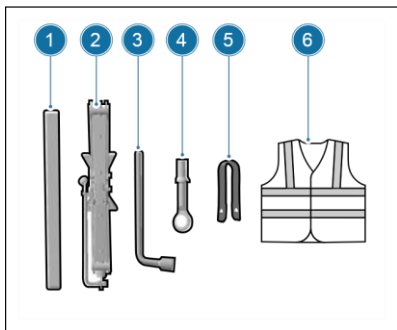
当车辆在行驶途中发生意外，应尽量靠右停车，取出三角警告牌，把三角警告牌背对车辆并立于车辆正后方100~200米的位置提醒后方来车，同时开启危险警告灯。

When an accident occurs during the driving, you should stop as far as possible to the right, take out the warning triangle and put it with its back to the vehicle and stand 100 to 200 meters behind the vehicle to remind the rear oncoming vehicles, and turn on the danger warning light at the same time.

随车工具及反光背心

Tools and reflective vest





1. 三角警告牌 Warning triangle
2. 千斤顶 Jack
3. 车轮螺母扳手 Wheel nut wrench
4. 牵引钩 Traction hook
5. 车轮螺母盖夹子 Clip of wheel nut cover
6. 反光背心 Reflective vest

更换备胎*

Replacement of spare tyre*

更换轮胎前的准备工作

Preparations of replacing spare tyre

将车辆停放在不影响交通，且便于安全更换轮胎的平地上。应急更换轮胎前，应先开启危险警告灯，取出随车工具并在合适的距离放置三角警告牌，以免发生交通事故。

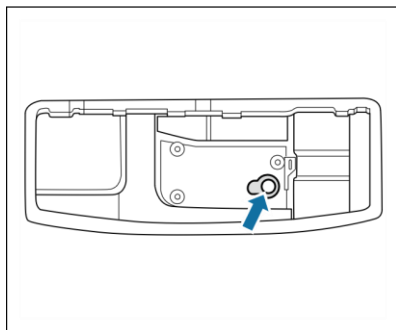
Park your vehicle on a flat ground that does not affect traffic and facilitates safe replacement of tyre. Before replacing the tyre, you should turn on the hazard warning light, take out the tool and place the warning triangle at a suitable distance to avoid traffic accidents.

取出备胎

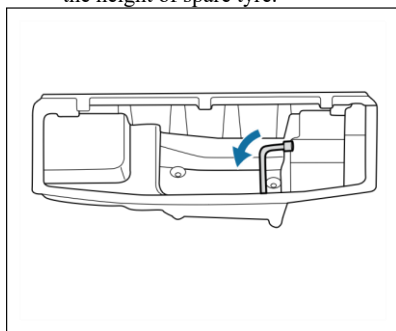
Take out spare tyre

1. 将放置随车工具的卡装泡沫整体拆下，找到备胎拆卸螺母堵盖，然后撬开堵盖。

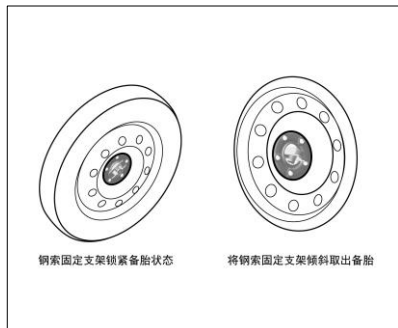
Remove the cartridge foam where the vehicle tool is placed completely, find the cover of spare tyre removal nut and then remove the cover.



2. 将车轮螺母扳手的前端插入孔内，逆时针转动扳手降低备胎高度。
Insert the front end of the wheel nut wrench into the hole and turn the wrench counterclockwise to reduce the height of spare tyre.

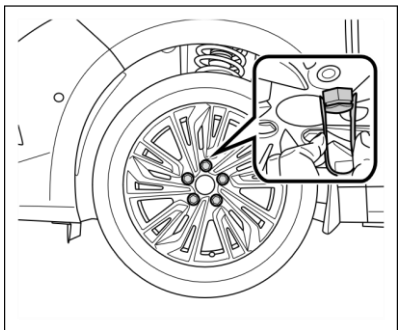


3. 当备胎到达地面时，将备胎从车底后部拉出。从备胎轮毂中心抽出钢索固定支架，取下备胎。
When the spare tyre reaches the ground, pull the spare tyre out of the rear of the car and remove the spare tyre by pulling out the cable fixing bracket from the center of the wheel hub.



4. 顺时针转动车轮螺母扳手以收起钢索固定支架，直到完全固定位置。Turn the wheel nut wrench clockwise to retract the cable fixing bracket until it is fully seated.

顶升车辆 Lift the vehicle

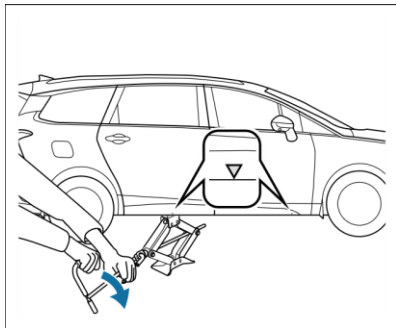


从随车工具中取出车轮螺母盖夹子，用夹子将车轮螺母装饰盖取下。

Take out the clip of the wheel nut cover from tools and use the clip to remove the cover.

顶升车辆前，在与需要更换的轮胎呈对角线的车轮前后各放置一块塞木，然后用扳手将所换车轮螺母拧松半圈。

Before lifting the vehicle, place a plug in front of and behind the wheel that is diagonally aligned with the tyre that needs to be replaced, and then use a wrench to loosen the nuts of the changed wheel by half a turn.



左右车门外侧板上，各有两个千斤顶顶升位置标识点。将千斤顶放置标识点处，然后顶升车辆。

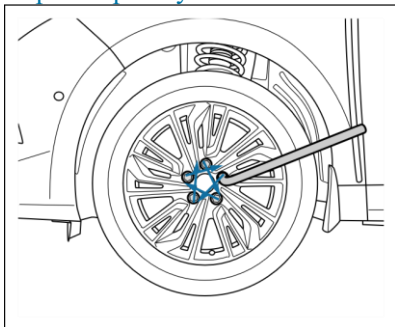
There are two identification points for lifting jack on the left and right outside the door. Place the jack at the point and lift the vehicle.

注意 Notice

不要把千斤顶顶在除规定处以外的任何位置，若顶起位置不正确，可能发生后身凹陷或在车体下落时造成事故。

Do not put the jack in any position other than the specified place. If the position is incorrect, the vehicle body may be dented or cause an accident when the vehicle body falls.

更换备胎 Replace spare tyre



用车轮螺母扳手拆下车轮螺母，取下轮胎。清理轮毂表面的污泥，然后安装上备胎。按图示的交叉顺序拧紧车轮螺母，直至车轮紧靠制动动轮毂为止，将车辆降到地面，取出千斤顶。用同样的交叉方

式，拧紧车轮螺母，然后用车轮螺母盖子装上螺母装饰盖。拧紧车轮螺母时应使用规定的扭矩。

Remove the wheel nuts with a wheel nut wrench and then remove the tyre. Clean the sludge from the surface of the hub and install the spare tyre. Tighten the wheel nuts in the crossover order in accordance with the picture until the wheel is close to the brake hubs, and lower the vehicle to the ground and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the same manner, and then attach the nut decorative cover with the wheel nut cover clips. The specified torque

should be used when the wheel nuts are tightened.

车轮螺母拧紧扭矩：130N·m

Tightening torque of wheel nuts:
130N·m

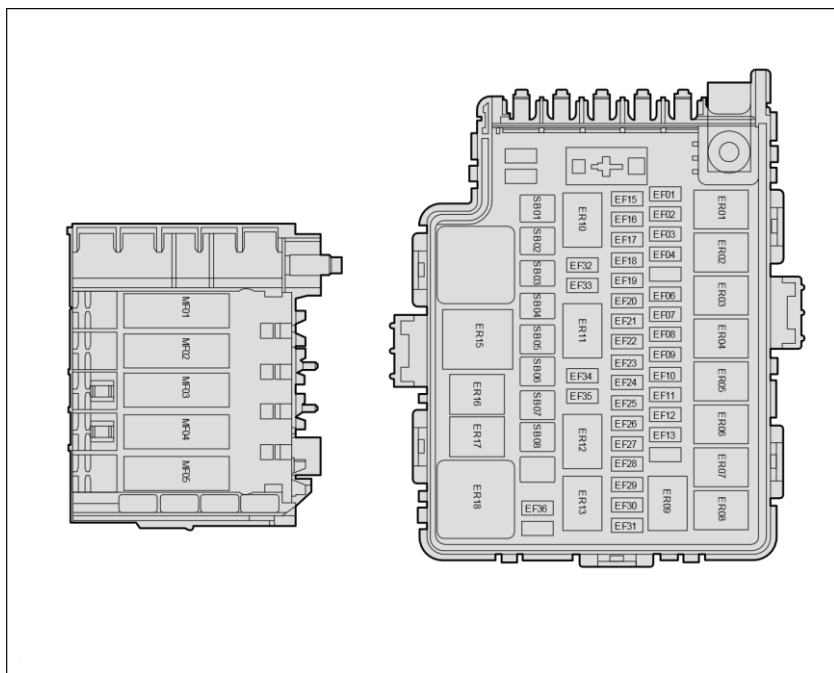
固定漏气轮胎

Fix flat tyre

换好轮胎后，将换下的轮胎装回原来备胎位置并固定好。

After changing the tyre, replace the original tyre back the position of spare tyre and fix it.

发动机舱保险丝盒布置 Engine Compartment Fuse Box Arrangement



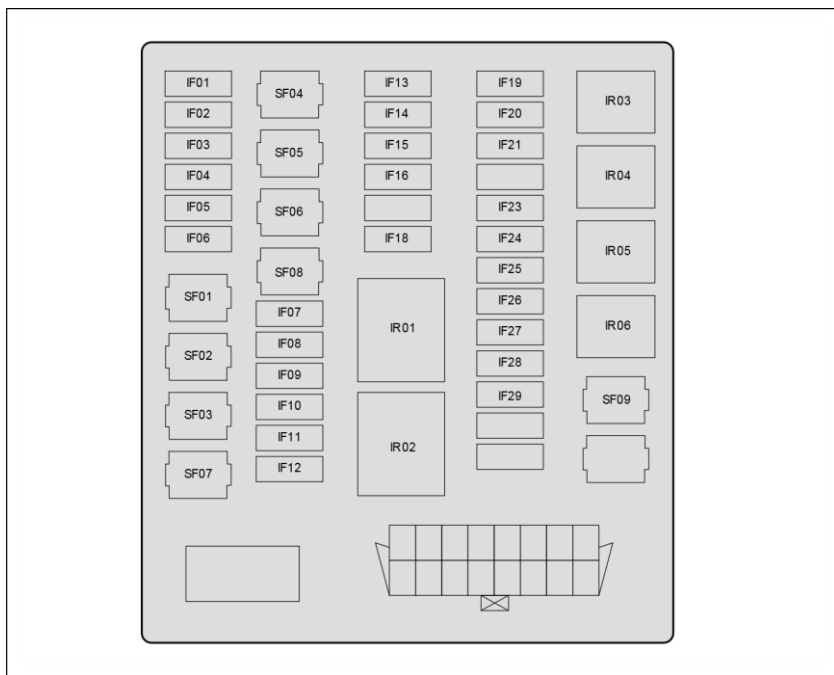
编号 No.	名称 Name	额定电流 Rated current	说明 Description
EF01	电喷继电器保险丝 EFI Relay Fuse	7.5A	
EF02	点火线圈保险丝 Ignition Coil Fuse	15A	
EF03	电喷执行器保险丝 EFI Actuator Fuse	15A	
EF04	电喷传感器保险丝 EFI Sensor Fuse	10A	
EF06	右前雾灯保险丝 Right Front Fog Light Fuse	7.5A	

编号 No.	名称 Name	额定电流 Rated current	说明 Description
EF07	左前雾灯保险丝 Left Front Fog Light Fuse	7.5A	
EF08	燃油泵保险丝 Fuel Pump Fuse	15A	
EF09	电动转向保险丝 Electric Steering Fuse	5A	
EF10	制动开关保险丝 Brake Switch Fuse	5A	
EF11	EMS&VVL 保险丝 EMS&VVL Fuse	10A	
EF12	倒挡开关保险丝 Reverse Switch Fuse	7.5A	
EF13	鼓风机线圈保险丝 Blower Coil Fuse	5A	
EF15	TCU BAT+保险丝 TCU BAT+ Fuse	5A	
EF16	EMS BAT+保险丝 EMS BAT+ Fuse	10A	
EF17	发电机保险丝 Generator Fuse	7.5A	
EF18	B+电源保险丝 B+ Power Fuse	5A	
EF19	TCU BAT+保险丝 TCU BAT+ Fuse	25A	
EF20	TCU BAT+保险丝 TCU BAT+ Fuse	25A	
EF21	真空泵保险丝 Vacuum Pump Fuse	25A	
EF22	继电器线圈保险丝	5A	

编号 No.	名称 Name	额定电流 Rated current	说明 Description
	Relay Coil Fuse		
EF23	TCU BAT+保险丝 TCU BAT+ Fuse	25A	
EF24	雨刮间歇档保险丝 Wiper Interval Fuse	20A	
EF25	前迎宾灯/格栅灯保险丝 Front Welcome Light/Grid Light Fuse	10A	
EF26	喇叭保险丝 Horn Fuse	15A	
EF27	倒车灯保险丝 Reverse Light Fuse	5A	
EF28	DTC 水泵保险丝 DTC Water Pump Fuse	5A	
EF29	制动灯保险丝 Brake Light Fuse	7.5A	
EF30	压缩机保险丝 Compressor Fuse	10A	
EF31	ESP/ABS SOL BAT+保险丝 ESP/ABS SOL BAT+ Fuse	25A	
EF32	左近光灯保险丝 Left Low Beam Fuse	7.5A	
EF33	右近光灯保险丝 Right Low Beam Fuse	7.5A	
EF34	左远光灯保险丝 Left Hight Beam Fuse	7.5A	
EF35	右远光灯保险丝 Right Hight Beam Fuse	7.5A	
EF36	起动机反馈保险丝 Starter Feedback Fuse	5A	

编号 No.	名称 Name	额定电流 Rated current	说明 Description
SB01	ESP/ABS MTR BAT+保险丝 ESP/ABS MTR BAT+ Fuse	40A	
SB02	前鼓风机保险丝 Front Blower Fuse	40A	
SB03	后鼓风机保险丝 Rear Blower Fuse	20A	
SB04	VLC 保险丝 VLC Fuse	40A	
SB05	高速风扇保险丝 High-speed Fan Fuse	40A	
SB06	ESP/ABS SOL BAT+保险丝 ESP/ABS SOL BAT+ Fuse	40A	
SB07	启动保险丝 Starter Fuse	25A	
SB08	低速风扇保险丝 Low-speed Fan Fuse	30A	
MF01	蓄电池正极保险丝 Battery Positive Fuse	125A	
MF02	电动助力保险丝 Electric Power Fuse	60A	
MF03	电子扇控制器保险丝 Electronic Fan Controller Fuse	80A	
MF04	仪表保险盒保险丝 Instrument Fuse Box Fuse	50A	
MF05	仪表保险盒保险丝 Instrument Fuse Box Fuse	50A	

室内保险丝盒布置 Interior Fuse Box Arrangement



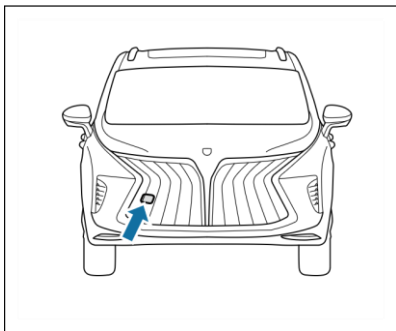
编号 No.	名称 Name	额定电流 Rated current	说明 Description
IF01	启动按钮保险丝 Start Button Fuse	5A	
IF02	ESCL 保险丝 ESCL Fuse	10A	
IF03	无线充电保险丝 Wireless Charging Fuse	10A	
IF04	诊断保险丝 Diagnosis Fuse	10A	
IF05	室外灯保险丝 Outdoor Lamp Fuse	20A	
IF06	组合仪表保险丝 Instrument Pack Fuse	10A	
IF07	室内顶灯保险丝 Indoor Dome Light Fuse	10A	
IF08	天窗保险丝 Sunroof Fuse	20A	
IF09	座椅加热保险丝 Seat Heating Fuse	20A	

编号 No.	名称 Name	额定电流 Rated current	说明 Description
IF10	音响主机保险丝 Fuse of the Mainframe of Audio Equipment	15A	
IF11	空调控制器保险丝 A/C Controller Fuse	10A	
IF12	前洗涤保险丝 Front Washing Fuse	10A	
IF13	安全气囊保险丝 Airbag Fuse	10A	
IF14	空调控制器保险丝 A/C Controller Fuse	7.5A	
IF15	组合仪表保险丝 Instrument Pack Fuse	7.5A	
IF16	机舱 IGN1 保险丝 Engine Compartment IGN1 Fuse	15A	
IF18	仪表 IGN2 保险丝 Instrument IGN2 Fuse	7.5A	
IF19	背光灯保险丝 Backlight Fuse	5A	
IF20	右前左后位置灯保险丝 Right Front Left Rear Position Light Fuse	5A	
IF21	左前右后位置灯保险丝 Left Front Right Rear Position Light Fuse	5A	
IF23	12V 电源保险丝 12V Power Fuse	15A/25A	
IF24	USB 电源保险丝 USB Power Fuse	10A/25A	
IF25	仪表 ACC 保险丝 Instrument ACC Fuse	7.5A	
IF26	鼓风机反馈保险丝 Blower Feedback Fuse	5A	

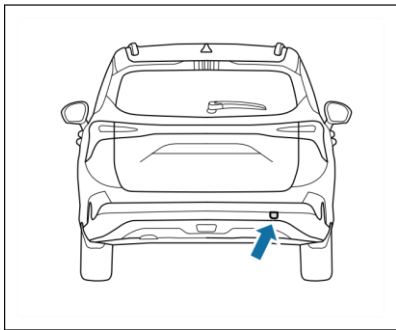
编号 No.	名称 Name	额定电流 Rated current	说明 Description
IF27	全景环视保险丝 Panoramic Surround Fuse	5A	
IF28	空调控制器保险丝 A/C Controller Fuse	7.5A	
IF29	中排座椅加热保险丝 Middle Row Seat Heating Fuse	15A	
SF01	点火开关保险丝 Ignition Switch Fuse	30A/60A	
SF02	门锁保险丝 Door Lock Fuse	20A	
SF03	左门控模块保险丝 Left Door Control Module Fuse	30A	
SF04	右门控模块保险丝 Right Door Control Module Fuse	30A	
SF05	电动座椅保险丝 Power Seat Fuse	25A	
SF06	后除霜保险丝 Rear Defrost Fuse	25A	
SF07	前后雨刮保险丝 Front & Rear Wiper Fuse	20A	
SF08	B+电源保险丝 B+ Power Fuse	30A	
SF09	中排座椅电机保险丝 Middle Row Seat Motor Fuse	25A	

车辆牵引 Vehicle traction

前部牵引点 Front traction point



后部牵引点 Rear traction point



如果车辆需要牵引，应联系专业车辆牵引服务部门。请勿仅用绳索或铁链来牵引车辆。

If the vehicle needs traction, contact the professional vehicle traction service department. Do not tow the vehicle with ropes or chains only.

牵引方法 Traction method

平板式装置 Flat-panel device

可以将车辆装在卡车上，这是运送车辆的最佳方法。

The vehicle can be loaded on a truck, which is the best way to transport the

vehicle.

抬轮式装置 Wheel lifting device

牵引车用两根支臂插入车辆的前轮底部，将车轮托离地面，后轮仍然着地，这是牵引车辆可行的方法。

The tractor inserts two arms into the bottom of the front wheel of the vehicle to lift the wheel off the ground, and the rear wheel still touches the ground, which is a feasible method to tow the vehicle.

牵引注意事项 Precautions

采用抬轮式牵引时，牵引里程最好不要超过 50 公里，速度应保持在 30km/h 以下。

When using wheel lifting traction method, the traction mileage should preferably not exceed 50km, and the speed should be kept below 30km/h.

如果车身装有前扰流板，在牵引之前应先将其卸下，以免受损坏。不要从保险杠处提起或牵引车辆，会造成严重的损坏。安装牵引缆绳时，应特别注意，不要让钢索损伤车身。

If the vehicle is equipped with a front spoiler, it should be removed before towing to avoid damage. Do not lift or tow the vehicle from the bumper, otherwise it will cause serious damage. When installing the towing cable, special care should be taken not to allow the steel cable to damage the vehicle.

采用全轮着地式牵引，必须使用经

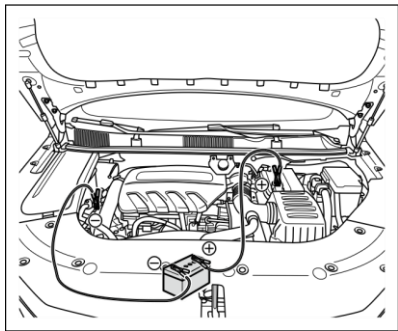
合理设计并附有牵引杠的装置。将启动开关置于“ACC”档以解除方向盘的锁定状态，并将换挡杆挂入N档。

For all-wheel towing, use a properly designed device with a tow bar. Place the start switch in "ACC" gear to unlock the steering wheel and put the gearshift lever into N gear.

如果无法换挡或无法启动车辆，只能采用前轮离地式拖运。

If it is impossible to shift gears or start the vehicle, only front-wheel off-the-ground towing can be used.

跨接启动 Jump start



如果车辆蓄电池电量耗尽，可按以下步骤启动发动机。

If the vehicle battery is depleted, you can start the engine as follows

1. 打开发动机舱盖
Open the engine compartment cover
2. 将跨接电缆正极卡夹连接至本车蓄电池的正极(+)端子。
Connect the positive jump cable clip

to the positive (+) terminal of the vehicle battery.

3. 将正极电缆另一端的卡夹连接至另一车辆蓄电池的正极(+)端子。
Connect the clip on the other end of the positive cable to the positive (+) terminal of the other vehicle battery.
4. 将负极电缆卡夹连接至另一车辆蓄电池的负极(-)端子。
Connect the negative cable clip to the negative (-) terminal of the other vehicle battery.
5. 如图所示，避开蓄电池和移动零件，将负极电缆另一端的卡夹连接至实心、固定、未涂漆的金属部位。
As shown in the figure, avoiding the battery and moving parts, connect the clip at the other end of the negative cable to the solid, fixed and unpainted metal part.
6. 启动另一车辆的发动机。稍微提高发动机转速并保持该转速约5分钟，以便对本车蓄电池充电。
Start the engine of the other vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and hold the speed for about 5 minutes to charge the battery of this vehicle.
7. 保持另一车辆的发动机转速，然后启动本车发动机。
Hold the engine speed of the other

vehicle, then start the engine of this vehicle.

8. 本车发动机启动后, 请按与连接时完全相反的顺序拆下跨接电缆, 并尽快联系东风风行特约服务站检修车辆。

After the engine of this vehicle is started, please remove the jump cable in the exact opposite order as when it was connected, and contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station to have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible.



警告 Warning

用其它车辆上接出的跨接电缆跨接启动时, 必须按照使用说明书进行正确的操作。不正确的操作步骤可能会导致火灾、爆炸或损坏车辆。

When starting with a jump cable from another vehicle, proper operation must be carried out in accordance with the operating instructions. Incorrect operation procedures may result in fire, explosion or damage to the vehicle.

发动机过热 Engine overheating

车辆行驶一段时间后, 水温表指示应稳定在中间刻度位置。如果水温表指向红色标记, 冷却液温度高警告灯点亮, 发动机舱盖下冒出蒸汽, 应立即关闭车辆发动机, 将车辆熄火。

After the vehicle has been driven for a period of time, the water temperature gauge indication should be stable at the middle scale position. If the water temperature indication points to the red mark, the high coolant temperature warning light

illuminates, and steam comes out from under the engine hatch, the vehicle engine should be turned off immediately to turn off the vehicle.

应对措施 Countermeasures

1. 将车辆安全地开到路边, 挂 N 档, 向上拉起 EPB 开关。关闭所有的电器开关, 打开危险警告灯。
Drive the vehicle safely to the roadside, put it in N gear and pull up on the EPB switch. Turn off all electrical switches and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. 在发动机稳定运转的状态下, 打开发动机舱盖, 使发动机舱通风, 确认散热器风扇是否运转。如果风扇不转, 应立即熄火, 并尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

With the engine running steadily, open the engine compartment cover to ventilate and confirm whether the radiator fan is running. If the fan does not turn, turn off the engine immediately and contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station as soon as possible.

3. 待冷却液温度降到正常的温度后, 关闭启动开关。
After the coolant temperature drops to a normal temperature, turn off the start switch.
4. 检查储液罐中的冷却液液位。如果

储液罐空了，一定要等发动机冷却后再打开储液罐盖，否则加注口可能会喷出热蒸汽或沸腾水造成烫伤。

Check the coolant level in the liquid storage tank. If the tank is empty, make sure to wait for the engine to cool down before opening the tank cover, otherwise the filler port may emit hot steam or boiling water causing burns.

5. 必要时向储液罐内添加冷却液。在发动机温度高的状态下立即加入冷却液可能会使气缸盖或气缸体裂开，因此，在发动机运转时，应缓慢地加入冷却液。添加冷却液操作要求专业性较强，建议联系东风风行特约服务站。

Add coolant to the tank when necessary. Adding coolant immediately when the engine temperature is high may crack the cylinder head or cylinder block. Therefore, coolant should be added slowly while the engine is running. Adding coolant operation requires more professionalism, so it is recommended to contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station.

6. 检查散热器软管是否有冷却液渗漏。若液位下降，则应添加冷却液

至上限 (MAX) 标记，然后安装并拧紧储液罐盖。

Check the radiator hose for coolant leakage or not. If the level drops, add coolant to the upper limit (MAX) mark, then install and tighten the tank cover.

 **警告 Warning**

如果蒸汽正在外泄，请勿打开发动机舱盖。接触从过热的发动机处冒出的蒸汽及喷雾会造成严重烫伤。务必等发动机和散热器冷却之后，再打开发动机舱盖。

Do not open the engine compartment cover if steam is escaping. Contact with steam and spray coming from an overheated engine may cause severe burns. Always wait for the engine and radiator to cool before opening the cover.

长期停放车辆 Long-term parking of the vehicle

如果需要长期停放车辆，建议将车辆停放在室内，并做好下列措施。适当的措施可以防止车况恶化，且易于重新启动车辆。

If you need to park your vehicle for a long period of time, it is recommended that you park it indoors and take the following measures. Proper measures will prevent deterioration of the vehicle and easily restart the vehicle.

1. 添加燃油，更换发动机机油及滤清器。

Add fuel and change the engine oil and filter.

2. 清扫车辆内部，确保地毯、地席等

完全干燥。

Clean the interior of the vehicle and make sure the carpets, floor mats, etc. are completely dry.

3. 向上拉起 EPB 开关。将换挡杆挂入 P 档，用障碍物挡住后轮。

Pull up on the EPB switch. Put the shift lever into P gear and block the rear wheels with an obstacle.

4. 如果车辆需要停放较长的时间，应使用千斤顶支撑架将车身撑起，使轮胎离开地面。

If the vehicle needs to be parked for a longer period of time, the vehicle body should be propped up using a jack support frame to get the tyres off the ground.

5. 断开蓄电池负极接线。

Disconnect the negative battery terminal wire.

6. 将雨刮片用毛巾或布片垫起，使其不与前挡风玻璃接触。

Pad the wiper blade with a towel or piece of cloth so that it does not contact the front windshield.

7. 为减少粘黏，应在所有车门及行李箱密封处喷上硅酮润滑剂，并且在车门及行李箱密封条相接触的油漆表面涂上车身蜡。

To reduce stickiness, spray all door and trunk seals with silicone lubricant and apply body wax to the painted surfaces where the door and trunk seals come into contact with each other.

8. 使用由棉布之类的“多孔材料”制成的透气覆盖物覆盖车身。塑料布之类的无孔材料会积聚水气，损坏车身表面漆。

Cover the body with a breathable cover made of a "porous material" such as cotton sheeting. Non-porous materials such as plastic sheeting will accumulate water vapor and damage the body paint.

9. 如有可能应定期启动车辆片刻使冷却风扇运转两次。

If possible, the vehicle should be started for a few moments to run the cooling fan twice at regular intervals.



注意 Note

如果车辆停放一年或更长时间，车辆可能无法启动或操纵性变差，此时应尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

If the vehicle is parked for a year or more, the vehicle may not start or the maneuverability becomes worse, then you should contact Dongfeng FORTHING Special Service Station as soon as possible.

车辆规格 VEHICLE

SPECIFICATION 234

车辆信息 Vehicle Information
..... 234

车辆识别信息 Vehicle
Identification Information. 234

车辆出厂铭牌 Vehicle
Factory Plate 234

发动机编号 Engine number
..... 235

安全警告标牌 Safety Warning
Signs..... 235

蓄电池警告标牌 Battery
Warning Signs 235

散热器警告标牌 Radiator
Warning Signs 236

一氧化碳中毒的危险性
Danger of carbon monoxide
poisoning..... 236

微波窗口 Microwave
Window..... 237

车辆主要尺寸参数 Vehicle
main size parameters 237

整车质量参数 Overall vehicle
mass parameters 238

发动机参数 Engine Parameters
..... 239

底盘主要总成 Chassis main
assembly..... 239

制动器的合理使用范围

Reasonable range of brake use
..... 240

车辆动力性 Vehicle Dynamics
..... 241

车辆通过性 Vehicle passability
..... 241

综合油耗 Comprehensive fuel
consumption 242

车轮定位参数 Wheel alignment
parameters 242

轮胎规格 TYre specification 242

油液列表 Oil & Fluid List.... 243

排放要求 Emission requirements
..... 244

规定排放维修技术要求

Specified emissions

maintenance technology

requirements 244

氧传感器 Oxygen Sensor 245

排放控制关键零部件信息

Information on key components

for emission control 247

车辆规格

Vehicle Specification

车辆信息 Vehicle Information

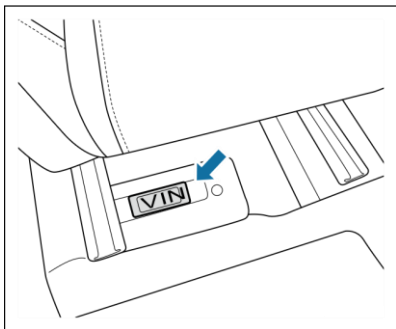
车辆识别信息 Vehicle Identification Information

您的车辆上有数个车辆识别代码 (VIN 码), 分别位于不同的位置。

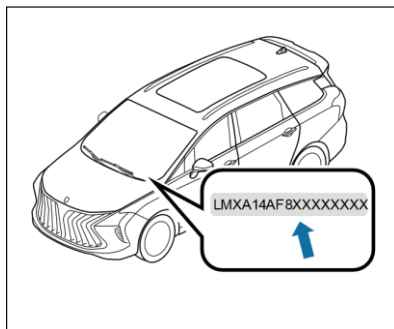
Your vehicle has several vehicle identifications numbers ("VIN") located in different locations.

1. 打刻在副驾驶座椅下方车身横梁上, 掀开地毯缺口可以看到。

Carved in the passenger seat below the body beam. You can see it when lifting the carpet gap.

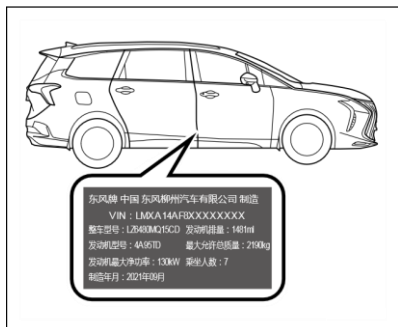


2. 粘贴在前挡风玻璃右侧。
Pasted on the right side of the front windshield.



3. 粘贴在手套箱内侧。
Pasted on inside the glove compartment.
4. 粘贴在右 B 柱内板下方。
Pasted under the inner panel of the right B-pillar.
5. 粘贴在右前围 A 柱内板下方。
Pasted under the inner panel of the A-pillar of the right front surround.
6. 粘贴在发动机舱盖内侧上方。
Pasted on the top of the inside of the engine hatch.
7. 粘贴在后背门内板右侧。
Pasted on the right side of the inner panel of the rear back door.
8. 粘贴在变速器总成表面。
Pasted on the surface of the transmission assembly.

车辆出厂铭牌 Vehicle Factory Plate



车辆标牌位于右侧中柱下方，包含下列信息：

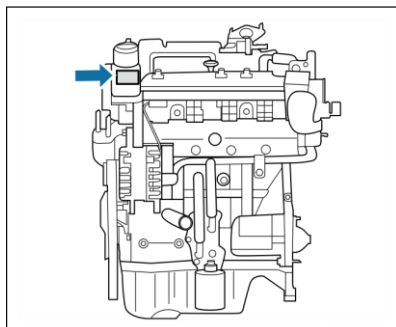
The vehicle placard is located under the right center column and contains the following information:

1. 生产国家 Country of production
2. 生产厂家 Manufacturer
3. 品牌名称 Brand name
4. 车辆识别代号 VIN
5. 整车型号 Complete vehicle model
6. 发动机型号 Engine Model
7. 发动机最大净功率 Maximum net power of the engine
8. 制造年月 Date of manufacture
9. 发动机排量 Engine Displacement
10. 最大允许总质量 Maximum permissible total mass
11. 乘坐人数 Number of passengers

发动机编号 Engine number

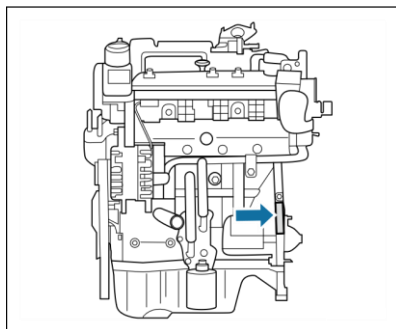
4A95TD 发动机机号码打刻位置

4A95TD engine number label location



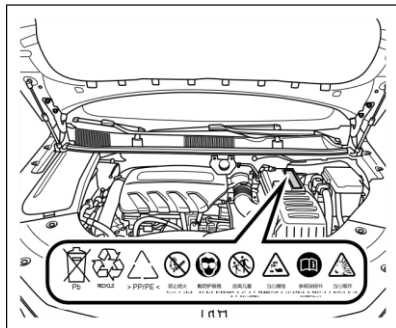
4A95TD 发动机机号码打刻位置

4A95TD engine number engraving location



安全警告标牌 Safety Warning Signs

蓄电池警告标牌 Battery Warning Signs



蓄电池警告标牌贴在蓄电池表面。

提醒您蓄电池应远离热源和明火，充电及使用时应保持通风，以防事故发生。

The battery warning sign is pasted on the surface of the battery. Remind you that the battery should be kept away from heat sources and open flames, and ventilation should be maintained during charging and using to prevent accidents.

散热器警告标牌 Radiator Warning Signs



散热器警告标牌与空调制冷剂标牌贴在发动机舱盖内侧上方。更换冷却液时，应使用东风风行规定的冷却液，不同品牌冷却液不能混合使用。请勿触摸散热器，冷却风扇有可能会随时转动。

The radiator warning sign and air conditioner refrigerant sign are pasted on the top of the inner side of the engine hatch. When replacing the coolant, use the coolant specified by Dongfeng FORTHING, and different brands of coolant should not be mixed. Please do not touch the radiator, as the cooling fan may turn at any time.

一氧化碳中毒的危险性 Danger

of carbon monoxide poisoning

一氧化碳气体有毒，吸入该气体会严重威胁到您的生命安全。在正常驾驶的情况下，车辆尾气中的一氧化碳不会进入车内。

Carbon monoxide is poisonous and inhalation of the gas can seriously threaten your life. Under normal driving conditions, carbon monoxide from vehicle exhaust will not enter the vehicle.

遇到下列几种情况的时候，应检查排气系统是否存在泄漏：

The exhaust system should be checked for leaks in any of the following cases:

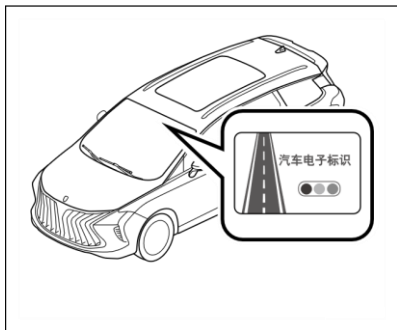
- 因更换机油或其它原因将车辆举升过。
- The vehicle has been lifted for engine oil replacement or other reasons.
- 发现排气声音不正常。
- The exhaust sound was found to be abnormal.
- 车辆在事故中已损坏车身底部。
- The vehicle had damaged the underside of the vehicle body in the accident.

当后背门打开时，气流会将车辆排出的废气带入车内，造成一氧化碳超标。如需在后背门打开时启动车辆，应将所有车窗打开，并打开空调换气。

When the back door is open, the airflow will bring the exhaust gas into the vehicle, causing carbon monoxide to

exceed the standard. If you need to start the vehicle when the back door is open, you should open all the windows and turn on the air conditioning to change the air.

微波窗口 Microwave Window



车辆的微波窗口位于前挡风玻璃水平居中、垂直靠上的位置。该标识中存储了车辆的相关信息，不能被内后视镜安装支架、传感器支架等遮挡。

The Microwave Window of the vehicle is located in the front windshield

车辆主要尺寸参数 Vehicle main size parameters

项目 Item	单位 Unit	LZ6481MQ15CD	LZ6480MQ15CD
车长 Length	mm		4850
车宽 Width	mm		1900
车高 Height	mm		1715
前轮轮距 Front Wheelbase	mm		1591
后轮轮距 Rear wheel tread	mm		1602
轴距 Wheelbase	mm		2900

horizontally centered and vertically positioned upwards. This mark stores information about the vehicle and cannot be obscured by the interior rear-view mirror mounting bracket, sensor bracket, etc.

注意 Note

- 请保持前挡风玻璃洁净、干燥。
- Please keep the front windshield clean and dry.
- 不要在微波窗口位置贴膜或粘贴金属材料，确保车辆电子标识的规范安装和数据的有效读取。
- Do not paste film or metal materials in the microwave window position to ensure the standard installation of electronic vehicle identification and effective reading of data.
- 请勿遮挡、挤压或拆卸车辆电子标识！该标识如有损坏，请及时到标识发行机构重新申请。
- Please do not cover, squeeze or disassemble the vehicle electronic mark! If the mark is damaged, please re-apply to the mark issuing agency in time.

整车质量参数 Overall vehicle mass parameters

项目 Item	单位 Unit	LZ6481MQ15CD	LZ6480MQ15CD
乘坐人数 Number of passengers	人 People	6/7	6/7
整备质量 Overall mass	kg	1650	1715
前轴整备质量 Front axle overall mass	kg	915	960/940
后轴整备质量 Rear axle overall mass	kg	735	755/775
最大质量 Maximum mass	kg	2175	2260
前轴最大质量 Maximum front axle mass	kg	1026	1071
后轴最大质量 Maximum rear axle mass	kg	1149	1189

发动机参数 Engine Parameters

项目 Item	单位 Unit	LZ6481MQ15CD	LZ6480MQ15CD
发动机型号 Engine Model		4A95TD	
型式 Type		直列四缸、16 气门、涡轮增压 Inline four-cylinder, 16-valve, turbocharged	
排量 Displacement	L	1.481	
缸径×冲程 Bore ×Stroke	mm	φ74×86	
压缩比 Compression ratio		9.5:1	
额定功率 Rated power	kW/rpm	145/5600	
最大净功率 Maximum net power	kW/rpm	130/5600	
最大净扭矩 Maximum net torque	Nm/rpm	285/1500~4000	
点火次序 Ignition sequence		1-3-4-2	
整体排放水平 Overall Emission Level		国 VIb National VI b	

底盘主要总成 Chassis main assembly

项目 Item	LZ6481MQ15CD	LZ6480MQ15CD
变速器型式 Transmission type	7DCT	

悬架系统 Suspension System	前悬架 Front Suspension	麦弗逊式独立悬架 MacPherson independent suspension
排量 Displacement	后悬架 Rear Suspension	拖拽臂式非独立后悬架 Trailing arm type non-independent rear suspension
转向系统 Steering System	助力形式 Assistance form	电动助力 Electric Power Steering
制动系统 Braking System	结构型式 Structure type	X 型液压双管路、真空助力、车身电子稳定系统 (ESP) X-type hydraulic dual line, vacuum assist, Electronic Stability Program (ESP)
额定功率 Rated power	前制动器 Front brake	钳盘式制动器, 通风盘 Caliper Disc Brake, Ventilated Disc
最大净功率 Maximum net power	后制动器 Rear brake	钳盘式制动器, 实心盘 Caliper Disc Brake, Solid Disc
最大净扭矩 Maximum net torque	制动踏板行程 Brake pedal travel	1mm~12mm

制动器的合理使用范围 Reasonable range of brake use

前轮制动盘 Front wheel brake disc	设定值(mm) Setting value(mm)	25
	使用极限(mm) Service limit(mm)	23
前轮摩擦片 Front wheel friction plate	设定值(mm) Setting value(mm)	10.5
	使用极限(mm) Service limit(mm)	2
后轮制动盘 Rear wheel brake disc	设定值(mm) Setting value(mm)	12

	使用极限(mm) Service limit(mm)	10
后轮摩擦片 Rear wheel friction plate	设定值(mm) Setting value(mm)	10
	使用极限(mm) Service limit(mm)	2
驻车蹄片 Parking shoes	设定值(mm) Setting value(mm)	\
	使用极限(mm) Service limit(mm)	\

车辆动力性 Vehicle Dynamics

项目 Item	单位 Unit	LZ6481MQ15CD	LZ6480MQ15CD
最高车速 Maximum speed	km/h	180	
最大爬坡度 Maximum climbing degree	%	30	

车辆通过性 Vehicle passability

项目 Item	单位 Unit	LZ6481MQ15CD	LZ6480MQ15CD
接近角（空载） Approach angle (unloaded)	°	14	
离去角（空载） Departure angle (unloaded)	°	20	
最小转弯直径 Minimum turning diameter	m	11.6	

最小离地间隙 Minimum ground clearance	mm	150±16 (空载) / 125±16 (满载) 150±16 (unloaded) / 125±16 (full loaded)
------------------------------------	----	---

综合油耗 Comprehensive fuel consumption

项目 Item	单位 Unit	LZ6481MQ15CD	LZ6480MQ15CD
油耗 Fuel consumption	L/100km	6.6	6.8

车轮定位参数 Wheel alignment parameters

项目 Item		参数 Parameters
前轮定位角 (空载) Front wheel alignment angle (unloaded)	前轮前束 Toe-in of front wheel	0.08 °±0.04 °
	前轮外倾 Camber of front wheel	-0.38 °±0.5 °
	主销后倾 Kingpin caster	6 °±0.5 °
	主销内倾 Kingpin inclination	13.26 °±0.5 °
后轮定位角 (空载) Rear wheel alignment angle (unloaded)	后轮前束 Toe-in of rear wheel	0.1 °±0.25 °
	后轮外倾 Camber of rear wheel	-1.0 °±0.4 °

轮胎规格 Tyre specification

项目 Item	LZ6481MQ15CD	LZ6480MQ15CD
轮胎规格 Tyre specification	215/55 R18	
轮辋规格 Rim specification	18X6.5J, 18×7J	
轮胎气压	230±5 kPa	

Tyre pressure	
备用轮胎规格* Spare tyre specification*	T125/80 R17
备用轮胎胎压* Spare tyre pressure*	420

油液列表 Oil & Fluid List

项目 Item	规格 Specification	加注量 Refill volume
汽油 Gasoline	RON92#或以上 RON92# or higher	55L
发动机机油(4A95TD) Engine oil(4A95TD)	统一石化 低灰分 SP 5W-30 (LA) Monarch Low Ash SP 5W-30 (LA)	3.5L
发动机冷却液(4A95TD) Engine coolant(4A95TD)	OAT-35	8.5L
7DCT 变速器油 7DCT transmission oil	Pentosin FFL7-A	4.25 L
制动液 Brake Fluid	DOT4	0.6~0.8L
风窗玻璃洗涤液 Windshield washer fluid	NFC-60	2L
空调制冷剂 A/C refrigerant	R134a	500g

排放要求 Emission requirements

本车型满足 GB18352.6-2016 国六排放要求。

This model meets the GB18352.6-2016 national VI emission requirements.

规定排放维修技术要求 Specified emissions maintenance technology requirements

发动机 ECU Engine ECU

发动机 ECU 的操作须遵守如下要求：

The operation of the engine ECU is subject to the following requirements:

1. 连接 ECU 与线束连接器，务必要确保系统电源处于断开状态，即启动开关处于断电关闭状态。不得在启动开关打开的状态下插拔 ECU，避免在通电状态下，用身体的任何部位接触 ECU 针脚或 ECU 线束的裸露部分。

When connecting the ECU to the harness connector, make sure that the system power is disconnected, which means that the starter switch is powered off. Do not plug or unplug the ECU while the starter switch is open, and avoid touching the ECU pins or exposed parts of the ECU harness with any part of your body while the power is on.

2. 静电引发的火花可能导致 ECU 损

坏，应尽量避免 ECU 与静电接触。

Sparks caused by static electricity may cause damage to the ECU, so you should try to avoid contact between the ECU and static electricity.

3. 不得使 ECU 遭受超过 16V 以上的电压。

Do not expose the ECU to voltages exceeding 16V.

4. 不得反向连接 ECU 管脚正负极。

Do not reverse the positive and negative ECU pin connections.

5. 不得使用外观有物理损伤的 ECU。ECU 的外壳表面不得出现任何划伤或涂敷任何未经认可的材料，不允许将油漆或其他绝缘类液体喷涂在 ECU 针脚上。

Do not use an ECU with physical damage to its appearance. No scratches or coating of any unapproved material on the surface of the ECU's housing, and no paint or other insulating type of liquid is allowed to be sprayed on the ECU pins.

6. 不得使用任何工具或物品敲击 ECU 的任何部位。

Do not strike any part of the ECU with any tool or object.

7. 应避免电磁场及射频干扰源接近

ECU。

Electromagnetic fields and radio frequency interference sources should not be close to the ECU.

8. 应确保 ECU 在安装时有效固定，并有效接地。

Make sure that the ECU is effectively fixed and grounded when installed.

9. 避免在用电焊维修车辆时烧坏 ECU，如有可能需把 ECU 断电拆除，远离电焊。

Avoid burning the ECU when repairing the vehicle with electric welding. If possible, the ECU needs to be disconnected and removed from electric welding.

10. 蓄电池用外接电源跨接时，电极要保持牢固接触。

When the battery is connected with external power supply, the electrodes should be kept in firm contact.

氧传感器 Oxygen Sensor

当发动机工作，空燃比变大时，排气中氧含量的浓度将会升高，此时，氧传感器的输出电压接近 0V，空燃比变小时，排气中氧含量的浓度降低，传感器的输出电压接近 1V。发动机氧传感器无需进行任何调整和修理。

When the engine works and the air-fuel ratio becomes larger, the concentration of oxygen in the exhaust will increase. At

this time, the output voltage of the oxygen sensor is close to 0 V. When the air-fuel ratio becomes smaller, the concentration of oxygen in the exhaust decreases and the output voltage of the sensor is close to 1 V. The engine oxygen sensor does not need any adjustment and repair.

出现以下情况时，氧传感器将会失效：

The oxygen sensor will fail when the following conditions occur:

- 氧传感器电器接插件损坏。
- The oxygen sensor electrical connector is damaged.
- 氧传感器内部锆元件碎裂，断裂损坏。
- The internal zirconium element of the oxygen sensor is broken.
- 氧传感器加热元件电路断路或短路。
- The oxygen sensor heating element circuit is broken or short-circuited.
- 氧传感器感应元件电路断路或短路。
- The oxygen sensor sensing element circuit is broken or short-circuited.
- 氧传感器热敏电阻对外壳短路。
- The oxygen sensor thermistor is shorted to the housing.
- 氧传感器加热元件电路对外壳短路。

- The oxygen sensor heating element circuit is shorted to the housing.

使用氧传感器注意事项:

Notes on the use of oxygen sensors:

- 禁止氧传感器跌落或与坚硬物体表面撞击，避免损坏陶瓷元件或加热元件。
- It is prohibited to drop the oxygen sensor or hit it with hard object surface to avoid damaging the ceramic element or heating element.
- 在装上氧传感器后，避免由于给发动机施加大的敲击力而损坏氧传感器。
- After installing the oxygen sensor, avoid damaging it by applying a large knocking force to the engine.
- 避免由于积碳、发动机机油、铅等有机物污染传感器，导致传感器输出信号不准确。
- Avoid the sensor output signal inaccuracy due to carbon accumulation, engine oil, lead and other organic substances polluting the sensor.

排放控制关键零部件信息

Information on key components for emission control

车辆型式核准证书信息，排放控制关键零部件生产厂家、型号及有效使用寿命等信息。

Vehicle type approval certificate information, key components of emission control manufacturers, models and effective service life and other information.

项目 Item	LZ6481MQ15CD		LZ6480MQ15CD	
排放控制关键 零部件名称 Component Name	发动机 ECU Engine ECU	氧传感器 Oxygen Sensor	前级催化器总成 Front stage catalyst assembly	后级 GPF 总成 Rear stage GPF assembly
排放控制关键 零部件型号 Component Model	MG1US008	LSU/LSF4	SX5G- 1205050	SX5G- 1205060
生产厂家 Manufacturers	联合汽车电子有限公司 United Automotive Electronic Systems Co., Ltd. (UAES)		昆明贵研催化剂有限责任公司 Kunming Sino-Platinum Metals Catalyst Co., Ltd. (SPMC)	
有效使用寿命 Service life	五年或十万公里 Five years or 100,000 km			